



45

Practical Methods  
to Gain the Upper  
Hand in Chess

# Techniques of Positional Play

**Valeri Bronznik &  
Anatoli Terekhin**

NEW IN CHESS

# Techniques of Positional Play

## 45 Practical Methods to Gain the Upper Hand in Chess

Opening preparation is essential, but for aspiring players understanding the middlegame is even more important. **Techniques of Positional Play**, an improved edition of a Russian classic, teaches amateur chess players 45 extremely effective skills in a crystal-clear manner.

Quite a few of these techniques will be revelations for club players, as they offer solutions for problems amateurs are often only subconsciously aware of. For example:

- ▶ How do you restrict the efficacy of your opponent's pieces?
- ▶ What is the best way to exchange a piece?
- ▶ How do you prevent your opponent from opening a file?
- ▶ Which rook belongs on the c-, d- or e-file?
- ▶ How do you castle artificially?



The techniques are easy to understand and memorize. The authors present a wealth of practical examples and do not burden the reader with unnecessary deep analysis. There is a special training section at the end of the book where you can test your newly acquired skills.

Ukrainian International Master **Valeri Bronznik** lives and works in Germany. He has written a number of highly acclaimed books on chess, such as *1.d4-Beating the Guerillas*. **Anatoli Terekhin** is a well-known Russian chess trainer. He leads a chess academy in Perm.



**“One of the best books on positional chess  
you’re ever likely to read.”**

Paul Kane, Manchester Chess Federation



**NEW IN CHESS**

**GAMES / CHESS**

**\$ 29.95**

**€ 24.95**

**WWW.NEWINCHESS.COM**

**Valeri Bronznik & Anatoli Terekhin**

# **Techniques of Positional Play**

45 Practical Methods to Gain the Upper Hand in Chess

**New in Chess 2013**

© 2013 New In Chess

Translated from *Techniken des Positionsspiels im Schach* (Bronznik/Terekhin, Kania 2005/2008) by Ian Adams

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

[www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com)

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design: Volken Beck

Production: Harald Keilhack

Proofreading: René Olthof

Supervision: Peter Boel

Have you found any errors in this book?

Please send your remarks to [editors@newinchess.com](mailto:editors@newinchess.com). We will collect all relevant corrections on the Errata page of our website [www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com) and implement them in a possible next edition.

ISBN: 978-90-5691-434-9

# Contents

Symbols .....	6
Introduction .....	7
<b>Chapter I Restricting the enemy pieces .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>Chapter II Create breathing space for your pieces!.....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Chapter III The clash between pawn formations.....</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>Chapter IV The rook pawn – an underrated fighter .....</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>Chapter V Techniques in the fight for an open file .....</b>	<b>106</b>
<b>Chapter VI Some aspects of piece exchanges.....</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>Chapter VII Working with the king.....</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>Chapter VIII Developing and activating pieces.....</b>	<b>170</b>
<b>Chapter IX Along the diagonals .....</b>	<b>196</b>
<b>Chapter X Other methods .....</b>	<b>220</b>
<b>Chapter XI Practical exercises .....</b>	<b>226</b>
Solutions to the exercises .....	233
Index of players .....	
Index of Techniques .....	250
Openings and types of position .....	252
Bibliography .....	254

# Symbols

+-	White has a winning advantage
±	White stands clearly better
±	White stands slightly better
=	Equality
∞	Unclear position
∓	Black stands slightly better
∓	Black stands clearly better
-+	Black has a winning advantage
≡	With compensation
⇄	With counterplay
△	Intending (threat)
×	Weakness
#	Mate
!!	Brilliant move
!	Strong move
!?	Interesting move, deserving attention
?!	Dubious move
?	Weak move, mistake
??	Blunder
Ch	Championship
↑	Diagram: White to move
↓	Diagram: Black to move
⇒	see or leads to

# Introduction

Dear chess lover,

Please give me an honest answer: have you not often come out of the opening with a dream position only to see the tables turned on you afterwards? – I at least have often had that experience.

Or vice versa: your position after the opening was a modest one, but suddenly everything went splendidly right for you and the game took on a new aspect? Actually the question is more of a rhetorical one, the answer is obvious.

Why then do 90% of all chess players ascribe their tribulations to poor knowledge of the opening? We must at least be honest with ourselves: of course, good opening preparation is desirable, but it is not the main factor in our playing strength. An understanding of the middlegame and the endgame is far more important and can often enough help us to save dubious positions and not to spoil the good ones we have.

It may well appear tempting to acquire few books or CDs on openings, to learn a few variations by heart and to hope that we can overcome an unsuspecting victim right in the opening with the theory we have mugged up on.

Unfortunately, it is only too easy for us to fall victim to such an attitude, if it leads us to a neglect of the middlegame and endgame – and even a completely superior position as we leave the opening in no way guarantees us a win, on the

contrary: it demands of us an ability to play the middlegame and the endgame.

But, unfortunately, it is not quite so simple to acquire such good knowledge of the middle- and endgame, since it is only recently that appropriate books have been gradually coming on the market. So that made it all the more interesting for me to lay my hands upon the book by the well-known Russian trainer FM A.Terekhin 'Strategic Methods'<sup>1</sup> (the Russian prototype of the book which you have in your hand). Terekhin chose a lot of examples and from them worked out ideas the knowledge of which can turn out to be extremely useful for players of practically all levels – from advanced club players all the way up to masters. Many of his points of view – here I am thinking, e.g., of the explanations concerning the potential passed pawn – are completely new and to the best of my knowledge have not yet appeared in chess literature.

The idea soon occurred to me to translate the book into German – as usual with the able help of my late friend Dieter Mohrlök (IM and correspondence chess GM). In doing so, I have greatly revised the material from the Russian edition. Some not very convincing examples have been omitted, but in return I have included some new, and hopefully appropriate game fragments.

---

<sup>1</sup> Strategic Methods/Techniques, Methods/Techniques of positional play; translating it is not so clear-cut, and we spent a long time on possible variations of the German resp. later on the English title.

In addition the reader of the German resp. English edition will find significantly more analysis and explanations than there were in the Russian original. Nevertheless the main emphasis in this book was not laid on deep analysis, but rather on giving you as good as possible a feeling for and understanding of the ideas and methods which are presented. Consequently I have deliberately tried to avoid, where possible, complicated and confusing analyses.

Firstly, a little caution: in this book you will be confronted with new concepts which may at first glance appear strange, for example the aforesaid 'potential passed pawn' or the 'wave-breaker' or the 'pendulum manoeuvre'. These expressions are inventions of A. Terekhin, and we have translated them to the best of our ability. Whenever you encounter each such technique the concepts will then be explained in greater depth.

The overwhelming number of examples comes from the creative work of world famous players. But there are also extracts of games played by less well-known people, whose names you may perhaps not know. That proves that it is not necessary to be a GM or even an IM to demonstrate successful use of a strategic idea. And a good thing it is too!

I must thank Anatoli Terekhin for having appreciated my work and making no objection to allowing me to stand as his co-author for the German and English edition.

IM Valeri Bronznik  
Stuttgart, August 2005

Dear reader,

When Valeri Bronznik showed me the inconspicuous little Russian book by Terekhin, I was immediately affected in a very special way. It is not that no good middlegame books had previously appeared – sterling service in this field has been done above all by Dvoretsky and Watson. No, for some reason there appeared to be specific and not so peculiarly complicated artifices with which I had never become systematically acquainted, but which I had come up against in fragmentary and painful fashion in my encounters with strong players.

The idea occurred immediately that the book had to be published in German, though it was clear that for a publication which would come up to Western standards – and I am not just talking about the translation – some fine-tuning was still required. Following the proverb 'Too many cooks spoil the broth' I also became involved with the work, changing the order of the techniques and arranging them in individual chapters, putting together a chapter with exercises drawn from 'superfluous' examples, etc.

The result – a tribute to the German penchant for systematising – is that the first four chapters are devoted above all to the art of pawn play, chapters V to X on the other hand to piece play. With appropriate reservations, of course.

I wish the readers a whole host of instructive moments!

FM Harald Keilhack, editor  
Schwieberdingen, Nov.2005/July 2013

# Chapter I

## Restricting the enemy pieces

*'If one piece is badly placed, then your whole game is bad'*

The whole of the first chapter is devoted to this adage from the Russian chess school. It illustrates different techniques for excluding an opposing piece from the action by means of clever pawn play and it presents the subtle consequences of this – which sometimes reach far into the endgame.

### Putting the knight in chains

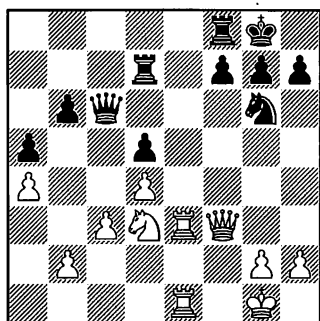
#### **Technique No. 1**

#### **I. Paralysing the knight with the duo of wing pawns**

We start with the surprisingly frequent motif of restricting a knight by the *wing pawns*:  $\Delta g3/\Delta h4$  against a  $\textcircled{d}g6$  is the main subject with various mirror image variations. The opponent is frequently faced with a choice only between different evils: Opposing with his own rook pawn (...h5 or ...a5) creates weaknesses or is not really possible. Allowing h4-h5 or a4-a5 leaves him at a disadvantage in space, and for the rest of its days the knight can often never find a good square.

##### ► 1.1 Botvinnik–Boleslavsky

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1941



The last move was 24... $\textcircled{w}d6-c6$ .

*'Black wants to tie in one of the opposing pieces to the protection of the  $\Delta a4$ . In that case the development of White's initiative would slow down. But White has at his disposal a clear attacking plan: drive away the  $\textcircled{d}g6$  so as to gain access to the e7-square for his rook and to the e5- and f4-squares for the knight. For that reason White ignores the petty threat posed by his opponent'* (Botvinnik).

**25.g3!  $\textcircled{d}d6$**

The continuation 25... $\textcircled{w}xa4$  26.h4 was extremely dangerous for Black, e.g. 26... $\textcircled{d}d6$  (or 26... $\textcircled{f}fd8$  27.h5  $\textcircled{d}f8$  28.h6, and according to Botvinnik White's attack plays itself) 27.h5  $\textcircled{d}h8$  28. $\textcircled{d}f4\pm$ .

**26.h4! f6**

So as to control the e5-square.

**27. $\textcircled{w}f5!$   $\textcircled{w}c8$**

27... $\textcircled{w}xa4$  was quite bad on account of 28.h5  $\textcircled{d}h8$  29. $\textcircled{d}f4$ , e.g. 29... $\textcircled{d}f7$  30. $\textcircled{d}e6!$   $\textcircled{b}b8$  31. $\textcircled{w}g4$   $\textcircled{d}g5$  32. $\textcircled{d}xg5$

fxg5 33. ♖e7 h6 34. ♖f5+- or 29... ♖d7  
30. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 31. ♖e7 ♖xe7 32. ♖xe7  
♟f7 33. ♟xd5+-.

28. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 29. h5 ♟f8 30. ♖e7  
♞cd8

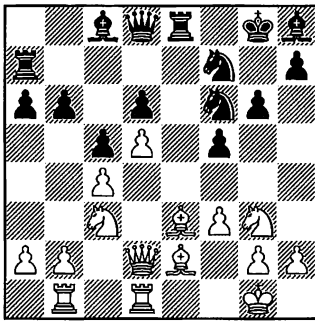
30... ♞c4 31. ♞b7 ♖xa4 32. ♞ee7+-.

31. ♟f4±,

and White won on move 49.

## ► 1.2 Tamburini–Botvinnik

Leipzig (Olympiad) 1960



Before looking at the further course of the game, I should like to draw your attention to Black's queen's rook, which is ready to pop up on the e-file in a single move – we shall delve more deeply into this idea and similar ones under ⇒ *Technique No. 32*, 'The rook lift.'

21... h5!

△... h5-h4, ... ♟f6-h5.

22. ♞f1 h4 23. ♟ge2 ♟h5

A further gain of space on the kingside is the threat after ...g6-g5, ...f5-f4, when the ♞c8 becomes active; in addition the ♞h8 is now no longer blocked and can thus exert strong pressure along the long diagonal.

As far as White's position is concerned, one can sense a certain lack of harmony – the constellation ♟e2/♞f1 looks really

unnatural. The game ended surprisingly quickly.

24. ♟f4??

Of course White's desire to swap off his badly posted knight is an easy one to fulfil, but ...

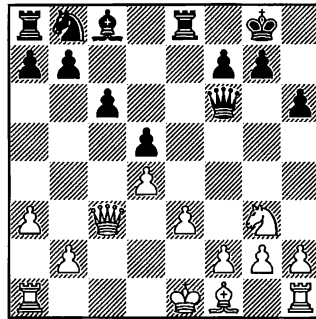
24... ♟xf4 25. ♞xf4 ♞d4+ 0-1

After 26. ♖h1 g5 White loses the ♞f4.

So there was no longer any need for the rook lift to e7 – White had already abandoned his position.

## ► 1.3 Petrosian–Botvinnik

Moscow (1st WCh game) 1963



White has at his disposal the usual plan of the minority attack on the queenside (b2-b4-b5). And what about Black's counterplay?

12...g6!

Intending ...h6-h5-h4.

13.f3?!

As Botvinnik writes in his notes on this game, the only possible reason for this move is as preparation for queenside castling – the pawn would otherwise be left hanging on f2.

Of course there would be another reason for 13.f3, namely to prepare e3-e4. But for the moment that does not look like a realistic option and in fact in the future course of the game White manages neither

e3-e4 nor queenside castling, and thus f2-f3 turns out just to be a waste of time and a weakening of his own position.

**13. ♖d3!**? looked much more natural and much sounder, though Black would also then get considerable counter-chances on the kingside after 13...h5 (intending to follow up with ...h5-h4 at the appropriate moment).

**13...h5!**

△...h5-h4.

**14. ♖e2**

After **14.0-0-0** h4 15. ♖e2 ♖f5 Black has the initiative.

**14...♖d7**

Black takes his time about ...h5-h4, as long as White has not decided on where to place his king. But **15.0-0!** would immediately be followed by 15...h4, and after 16. ♖h1 ♖g5 17. ♖f2 ♖f6 the ♖h1 looks like some insignificant bystander, who is not allowed to take part in the game. On the other hand **15.0-0-0** is followed by 15...♖g5 16. ♖d3 ♖f6, and the ♖e3 is under pressure.

**15. ♖f2 h4!**

Now Black should no longer delay this move, or else on the next move White could bring the ♖h1 into action.

**16. ♖f1 ♖f8 17. ♖d2**

Actually the knight is pretty well placed on f1, from where it protects the ♖e3 – but the ♖h1 has to be freed and that costs White two extra tempi (♖f1-d2-f1).

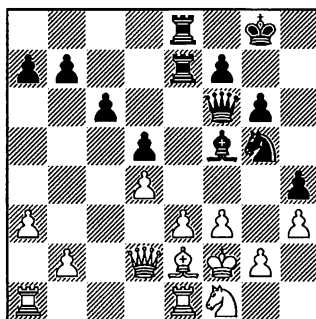
**17...♖e7 18. ♖he1 ♖f5 19.h3**

*'This move has only one advantage – from now on White has no need to calculate any variations with ...h4-h3. But its disadvantages are obvious: the g3-square is weakened and the option of g2-g4 is no longer viable'* (Botvinnik).

**19...♖ae8 20. ♖f1 ♖e6 21. ♖d2**

And now, as Botvinnik explains, Black could by

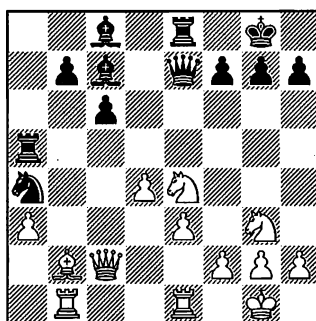
**21...♖g5!**



immediately bring about a won position, e.g. **22. ♖g1 ♖xh3! 23.gxh3 ♖xh3+ 24. ♖h1** (24. ♖h2 ♖xe3! 25. ♖xe3 ♖f4+ 26. ♖h1 ♖f2+ 27. ♖g1 ♖g3+ 28. ♖f1 ♖h3 29. ♖d1 ♖g1+ 30. ♖e2 ♖f4#) **24...♖g5! 25. ♖h2 ♖g1+ 26. ♖xh3 ♖xe3** (with the deadly threats of ...g6-g5 or ...♖e8-e4) **27. ♖xh4 ♖8e4+! 28.fxe4** (28. ♖h3 g5–) **28...g5+ 29. ♖h5 ♖h3#** or **22. ♖d1 ♖xh3! 23.gxh3 ♖e4+! 24. ♖g2 ♖g5+ 25. ♖h2 ♖f2 26. ♖d2 ♖xe3 27. ♖d1 ♖f4+ 28. ♖g2 ♖xd1 29. ♖axd1 ♖xf3+ 30. ♖g1 ♖e2 31. ♖xe2 ♖xe2 32. ♖g5 ♖f2+ 33. ♖h1 ♖xb2–+.**

## ► 1.4 Spraggett–Ehlvest

Clermont-Ferrand 1989



For now White has an extra pawn, but it is Black's move – of course, Black can recover the  $\Delta a3$  whenever he feels like it.

**21...h5!**

But first Ehlvest plays ...h7-h5-h4 to push the  $\Delta g3$  into a passive position and at the same time gains space on the kingside.

**22.f3 h4 23. $\Delta f1$   $\Delta xb2$  24. $\text{♞xb2}$   $\text{♞xa3}$  25. $\text{♞a1}$   $\text{♞xa1}$  26. $\text{♞xa1}$   $\Delta f5!$**

Black has an obvious advantage – the white knights cannot rival the activity of the black bishop pair, the  $\Delta f1$  is really passive (but should remain on this square to protect h2), whilst the  $\Delta e4$  may well be centralised but its position is insecure. At the same time, thanks to his space advantage on the kingside Black (on account of ...h7-h5-h4!) has good attacking chances.

**27. $\text{♞a7}$**

27. $\Delta fd2$   $\Delta b8!$  ( $\Delta \dots \text{♞c7}$ ) 28. $\text{♞b6}$   $\Delta g6!$   $\text{♞}$  ( $\Delta \dots f5$ ).

**27...b6**

With the threat of 28... $\Delta xh2+$ .

**28. $\text{♞a2}$   $\text{♞d8}$  29.h3  $\text{♞d7}$**

Renewing the threat of ... $\Delta h2+$ .

**30. $\text{♞a8}$   $\Delta h7$  31. $\text{♞c2}$**

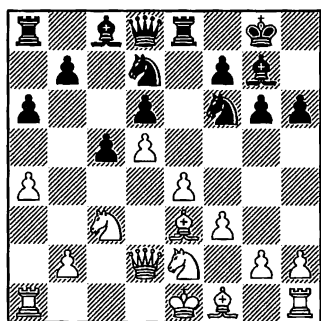
Or 31. $\Delta fd2$  c5! 32.dxc5 bxc5 $\text{♞}$ , intending ... $\text{♞e5}$  with an attack.

**31... $\text{♞d6}$ ! 32. $\Delta fd2$   $\text{♞g6}$   $\text{♞}$**

Black has outstanding attacking prospects.

## ► 1.5 Yevseev–Loginov

St. Petersburg 1998



What we have here is a well-known position from the Modern Benoni Defence. 13. $\Delta xh6$  would be followed by 13... $\Delta xe4!$  and after 14. $\Delta xe4$   $\text{♞h4}+$  15.g3  $\text{♞xh6}$  16. $\text{♞xh6}$   $\Delta xh6$  17. $\Delta xd6$   $\text{♞d8}$  Black obtains good compensation for the pawn he has sacrificed. If the first player does not want to see play follow this course then he has to look round for other options.

**13. $\Delta g3$**

GM Stohl criticises this move, and not without good reason – after Black's reply the knight can hardly feel comfortable.

Possible alternatives might be 13. $\Delta c1$   $\Delta \Delta e2$ , 0-0 or 13. $\Delta d1$   $\Delta \Delta ec3$ ,  $\Delta e2$ , 0-0,  $\Delta f2$ .

**13...h5! 14. $\Delta e2$  h4!**

Black drives the knight back and at the same time gains space on the kingside.

**15. $\Delta f1$**

After this, Black must in any case deal with the threat of  $\Delta g5$ .

**15... $\Delta h7!$**

A pitiful knight on f1 – it is preventing the chance of castling, the  $\Delta h4$  is denying it the g3-square, whilst the  $\text{♞d2}$  and  $\Delta e3$  have occupied other desirable squares. For that reason, White has to regroup his forces, which of course costs him time.

**16. $\Delta f2$**

16. $\text{♞c2}!$ ?

**16... $\Delta e5$  17. $\Delta e3$   $\Delta h6$**

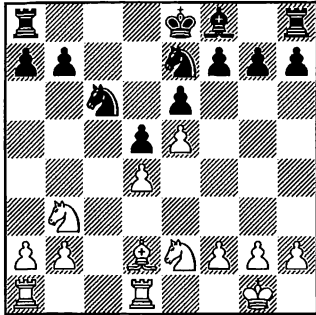
$\Delta \dots f7-f5$ .

Black has an easy and active game.

Now let us turn to the 'other' rook pawn, the a-pawn. In the next example, White does play a2-a4 to defend against his knight being pushed back, but nevertheless the knight on b3 is a blot on the landscape and also the weakening of the b4-square has its consequences in the long run.

► 1.6 Atkins–Capablanca

London 1922



14...a5

Perhaps the move order 14...b6!? 15.♖ac1 a5 would have been a bit more precise, because White could now try the variation 15.♘c5!? b6 16.♘a4 ♙c3-b5.

15.♖ac1 b6!

Now the ♘b3 is really hemmed in.

16.a4

This prevents ...a5-a4, but weakens the b4-square.

16...♗d7 17.♘c3

♙c3-b5.

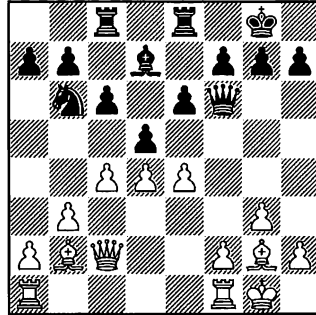
17...♘a7 18.♗f1 ♘ec6 19.♗e2 ♖c8 20.♙e1 ♙e7 21.♘b1 f5 22. exf6 ♙xf6 23.♙c3 ♘b4 24.♙d2 ♘ac6

On account of the unchanged passive position of the ♘b3 (which may well be protecting d4, but is not achieving anything else) and the chronic need of protection of d4 Black's chances are clearly preferable.

In the following example, after a4-a5 and ...♘b6-a8-c7-a6 the knight can no longer find a safe perch. Black feels the consequences of this right into the endgame:

► 1.7 Réti–Ed. Lasker

New York 1924



17.a4!

The plan is naturally 18.a5.

17...♖ed8

17...a5? 18.c5 ♘a8 19.♙c3 ♗d8 20.♗d2+-.

18.a5 ♘a8 19.e5 ♗g6 20.♗e2 ♘c7

Of course this knight felt wretched on a8, but things are not that much better for it on c7 – it does not have a sensible square at its disposal.

21.♙a3 ♘a6 22.♖fe1 ♙e8

Black is hoping to get in ...c6-c5 and by doing so to make the position of his knight on a6 look a bit more sensible. But White's next move thwarts this intention.

23.♙d6! f5

23...c5? 24.cxd5+-.

24.f4 ♗h6 25.♙f3

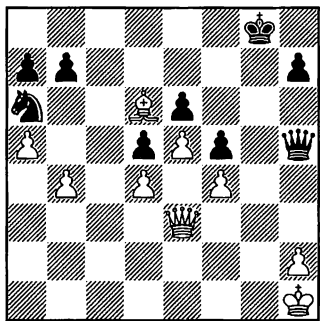
The ♘a6 remains completely out of the game, and even the ♙e8 is for the moment ineffective, and in addition White has a major advantage in space.

25...g5

Black tries to become active on the king-side. But his problem is that, on account of sad position of the ♘a6, he is, for all practical purposes, playing with a knight less, which makes itself felt more and more with each succeeding exchange.

26.♖a2

- 26.fxg5!? ♖xg5 27.♖e3±.  
 26...gxf4 27.gxf4 ♜d7  
 27...♖xf4 28.♖f2 ♜d7 29.♖h1 ♖h8  
 30.♞g1 with an attack.  
 28.♖e3 ♞g7+ 29.♞g2 ♞xg2+ 30.  
 ♖xg2 ♙h5 31.♙xh5 ♖xh5 32.♞g1  
 ♖f7 33.♖h1 ♞g8 34.♞xg8 ♖xg8  
 35.cxd5 cxd5 36.b4!



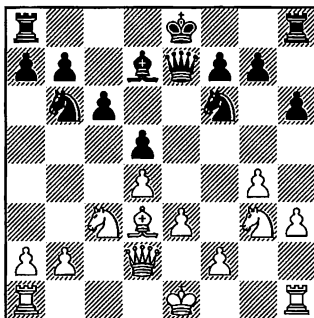
In the long run, Black's operations on the kingside have led to major simplifications, which once more leaves him with a hopeless endgame because the ♖a6 is not only ineffectual, but also in great danger on account of the threat of b4-b5. In addition, the dark squares in Black's camp are hopelessly weak. White simply has to watch out for a few tactical tricks.

- 36...♖f7 37.♖d3  
 37.b5? would be premature on account of  
 37...♖d1+ 38.♖g2 ♜c7! 39.♙xc7 ♖c2+=.  
 37...♖h4 38.♖f1  
 38.b5? ♖e1+ 39.♖g2 ♜b4.  
 38...♖d8 39.♖h3 ♖g8 40.♖g3+  
 ♖f7 41.♖g5! ♖c8  
 Or 41...♖xg5 42.fxg5 ♖g6, and then  
 finally 43.b5+-.  
 42.b5 ♖c1+ 43.♖g2 ♖d2+  
 Or 43...♖b2+ 44.♖g3 ♖xb5 (44...♖c3+  
 45.♖h4 ♖e1+ 46.♖h5 ♖e2+ 47.♖h6  
 ♖xh2+ 48.♖h5+-) 45.♖f6+-.  
 44.♖h3 ♖e3+ 45.♖h4 ♖e1+  
 46.♖h5 ♖e2+ 47.♖h6 ♖xh2+

- 48.♖h5+ ♖xh5+ 49.♖xh5 ♖g7  
 50.bxa6 bxa6 51.♙c5,  
 and White won in a few moves.

### ► 1.8 Kasparov–Spassky

Barcelona 1989



White is planning the central breakthrough e3-e4, but first of all measures need to be taken against ...♖b6-c4.

- 14.b3! g6 15.a4!? a5

Or else Black would have to reckon with the further advance of the a-pawn. But now his own a-pawn tends to be weak.

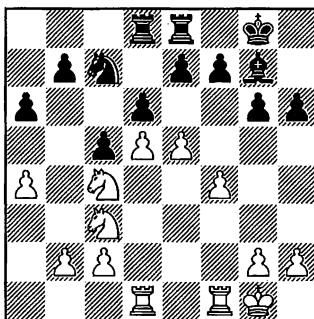
- 16.f3 h5 17.g5 ♖d6 18.♙ge2  
 ♜g8 19.e4

White has the initiative.

In the next example a4-a5! only apparently opens up a prospect for the ♜c7 on b5:

### ► 1.9 Eingorn–Hickl

Zagreb (Interzonal tournament) 1987



Black is very cramped, but nevertheless he is hoping to get some counterplay by means of ...b7-b5.

**20.a5!**

This nails down the ♠b7. But it looks as if Black can activate his knight with his next move, doesn't it?

**20...♟b5 21.♞a4!**

A lovely idea. White does not exchange the knight, but wishes to rob it of its freedom of movement by c2-c3.

**21...g5**

After **21...♞d4 22.c3 ♞f5 23.g4 ♞h4 24.♞f2 g5 25.♞fe1!** (Δ26.exd6 exd6 27.♞xe8+ ♞xe8 28.♞xd6) 25...♞f8 26.f5+– the poor knight on h4 would feel even worse than ever.

**22.g3 gxf4 23.gxf4 ♞h7**

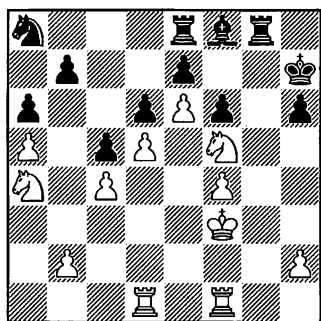
After **23...♞d4 24.c3 ♞f5 25.♞f2** too, the knight is hardly very effective, but this was the lesser evil.

**24.c3!**

Black now has absolutely no counterplay.

The game did not go on for much longer:

**24...f6?! 25.e6 ♞g8 26.♞f2 ♞c7 27.♞e3 ♞a8 28.♞f5 ♞de8 29.♞f3 ♞f8 30.c4**

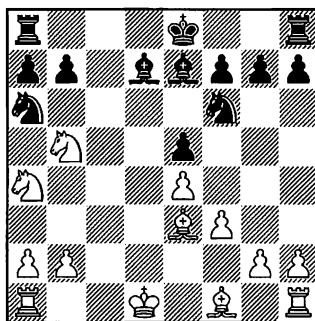


**30...♞b8 31.♞d3 ♞g6 32.♞g1+ ♞h7 33.♞xg8 ♞xg8 34.♞g4 ♞h7 35.♞h5** **1-0**

In the final example it is exceptionally the pawn formation a3/b4, which keeps the black knight out of the action:

## ► 1.10 Rubinstein–Tarrasch

Berlin 1928



What is more important here: the somewhat awkward position of the white king or the passive position of the ♞a6?

**13.♞c1**

Additionally, the rook also takes control of the c5- and c7-squares – that makes life even harder for the ♞a6.

**13...0-0 14.a3!**

Preventing ...♞b4.

**14...♞fd8 15.♞e1 ♞e8 16.♞e2 ♞d6**

After **16...♞xb5 17.♞xb5 ♞ac7** the knight would finally get into the game, but it would mean that White would get the advantage of the bishop pair. However, that would perhaps have been the lesser evil.

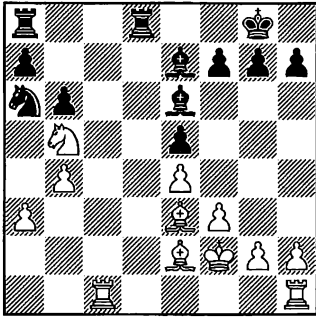
**17.♞ac3!**

Naturally not **17.♞xd6 ♞xd6 18.♞c3 ♞c7** (or **18...♞c5!?**), and the black knight can breathe again.

**17...♞xb5 18.♞xb5 b6**

Δ...♞c5.

**19.b4! ♞e6 20.♞f2**



And the white king has found a comfortable square, whereas the ♖a6 is still languishing in its prison.

20...♖d7 21.♖hd1 ♖xd1 22.♖xd1  
♜f8 23.g3! ♜e8 24.f4!

White is practically playing with an extra piece, and this will be felt most clearly

in the forthcoming hand-to-hand struggle.

24...f6 25.fxe5 fxe5 26.♖c1!

△26.♖b2.

26...♖c8

Protects the ♖a6.

27.♖b2 ♖f6 28.♖d6+ ♜e7 29.  
♖c4!

29.♖xc8+?! ♖xc8 △30.♖xa6? ♖c2+ =.

29...♜e6

29...♖b7 30.♖xe5 ♖xe5 31.♖xe5+–.

30.♖xe5! ♖c7

30...♖xe5 31.♖c4+ ♜f6 32.♖d6+ +–.

31.♖c4+ ♜e7 32.♖c6+ ♜f8 33.

♖xf6 gxf6 34.♖d8+ ♖e8 35.b5

♖b7 36.♖d7 ♖xc6 37.bxc6

And Black resigned.

## Technique No. 2

### II. Other ways of dominating the knight

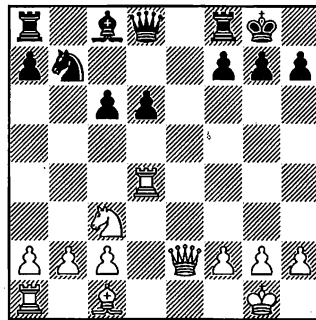
As well as the very typical procedure with the wing pawns (b3/a4, g3/h4 etc., which we have just seen) there are a lot of other possible ways of limiting the mobility of an opposing knight.

The selection which follows is somewhat unsystematic, but that should help it sharpen the reader's eye in his search for the various ways of dominating an opposing knight. As we will see, sometimes the main work falls on the pawns, and at other times on the pieces.

Let us begin with two examples which are mirror images of the same motif 'the ♖b4 restricts the ♖b7' or 'the ♖g4 restricts the ♖g7':

#### ► 2.1 Keres–Unzicker

Hamburg (3rd match game) 1956



14.b4

Keres hems in the opposing knight, and in addition he plans to play b4-b5 when appropriate. A further point: the ♖b4 is preventing his opponent from getting the central pawn pair d5/c5.

14...♖e8

After 14...c5 15.bxc5 ♖xc5 the knight would have come back into the game, but the ♕d6 and the d5-square would then be very weak: after 16.♙e3 (intending ♗ad1 or ♖b5) White would clearly be better off.

The advance 14...d5 (Δ...♗d6) could be well met with 15.b5!±. Also 14...a5 is followed by 15.b5 with a strong initiative.

**15.♙e3 ♙e6**

15...c5 16.bxc5 ♖xc5 17.♗ad1±.  
15...d5 16.b5±.  
15...a5 16.b5 with an initiative for White.

**16.♗f3 ♗d7**

Here 16...d5 Δ...♗d6 was very interesting. The best reply is once more 17.b5!. The resulting variations have many branches and are very complicated; consequently here is only the main line with a few deviations: 17...c5 (17...cxb5 18.♗xd5 with the initiative) 18.♗d3! (18.♗dd1 d4 19.♗xb7 ♗a5 20.♙xd4 cxd4 21.♗d5 ♗ab8 22.♗e7+ ♖f8 23.♗c6 ♗xb7 24.♗xa5 ♗xb5 25.♗b3 ♙xb3 26.axb3 ♗e2 27.♗xd4 ♗xc2=) 18...d4 19.♗xb7 ♙c4 (19...♙f5 20.♗dd1 ♗c8 21.♗xc8 ♗axc8 22.♗d5±) 20.♗dd1 ♗a5 21.♙xd4 cxd4 22.♗d5 ♙xb5 23.♗c7 ♗a3 24.♗f4 ♙e2 25.♗xd4 ♗c8 (25...♗b2 26.♗e1 ♙d3 27.♗c1±) 26.♗e3, and Black does not obtain sufficient compensation for the pawn he has lost.

**17.♗e4**

White's centralisation becomes even more threatening.

**17...♙f5?**

Black absolutely had to neutralise the strong knight and to do so he had to play 17...♙d5!, e.g. 18.c4 ♙xe4 19.♗xe4 a5 20.♗xe8+ ♗xe8 21.a3. Of course White is better here too (advantageous pawn structure, the ♙e3 is superior to the ♗b7), but Black's position would remain playable.

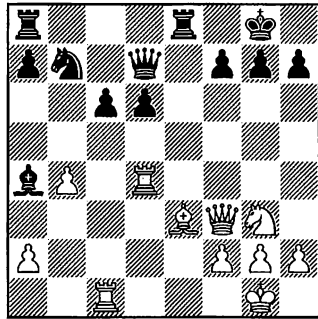
**18.♗g3!**

White sacrifices a pawn, but on the other hand almost all his forces are storming the opposing king.

**18...♙xc2**

18...♙g6 was no better: 19.h4! ♙xc2 20.♗c1 ♙a4 21.♗g4 with a strong attack.

**19.♗c1 ♙a4**



Now both black minor pieces are out of play, which powerfully enhances the chances of success for White's attack.

**20.♗h5! f5**

Possibly 20...♗e6!? 21.♗g4 f5 (forced) 22.♗xf5 ♗f8 23.♗g4± still remained the lesser evil.

**21.♗f4 ♗e7**

Other moves were no better: 21...♗f8 22.♙d4 g5 (22...♗f7 23.♙xg7+-) 23.♗g3+-, 21...♗e6 22.♗xg7! ♖xg7 23.♗xf5+-, 21...♗d8 22.♗xf5 ♗e6 23.♗a5 ♙b5 24.a4 ♙d3 25.♗xc6+-.

**22.♗xf5 ♗f7 23.♗xg7! ♗xg7**

23...♖xg7 loses immediately: 24.♗g3+ ♖f8 (24...♖h8 25.♗xf7 ♗xf7 26.♙d4+) 25.♙h6+ ♖e7 26.♗g5+ ♖e8 27.♗g8+ and 28.♗e1+.

**24.♙h6 ♗e7**

24...♗f7 25.♗g5+ ♖h8 26.♗c3+ +-.  
24...♗e8 25.h4 ♗f7 26.♗g5+ ♖h8 27.♗c3+ ♗e5 28.f4+-.

**25.♙xg7 ♗xg7**

Or 25...♔xg7 26.♚c3+! ♔g8 27.♞e1+-.

**26.h4!**

In terms of material the position is roughly level, but because the black minor pieces are still ineffective White's attack quickly breaks through.

**26...h6**

26...♞f8 27.♞xf8+ ♚xf8 28.♚g4+ ♔h8

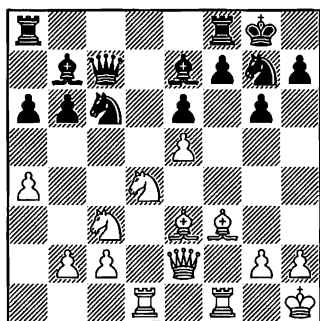
29.♚d4+ ♚g7 30.♚xa7+-.

**27.♞c4!**

**1-0**

## ► 2.2 Geller–Mikhailchishin

Tbilisi (USSR Ch 1978)



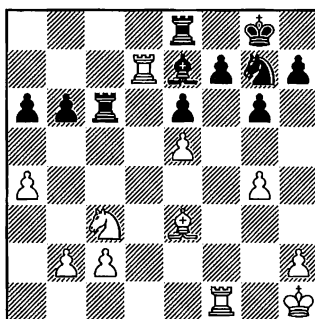
For the moment the ♞g7 is unfavourably placed, but it wants to get back into the game via f5. Can the first player prevent this?

**17.♞xc6 ♚xc6 18.♚c4! ♞fc8**

18...♞f5 does not change things much on account of 19.♚c1 ♞fc8 20.♚xc6 ♚xc6 21.♚xc6 ♞xc6 22.g4, and the poor soul has to go back to g7 – 22...♞g7 (22...♞h4 23.♞d7 ♞e8 24.♞xe7 ♞xe7 25.♚g5+-) 23.♞d7. We shall also soon see a similar position in the game:

**19.♚xc6 ♚xc6 20.♚xc6 ♞xc6 21.♞d7 ♞e8 22.g4!**

And the ♞g7 also continues to remain out of things, while at the same time there is the very strong threat of ♞e4-f6+.

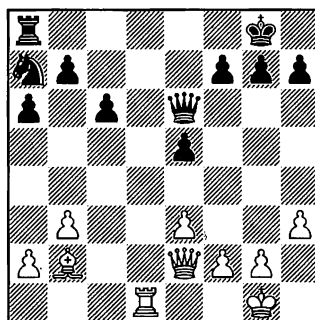


**22...h5 23.h3 hxg4 24.hxg4 b5 25.axb5 axb5 26.♞e4! ♞xc2 27.♞f6+ ♚xf6 28.exf6 ♞xb2 29.fxg7 f5 30.♞f3 fxg4 31.♞f4 ♞c8 32.♚c5!** **1-0**

In the following example a pawn on c4 makes life very difficult for the knight:

## ► 2.3 Uhlmann–Wl. Schmidt

Polanica Zdroj 1967



White is a pawn down, but he is in control of the only open file, whilst for the present Black's ♞a8 and ♞a7 are out of the game.

Black, however, is planning to bring the knight back into play by means of ...♞b5 – in that case he would clearly improve his chances. Unfortunately this freeing move cannot be prevented by 23.a4, because then the ♞b3 falls.

**23. ♖g4!**

A remarkable idea. With this offer to exchange queens (since the ♖e6 is Black's only active piece) White forces his opponent to look to the ♖e5 and thus leaves him no time to activate his knight.

**23...f5**

After **23... ♖xg4 24.hxg4** Black is in great difficulties, e.g. **24...f6** (24...♖b5 25.♞d7+-) **25.♞d7** (25.a4!?) **25...♞b8 26.f4!** (26.a4!?) **26...exf4 27.exf4 ♖c8** (Δ...♖b6, 27...♖b5 28.g5+-) **28.♙d4! b5** (28...b6 29.g5+-) **29.♞d8+** (29.g5 ♖b6) **29...♙f7 30.f5 ♙e7 31.♞h8 ♙d6** (31...♞a8 32.♙c5+-) **32.♞g8+-.**

**24. ♖c4!**

Uhlmann continues with his idea – he continues to refuse the opposing knight the time to get back into the game.

**24... ♖xc4**

What else? **24... ♙f7** is followed by **25.♞d7+ ♙f6 26.♖h4+**, whilst **24...♞e8** loses to **25.♖xe6+ ♞xe6 26.♞d7.**

**25.bxc4**

This means that a white pawn has popped up on c4, depriving the ♖a7 of the b5-square. Also the ♖e5 is still hanging.

**25...♞f8**

Black decides to give up the ♖e5 but in return to post his rook on the seventh rank.

An alternative would be **25...♞e8**, but then too it would have been hard for Black to save the game after **26.♞d7 ♖c8 27.c5!** (27.♞xb7? ♖d6) **27...b6 28.♞c7 bxc5 29.♞xc6 ♖e7 30.♞xa6.**

**26.♙xe5± ♞f7 27.c5 ♖c8**

Or **27...♖b5 28.♞d8+** (28.a4 ♞e7!) **28...♞f8 29.♞d3 ♞f7 30.g4 fxg4 31.hxg4 ♞e7 32.f4±.**

**28.f4**

Δg2-g4.

**28...b6?**

A tactical oversight in a difficult situation.

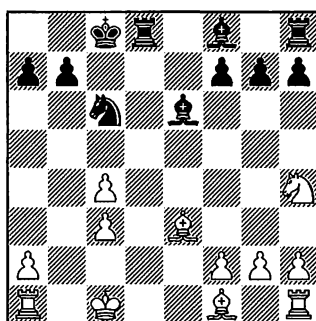
**29.♞d8+ ♞f8 30.♞xc8! 1-0**

After **30...♞xc8 31.cxb6** Black would have to give up his rook for the b-pawn.

In similar fashion to the previous example, Black here transplants a pawn on to c5:

► **2.4 Chandler–Adams**

Hastings 1989/90



White possesses a minimal advantage here, but in return his pawns on the queen-side are susceptible and the pieces badly coordinated. The position of the ♖h4 is particularly unfavourable, but White is planning to transfer it to d4, where it would not only have an active post but also neutralise the effect of the ♞d8. Can Black thwart this intention?

**13...b6! 14.♖f3 ♙c5!?**

An alternative was to win back the pawn with **14...♖a5**, but then White could actually post his knight on d4: **15.♖d4** (15.♖d2? would fail to **15... ♙a3+ 16.♖d1 ♙b2**) **15...♙xc4 16.♙c2** with equality.

**15.♙xc5**

After **15.♙e2 ♙xe3 16.fxe3 ♞he8 17.♖d4 ♖e5** Black would be slightly better.

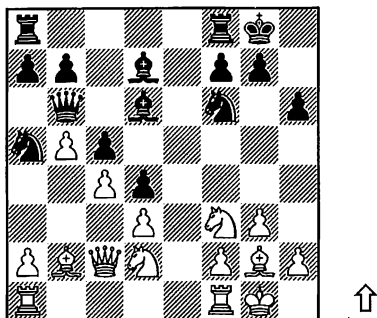
**15...bxc5**

The d4-square is denied to the white knight, and Black retains good compensation for his missing pawn.

The following struggle demonstrates the long-term consequences of not managing to bring a knight back into the game:

► **2.5 Kotov–Taimanov**

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



The ♞a5 is out of the game. So Kotov plans operations on the kingside – in that case Black will feel the absence of his knight the most keenly.

**15.♞ae1**

So that the rooks remain linked after ♞c1.

**15...♞ae8 16.♞c1 ♞xe1 17.♞xe1 ♞e8 18.♞xe8+ ♞xe8 19.♞h4**

White's initiative is very dangerous even without rooks – the threat is ♞f5 and then ♞e4 (or vice versa), and after the exchange of knights on e4 or f6 the white queen heads for g4 or h5.

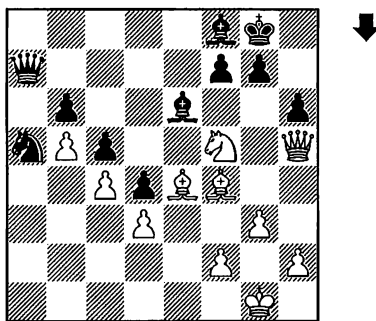
**19...a6**

Taimanov hopes that by opening the a-file he will get counterplay. But as Bronstein wrote in his tournament book, this idea is not very effective because there are no targets to attack on the white queenside. However, after **19...♞c7** (Δ...b6, ...♞a5-b7-d8-e6) too, Black's life would have been anything but simple – **20.♞e4 ♞xe4 21.♞xe4 b6 22.♞e2**, and the white attack develops very rapidly, whereas the ♞a5 still cannot get back into the game (22...♞b7?? 23.♞xb7+-).

**20.a4 ♞a7 21.♞f5 ♞f8 22.♞e4 ♞xe4 23.♞xe4 b6 24.♞d1! axb5 25.axb5 ♞d7 26.♞h5**

Now Black also has to reckon with a sacrifice on h6. The white attack is very dangerous and the poor ♞a5 is still on the other edge of the world.

**26...♞e6 27.♞f4**



**27...♞b3**

So as to finally activate the knight via 28... ♞a1+ 29.♞g2 ♞e1 and then ...♞d2.

After **27...♞b7** Bronstein's variation **28. ♞xh6+ gxh6 29.♞xh6 ♞xh6 30.♞xh6 ♞d6 31.♞h7+ ♞h8 32.♞f5+ ♞g8 33.♞h7+ ♞f8 34.♞xe6 ♞a1+ 35.♞g2 fxe6 36.♞c7 ♞a8+ 37.♞h3** does not seem very clear to me after **37...♞f7 38.♞xb6 ♞a3**; but **28.♞e5!** is stronger (threatening **29.♞g4 g6 30.♞h4** and then ♞f6+-), e.g. **28...♞a2 29.♞f3! ♞d2 30.♞xh6+ ♞xh6 31.♞xb7** with a sound extra pawn.

**28.♞d1**

Kotov frustrates his opponent's plan with ♞a1+ etc. and for his part wants to further cramp Black's position on the kingside by means of h4-h5. The prophylactic **28.♞g2** was an alternative.

**28...♞a2**

**28...♞a1** was bad on account of **29.♞xa1 ♞xa1 30.♞c7**, but now the black queen is too far away from its king. The retreat of the knight was the lesser evil – **28...♞a5**.

29.h4 ♖a1 30.h5 ♜c2 31.♙e5  
 ♚b2 32.♙c7 ♖a3

It keeps wandering about.

33.♚g4

White's attack is becoming stronger with every move, and moreover the ♖b6 is condemned to death. With his forces scattered over the board Black cannot save the game.

33...♚c1+ 34.♜g2 ♜b1

34...♚g5 35.♚xg5 hxg5 36.♙xb6+.

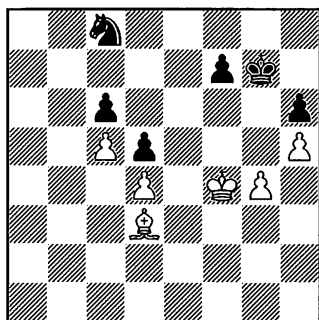
35.♙f4 ♖d2 36.♚e2 1-0

Preparing an end to the knight's sufferings.

We shall finish with three cases in which the knight is dominated mainly by pieces:

### ▶ 2.6 Harikrishna–Carlsen

Lausanne 2005



Black could still offer some resistance with 45...f6!. However:

45...♜f6? 46.♙f5!

After this the knight is dominated, e.g. 46...♜e7 47.♙d7! with zugzwang.

46...♖a7 47.♙d7!

Once more with zugzwang. After 47...♜e7 there is no need for the bishop to retreat: 48.g5! hxg5 49.♜xg5+.

47...♜b5

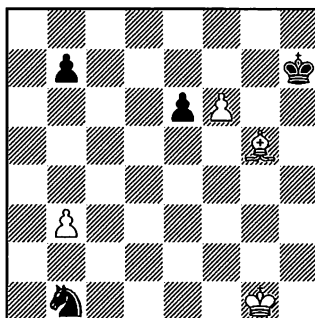
It breaks out of prison but in doing so, it surrenders the queenside pawns.

48.♙xc6 ♖xd4 49.♙xd5 ♜b5 50.  
 ♙c4 ♖d4 51.♜e4 ♜c6 52.♙b5

♜e7 53.♙d7! ♜g8 54.c6 ♜e7  
 55.♜d5 ♜f6+ 56.♜e5 1-0

### ▶ 2.7 T. Dawson (Study)

'28 Rijen' 1925

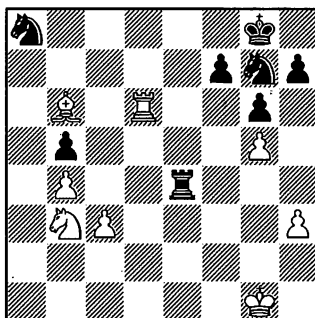


In order not to let the knight back into the game, the white bishop has to appear on b4 for the moment. Impossible?

1.f7! ♜g7 2.♙e7 ♜xf7 3.♙b4!  
 ♜f6 4.♜f2 ♜e5 5.♜e3 ♜d5  
 6.♜d3 ♜c6 7.♜c2 ♜b5 8.♙f8+–

### ▶ 2.8 Tal–Vogt

Riga 1981



35.♙d8!

Now the ♜a8 does not have a single move.

35...♙e6 36.♜c5 ♙e3 37.♜xe6  
 ♙xe6 38.♙xe6 ♜e6 39.♜f2 ♜f7  
 40.♜e3 ♜e8 41.♙a5 ♜d7 42.♜d4  
 1-0

## Restricting the bishop

### Technique No. 3

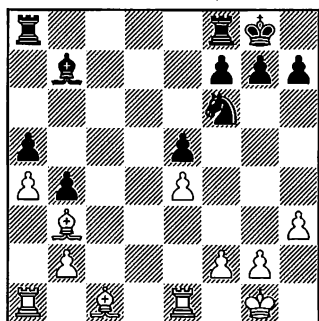
#### I. The pawn barrier ♖f3/e4 or ♖f6/e5

This technique is on the threshold between restricting the bishop and the knight: the pawn duo ♖f3/e4 can not only tame the queen's bishop (e.g. on b7), but it can also frequently tame a knight (e.g. on f6 or b6).

As this chapter progresses, we shall study similar related techniques for restricting the efficacy of opposing bishops. Two special cases – the barrier ♖e4/f3 and the 'bishop cage' (see the first diagram for *Technique No.4*) – will be followed by the more general *Technique No.5*, in which a pawn phalanx confines the opposing bishop to a specific corner of the board or eliminates it from the struggle. Finally, in *Technique No.6* we shall shed some light on Capablanca's rule, which is based on the fact that both one's own pawns and those of the opponent are capable of impeding a bishop – for more, see how he does so himself.

#### ► 3.1 Capablanca–Vidmar

New York 1927



#### 23.f3!

Even if the ♖e4 had been sufficiently well protected, White would probably have made this move which tames the ♖b7.

#### 23...♖fd8?!

According to Alekhine Black would have done better here to play 23...♘d7! (to deny to the opposing bishop the b6-square) 24.♖e3 ♖fc8! (cf. *Technique No.31*) 25.♖ac1 ♘f8.

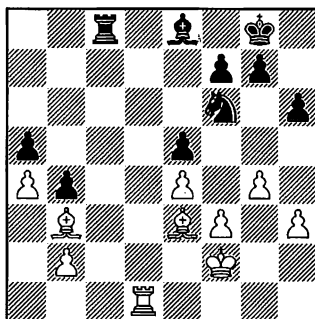
#### 24.♖e3 h6

24...♘d7 25.♖ed1 ♘f8 26.♖ac1 or 25...♖ac8 26.♖d2 would now be problematic.

#### 25.♖ed1 ♖c6 26.♖ac1 ♖e8

This bishop cannot find an appropriate square and wanders about as though in a cage. 26...♖d7? would have been pretty bad on account of 27.♖b6 ♖e8 28.♖c5.

#### 27.♘f2 ♖xd1 28.♖xd1 ♖c8 29. g4!



White also hassles his opponent on the kingside too. It was still too soon for 29.♖b6: 29...♘d7! 30.♖xa5 ♘c5 with counterplay.

**29...♙d7?**

The decisive mistake. Vidmar is of course not happy with the position of his bishop, and so he intends the manoeuvre ...♙d7-e6, but he under-estimates his opponent's reply.

**30.♙b6 ♙e6 31.♙xe6 fxe6**

Now 32.♙xa5 is followed by the simple 32...♖c2+ and then ...♗xb2, whereas after 32.♗d2 Black has 32...♖c4 33.♙xa5 b3.

In these cases too, Black would be losing because his knight would be clearly inferior to the opposing bishop, but Capablanca finds a simpler solution.

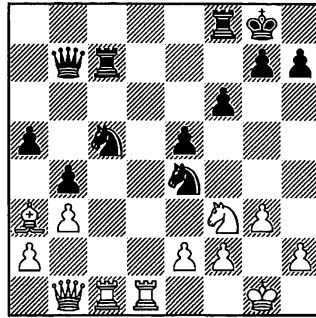
**32.♗d8+!**

Vidmar probably overlooked this move. Now the rooks are exchanged, after which White helps himself to the ♖a5 without more ado.

**32...♖xd8 33.♙xd8 ♘d7 34.♙xa5 ♘c5 35.b3 ♘xb3 36.♙xb4 ♘d4 37.a5 1-0**

The f6/e5 barrier deprives both opposing minor pieces of important squares.

**24.♚b1 a5! 25.♙a3 b4!**



The bishop is not allowed to exchange itself for a black piece, and its radius of action gets smaller and smaller.

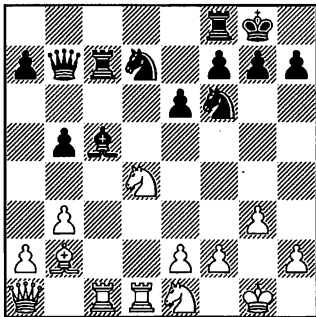
**26.♙b2 ♚b6 27.♖f1 ♖fc8 28.♖c4 ♘d6 29.♖c2 ♘ce4 30.♖xc7 ♖xc7 31.♚d3 ♚b5 32.♚d1 ♖c5 33.a3 ♗d5**

► **3.3 Gligoric–Smyslov**

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade  
(Candidates' tournament) 1959

► **3.2 Flohr–Makogonov**

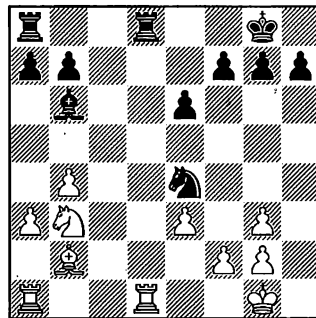
Baku (1st match game) 1942



**20...e5! 21.♘df3**

21.♘f5? fails to 21...♚e4!.

**21...♚e4! 22.♘d3 f6! 23.♘xc5 ♘dxc5**



**24...f6!**

Smyslov is planning ...e6-e5, after which the opposing bishop would be very passive and in addition the ♘b3 would be deprived of the d4-square.

**25.g4**

The attempt to exchange this bishop with **25. ♖d4**, before it irrevocably turns into a bad piece, fails to **25...e5!** **26. ♖xb6 ♜xd1+ 27. ♜xd1 axb6** ♞, after which the ♠a3 causes White some concern and the ♟b3 would be palpably cramped.

After **25. ♖f1 ♜ac8** too, White's position would hardly be an enviable one, e.g. **26. ♜xd8+** (**26. ♜ac1 ♜xd1+ 27. ♜xd1 ♜c2+**) **26... ♜xd8 27. ♖e2** (**27. ♜c1 ♜d3!**), and then – exactly as in the game – **27... ♟xf2! 28. ♖xf2 ♜d3+**.

### 25...e5!

The pawn barrier f6/e5 tames both of White's minor pieces.

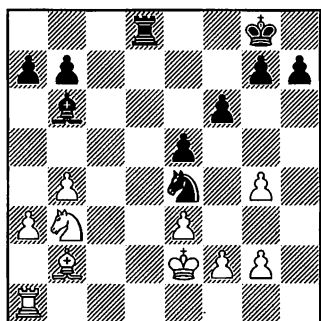
### 26. ♖f1 ♜ac8 27. ♜xd8+ ♜xd8

This threatens **28... ♜d3**.

### 28. ♖e2?

This move, with which Gligoric wanted to protect the d3-square, runs up against a tactical refutation.

Still, the white position was in any case bad enough.



### 28... ♟xf2! 29. ♖xf2 ♜d3! 30. ♟c5 ♖xc5 31. bxc5 ♜d2+

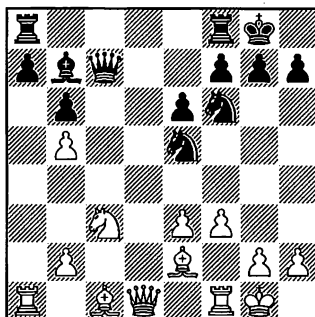
With the white rook on e1 Black could not have afforded this combination on account of **32. ♜e2**.

### 32. ♖f3 ♜xb2++

Smyslov won this rook endgame after another 18 moves.

## ► 3.4 Petrosian–Spassky

Moscow (10th WCh game) 1969



### 15.e4

Not only in order to develop the bishop to e3, but also to render the ♖b7 and the ♟f6 passive.

### 15... ♜fd8 16. ♖e1! ♖c5+?!

Smyslov's suggestion of **16... ♟fd7 Δ ... ♟c5** looks more sensible, so as to activate the ♟f6 at once.

### 17. ♖f2 ♖e7

After **17... ♖xf2+ 18. ♖xf2 ♟d3+ 19. ♖xd3 ♜xd3 20. ♖e3** or **17... ♟d3 18. ♖xd3 ♜xd3 19. ♖xc5 bxc5 20. ♖g5** (Bondarevsky) White would obviously be better in view of the opposing weakness on a7. It is very significant that the efficacy of the ♖b7 and the ♟f6 remains limited by the barrier f3+e4.

Nor does the passive text move solve Black's problems either.

### 18. ♜a3! ♟e8

Spassky senses that this knight is not well employed and transfers it to d6, from where, according to the state of matters, it can either support ...f7-f5 or go to c8 (to protect a7) or to c4.

The manoeuvre **... ♟d7-c5** was unfavourable here: **18... ♟fd7 19. ♖e3 ♟c5 20. ♜fa1 ♟cd3 21. ♖xd3 ♟xd3 22. ♖e2**, and White wins the ♠a7.

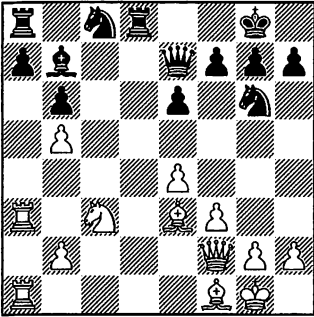
### 19. ♖f4!

Slightly anticipating the pendulum manoeuvre (⇒ *Technique No. 36*)! Actually the bishop belongs on e3, but first the ♖e5 is driven away from its active central position.

19...♖g6

19...♖d3 20...♗xd3 ♖xd3 21.♖fa1±.

20.♗e3 ♖d6 21.♖fa1 ♖c8 22.♗f1!



The ♖c3 is also not in its best possible position, so Petrosian plans the manoeuvre ♖c3-e2-d4.

22...f5?!

Black forces the exchange of the ♖e4, but the remaining ♖f3 will palpably limit the range of the ♗b7. But in return the position is opened up, which is for the white bishop pair a cause for rejoicing.

23.exf5 24.♖a4 ♖e8 25.♗d2

Petrosian now has a very great, probably decisive, advantage. Things continued:

25...♗c5 26.♗xc5 bxc5 27.♖c4 ♖e5 28.♖a4 a6

28...♖b6 29.♖xc5+-.

29.♖xc5!+- axb5 30.♖xb7! ♖xa1

31.♖xc8+ ♖f7 32.♖d8+ ♖e7

33.♖c6+ ♖d7 34.♖xe5+ ♖xc8

35.♖xg6 hxg6 36.♗c3 1-0

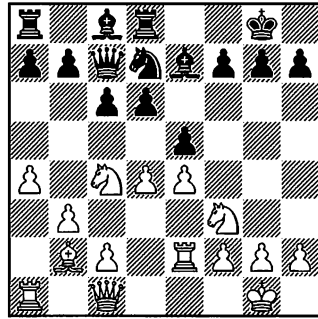
The examples considered so far all had the sort of position which has a symmetrical distribution of pawns and open c- and d-files. This type of position

is dealt with in niggardly fashion in the literature devoted to the middlegame – and yet from the strategic point of view it is in no way as ‘boring’ as it may appear at first glance!

We continue with a few examples of the f6/e5-barrier in other structures:

### ► 3.5 Blumenfeld–Alekhine

Moscow (2nd match game) 1908



13...f6

Alekhine decides to restrict the opposing bishop, though in doing so he also hems in his own ♗e7.

An alternative would be 13...exd4!? 14.♗xd4 (or 14.♖xd4 ♖e5) 14...♖c5 with possibilities for both sides.

14.♖h4

14.♖e3!? ♖f8 15.c4 ♖e6 with chances for both sides.

14...♖f8 15.♖e3 ♖e6 16.dxe5?

A positional mistake. It does not improve the ♗b2 (the ♖e5 which has wandered into the box is immediately replaced by the ♖d6), whereas its counterpart on e7 now gets some freedom. In addition, this exchange costs White his advantage in space. The correct way was 16.♖hf5 ♖f4 17.♖e1 with approximate equality.

16...dxe5 17.♖hf5 ♗b4!

This provokes c2-c3, so as to weaken the d3-square and leave the ♗b2 totally passive.

**18.c3**

18.g3 ♘g5干.  
 18.f3 ♘f4 19.♞f2 ♙xf5 20.exf5 (20.♘xf5  
 ♙c5 21.♘e3 ♚b6 22.a5 ♙xe3 23.axb6  
 ♘e2+ 24.♙f1 ♘xc1-+) 20...♙c5干.

18...♘f4 19.♞d2 ♙xf5 20.♘xf5  
 ♙c5 21.b4 ♙f8 22.♞xd8  
 22.♚c2 ♞xd2 23.♚xd2 ♞d8干 ♠...♚d7.  
 22...♞xd8 23.♚c2 ♚d7 24.♞f1?!  
 ♚d3干

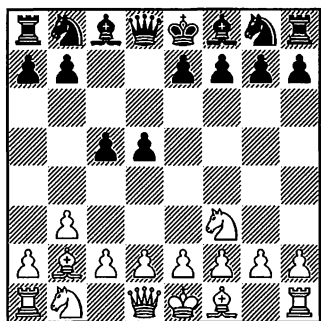
Black won after 33 moves.

► **3.6 Lisitsin–Botvinnik**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1944

**1.♘f3 d5 2.b3 c5 3.♙b2**

This natural move allows Black to set up the barrier f6-e5 against White's queen's bishop. The alternative is 3.e3, and if 3...f6?!, then 4.d4, thus looks better.



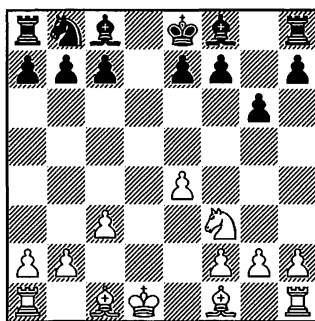
**3...f6! 4.e3 e5 5.♙b5+ ♘c6 6.0-0  
 ♙d6干**

Thanks to his superior centre and the relative inefficacy of the ♙b2 Black has achieved more than equality.

► **3.7 Rashkovsky–Mikhalchishin**

Moscow 1981

**1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 d5  
 4.cxd5 ♘xd5 5.e4 ♘xc3 6.dxc3  
 ♚xd1+ 7.♙xd1**



This opening variation is only harmless if Black reacts appropriately.

In the game Andersson-Tempone, Buenos Aires 1979, Black was outplayed after 7...c5?! 8.♙e3 b6 9.a4 ♘c6 10.♙b5 ♙d7 11.♙c2 ♙g7 12.♞hd1 a6 13.♙c4 ♙g4 14.h3 ♙xf3 15.gxf3 0-0 16.f4 ♞a7 17.e5 a5 18.♞d2 e6 19.♞ad1 ♞c8.

For the remainder of the game, see ⇨ *Example 23.3*.

The stereotypical 7...♙g7?! can have quite similar consequences – then the bishop is biting on granite.

**7...f6!**

The second player now begins to erect the barrier f6/e5, which will cramp the ♘f3 and the ♙c1.

**8.h4?!**

This allows Black to carry out his plan comfortably.

Instead of that, 8.e5 has been seen in some games, to prevent ...e7-e5, but in any case after 8...♘c6 9.exf6 exf6 it only leads to equality.

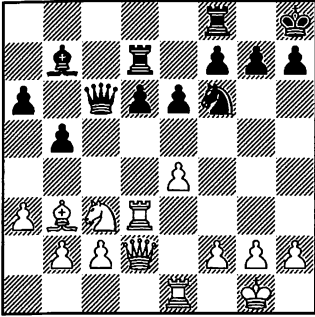
White can also regroup his problem pieces in the good time – 8.♙e3 e5 9.♘d2 – though then he hardly manages more than equality either.

**8...♙g4 9.♙c2 e5! 10.♘d2 h5  
 11.♙c4 ♙e7 12.a4 a5 13.b3  
 ♙e6**

Black already has the more comfortable game.

► **3.8 An.Sokolov–Portisch**

Rotterdam 1989



**20.f3!**

With this move White restricts both Black's minor pieces and secures for himself an advantage which though not a major one is a lasting one.

**20...♖fd8 21.♗d1 ♕c5+ 22.♗f2 ♖g8 23.♗e2 ♗e5**

An alternative worth considering was **23...♗xf2+ 24.♖xf2 ♖f8**, although White would then be somewhat better according to the line indicated by An. Sokolov: **25.c4 bxc4 26.♖xc4.**

**24.♗d4 ♗g5 25.a4**

Till now Black had only the one weakness on d6, which was easy to defend. Sokolov begins to worry his opponent on the queenside in order to eventually inflict a second pawn weakness on him there. Because both Black's rooks and minor pieces are passively placed, effective counterplay is nowhere to be seen.

**25...h5 26.♗e3 ♗xe3+**

Black should perhaps have continued to avoid the exchange of queens: **26...♗e5!?** (An.Sokolov).

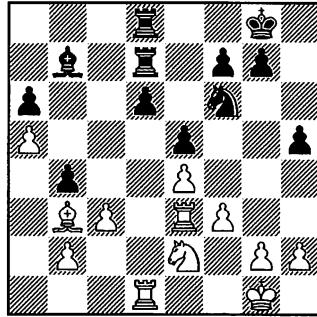
**27.♖xe3 b4**

After **27...bxa4 28.♖xa4** the aforementioned second weakness would have arisen on a6.

**28.a5 e5**

**28...♖c6 29.♗d4 ♖b7 30.♗xe6! fxe6 31. ♖xe6+ ♖f8 32.♖xd7 ♖xd7 33.♖b3+-.**

**29.c3!**



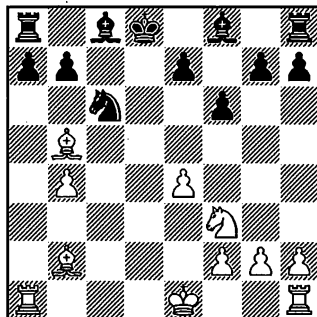
The white initiative on the queenside has actually become very dangerous, and Black continues to be totally passive.

**29...bxc3 30.♗xc3 ♖f8 31.♖c4 ♖c7 32.♖f1 ♖e7 33.♗a4 ♖c2 34.♖b3 ♖c7 35.♗c3± ♗d7?? 36.♖xa6 ♖a8 36...♖xa6 37.♗d5+, 36...♖xc3 37.♖xb7. 37.♖f1+-**

Now another example with open c- and d-files, but this time White avoids the erection of the e5/f6-barrier:

► **3.9 Kasparov–Kortchnoi**

Skelleftea 1989



If it were Black's move here, he would immediately restrict the radius of the

white minor pieces on b2 and e5 by means of ...e5!. Of course Kasparov wants to prevent this.

**12.e5!±**

After this the said pieces continue to remain active. Thanks to his major lead in development and the endangered position of the opposing king, White's position is clearly superior despite his being a pawn down.

For the reader who may be curious, here is the remainder of the game:

**12...♙g4 13.♙xc6 bxc6 14.♘d4 fxe5 15.♘xc6+ ♚c7**

**15...♙e8** was no better: 16.0-0 e6 17. ♜fc1 ♙d6 18.b5 ♙c7 19.♘xe5 ♙xe5 20.♙xe5 ♙f7 21.♞c7 with a winning position in Uhlmann-Szymczak, Warsaw 1983.

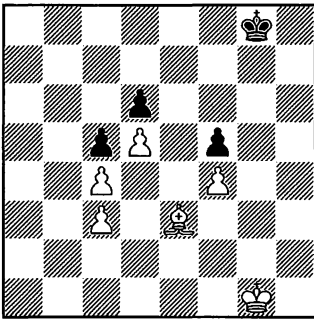
**16.♘xe5 ♙h5 17.0-0 ♙e8 18. ♜fc1+ ♚b7 19.♘c4 e5 20.♙xe5 h5 21.♘a5+ ♚b6 22.♙c7+ ♚a6 23.♘c6+**

Black resigned.

**Technique No. 4**

**II. The 'bishop cage' after ...♙xc3! b2xc3**

Here we are talking about the following pattern:

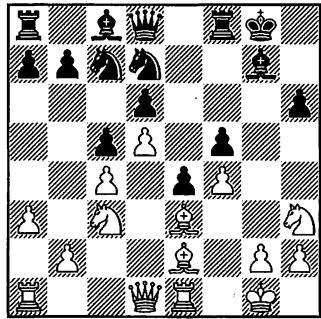


With a pawn structure of this sort on the queenside the white bishop will hardly ever constitute a threat along the long diagonal.

If in addition – as for example in the diagram – the bishop is hindered by one of its own pawns on the c1-h6 diagonal, then it can almost appear as though it is trapped in a cage.

► **4.1 Bronstein–Petrosian**

Amsterdam (Candidates' tournament) 1956



If White were to succeed in playing g2-g4, he could work up a dangerous initiative on the kingside. This could also be combined with queenside activity by b2-b4. And with all that there is no sign of any effective counterplay for Black. However, the game continued:

**17...♙xc3!**

A grandiose idea. Black voluntarily exchanges his lovely 'King's Indian' bishop, but by doing so he achieves the following:

- The knight, which in the event of g2-g4 and then an exchange on g4 or f5 would threaten the ♖e4, has been eliminated (moreover, if required the knight could also participate in the preparation of the important thrust g2-g4: ♜c3-d1-e3 or -f2).
- The advance b2-b4 is now out.
- The ♙e3 can now no longer have any hope of reaching the long diagonal – this idea is frustrated not only by the ♖c5, but also by its own ♖c3. The cage door is shut by its own pawn on f4.

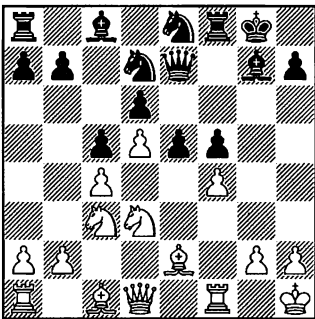
18.bxc3 ♜f6 19.a4 ♙h8 20.♜f2

White tries to prepare g2-g4, but his opponent has enough forces to prevent this.

20...♞g8 21.♙h1 ♜e8 22.♞g1 ♜g6  
23.♜d2 ♙d7 24.g3 ♞ae8 25.a5  
♞e7 26.♞ab1 ♙c8 27.♞g2 ♞eg7  
28.♞bg1 ♜ce8 29.h3 h5 1/2-1/2

## ► 4.2 Timman–Tal

Tallinn 1973



13...e4! 14.♜f2

14.♜e1!? ∞ Δ♜c2-e3, Gligoric-Quinteros, Leningrad (Interzonal tournament) 1973.

14...♙xc3!

Just like in the previous example the white queen's bishop becomes a very passive piece after this exchange.

15.bxc3 ♜df6 16.♙e3 ♙h8

With the intention of bringing the rook on to the g-file. Taking into account the unalterable pawns on c3 and c5 the h8-square is a safe place for the king – no opposing piece can threaten it on the long diagonal.

17.h3?

Perhaps Timman was hoping he would later get in g2-g4, but in reality h2-h3 turns out to be a serious weakening.

17...♞g8 18.♜d2

In the event of 18.♞g1 Black would have the pleasant choice between 18...♜g4 and 18...♞g3.

18...♜g7 19.♜d1

19.g4? fxg4 20.hxg4 ♜xg4!-+.

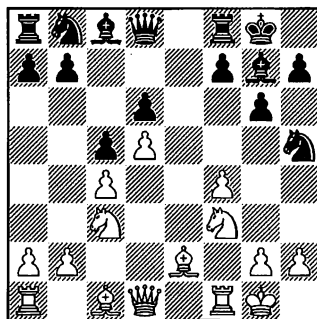
19...♜gh5 20.♙xh5 ♜xh5 21.♙f2  
♙d7 22.♙e1 ♞af8! 23.♜e3 ♜f6

In view of the impending attack after ...♜f6-h6, ...♞f8-f6-g6, White's situation is not an enviable one.

## ► 4.3 Shamis–Pelts

Kharkov (USSR Ch) 1967

1.d4 ♜f6 2.c4 g6 3.♜c3 ♙g7  
4.e4 d6 5.f4 0-0 6.♜f3 c5 7.d5  
e6 8.♙e2 exd5 9.exd5 ♜h5  
10.0-0



10...♙xc3! 11.bxc3 ♖g4?!

Black under-estimates the circumstance that the cage for the ♙c1 has not yet been finally closed and that it can be opened forcibly:

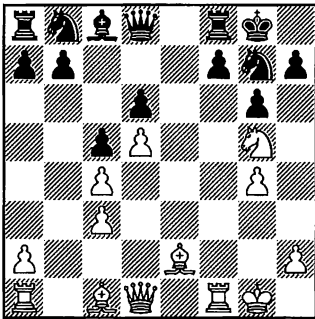
12.f5!

A pawn sacrifice to free the ♙c1, which now no longer has a direct counterpart and thus it becomes especially dangerous.

12...♙xf5 13.♗g5 ♖g7

Or 13...♜f6 14.g4 ♙c8 15.♙f4♞.

14.g4 ♙c8



For the pawn he has sacrificed White has obtained more than sufficient compensation. All Black's pieces are passively placed, and in addition without the fianchetto bishop the dark squares on Black's kingside are susceptible to attack.

15.♞e1

15.♜e4!?

15...f6

15...h6 16.♜e4 f5 17.gxf5 ♜xf5 18.♙g4♞.

16.♜e4 ♜e8 17.♞g3 ♞e7 18.♙d3 ♜d7 19.♙h6 ♜f7 20.♞ae1 ♜e5 21.g5! f5 22.♜xd6! ♜xd6 23.♞xe5 ♞c7 24.♞fe1 ♙d7 25.♞f4 ♞e8 26.♞1e2 a6 27.h4

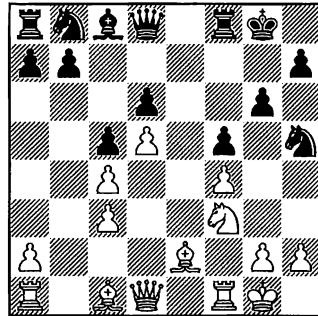
Black was never able to free himself from his opponent's pressure and h4-h5 sets in motion the next wave of the attack.

#### ► 4.4 Forintos–Gligoric

Ljubljana 1969

The first eleven moves were the same as in the previous game.

11...f5?



Now f4-f5 is no longer available to White. On the other hand the options for the ♙c8 are also restricted, but Black can try to employ it on the e8-a4 diagonal.

12.♜g5 ♜g7

The advantage in space compensates White for his slightly inferior pawn structure and the passivity of the bishop pair. Gligoric evaluates the position as level.

13.♙f3 ♜d7 14.♞e1

After 14.♜e6?! ♜xe6 15.dxe6 ♜f6 16.♙d5 ♞e7 17.♞e1 ♜e4 (≠ Gligoric) 18.♙xe4 fxe4 19.♞xe4 ♙xe6 Black is somewhat better thanks to his more active bishop.

14...♜f6 15.♞b1! ♞e8 16.♞xe8+ ♞xe8 17.♞b2!

△18.♞e2.

17...♙d7!? 18.♞xb7

18.♞e2 ♞f8 19.♞e1 ♞e8=.

18...♞b8 19.♞xb8

19.♞xa7 ♞b1♞.

19...♞xb8

White's extra pawn does not count for much in view of the passivity of his bishops and his inferior pawn structure.

20.♖c2 h6 21.♘h3 ♜e8 22.♙d2  
♙a4 23.♜c1 ♘g4 24.♗f2 ♗xf2 25.

♙xf2 ♜e7 26.♚g1 ♘e8 27.♜b1  
Draw agreed.

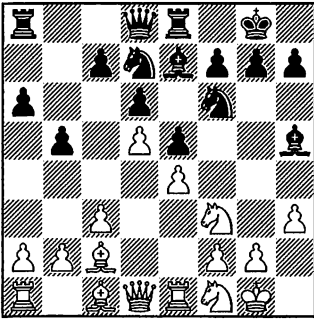
## Technique No. 5

### III. Capablanca's motif: immobilising the bishop

The idea is as follows: generally with the aid of the pawns it is possible to shut the bishop into one particular corner of the board. Then, based on the superior forces at your command, you try to take the initiative on the opposite flank. Capablanca was particularly successful with this method:

#### ► 5.1 Capablanca–Black

New York 1916



14.g4!

Many less experienced players would do without this move, because it apparently weakens the position of their own king. But the opposing pieces are too passively placed to be able to exploit this.

14...♙g6

The sacrifice 14...♗xg4 15.hxg4 ♙xg4 would make no sense – after 16.♗e3 ♙h5 17.♗f5 Black would not have a whiff of compensation.

15.♗g3 h6 16.a4!

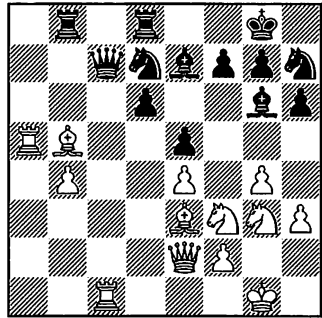
Now, after the ♙g6 has been eliminated by being 'trapped' on the kingside,

Capablanca initiates play on the other side of the board.

16...♗h7 17.♜e2 ♜b8 18.axb5  
axb5 19.b4!

This fixes the pawn weakness on b5.

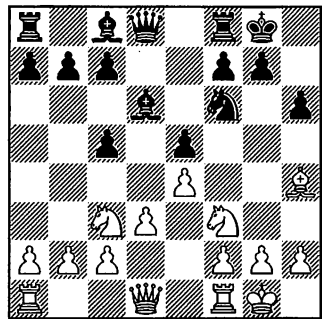
19...♜c8 20.♙d3 c6 21.dxc6  
♜xc6 22.♞a5 ♜xc3 23.♙xb5  
♜c7 24.♙e3 ♞ed8 25.♞c1±



White is dominant on the queenside. The ♙g6 is, just like some of Black's other minor pieces, still completely ineffectual.

#### ► 5.2 Winter–Capablanca

Hastings 1919



**10.♘d5?**

A positional mistake – now Black gets the opportunity to isolate the opposing bishop from the struggle for the rest of the game. The correct move was **10.♘d2** Δ♘c4-e3 (Donev).

**10...g5! 11.♘xf6+**

**11.♘xg5??** loses on account of **11...♘d5!**, whereas after **11.♙g3** Kasparov's suggestion of **11...♘d5** **12.exd5 ♙g4** **13.h3 ♙h5** Δ...f5 gives him a big advantage.

**11...♙xf6 12.♙g3 ♙g4 13.h3 ♙xf3**

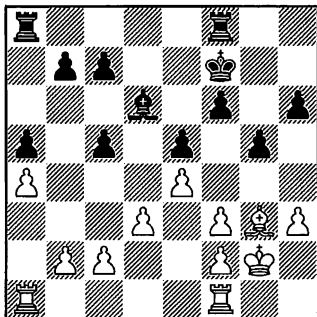
**14.♙xf3 ♙xf3 15.gxf3 f6 16.♚g2**

The ♙g3 is shut in on on the kingside. Now Capablanca logically plans to open files on the queenside.

**16...a5**

Δ17...a4.

**17.a4 ♚f7**



Capablanca was of the opinion that after move 15 his position was rather easily won. But is that really the case? For the moment the ♙d6 is very passive (of course, there is no comparison with the pitiful ♙g3, but nevertheless!), and if White manages to prevent the activation of his opponent's bishop, he can hope for a draw.

As Kasparov established, the correct method consists of **18.c4!**, so as to erect the fortress on the queenside and to leave the ♙d6 without any more work from

then on. The ex-world champion indicates the following variation: **18...c6** (Black prepares b7-b5) **19.♞fc1 ♞fb8 20.b3 b5 21.♞c3 ♞b6 22.♚f1 bxc4 23.dxc4 ♞ab8 24.♞a3**, after which the white king runs to c2. Also after **22...bxa4** (instead of **22...bxc4**) **23.♞xa4 ♙c7 24.♚e2 ♞b4 25.♚d2** one cannot see how Black is to crack open the white fortress.

All that leads us to the conclusion that, although **10.♘d5?** was obviously a mistake to which Capablanca reacted in instructive fashion, Winter could probably have saved the game by continuing to play very precisely.

And now the rest of the game:

**18.♞h1?! ♚e6?!**

**18...♞fb8** and then ...c7-c6, ...b7-b5 was more urgently required so as to open lines on the queenside. After the text move White could again have played c2-c4 and, as explained above, could have managed to set up a fortress.

**19.h4?!**

The opening of the h-file achieves absolutely nothing. As was said, **19.c4** was stronger.

**19...♞fb8 20.hxg5 hxg5 21.b3**

Now White can no longer achieve the set-up described by Kasparov, but it would nevertheless remain questionable whether the black position after **21.c4 c6 22.b3 b5 23.♞a3 bxa4 24.bxa4 ♞b2 25.♞c1** could be won: the black bishop is equally trapped in its own camp, there is nowhere the king can invade and operations with ...f6-f5 or ...g5-g4 would also bring the white bishop back to life. However, the text move should also only mean a transposition of moves.

**21...c6 22.♞a2?**

This was the final chance to play **22.c4 b5 23.♞a3**, after which the position

from the last note would have come about.

**22...b5 23.♖ha1**

23.c4 is now followed by 23...bxc4 24. bxc4 ♖b3 25.♞d1 ♖ab8 26.♙f1 ♖c3 27.♙e2 ♖bb3 28.♖aa1 ♖a3 (with the threat of 29...♞xd3!), and Black wins a pawn.

**23...c4!**

Black finally activates his bishop and from now on he is really playing with an extra piece. The struggle has been decided.

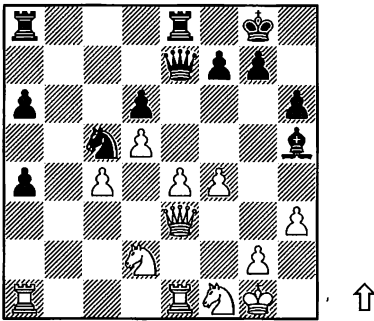
**24.axb5**

Or 24.dxc4 bxc4 25.bxc4 ♖b4 26.♙f1 ♖ab8 27.♙e2 ♖xc4-+.

**24...cxb3 25.cxb3 ♖xb5 26.♖a4 ♖xb3 27.d4 ♖b5 28.♞c4 ♖b4 29.♖xc6 ♖xd4 0-1**

### ► 5.3 Capablanca–Bogoljubow

London 1922



In this complicated position Capablanca finds a very interesting plan:

**28.g4!?**

An alternative would be 28.e5 ♖g6∞.

**28...♖g6 29.f5!**

With this move White is of course weakening the e5-square and making his ♖e4 backward, but in return the opposing bishop has to go to h7, where for a long time it will be excluded from the struggle.

**29...♖h7 30.♗g3**

White overprotects e4 and thus prepares the manoeuvre ♗d2-f3-d4.

**30...♙e5 31.♗g2 ♖ab8 32.♖ab1 f6**

Intending to free the bishop with the manoeuvre ...♖h7-g8-f7; but, on the other hand, the e6-square now becomes weak.

**33.♗f3 ♖b2+ 34.♖xb2**

An interesting variation would now arise after 34.♙h1 – 34...♙xg3 35.♖xb2 ♖xf5! 36.gxf5 ♖xe4 37.♙f2 ♙xh3+ 38.♗h2 ♗d3 39.♖xe4 ♗xf2+ 40.♖xf2 ♙b3∞.

**34...♙xb2+ 35.♖e2 ♙b3**

The ♖h7 still requires a lot of time to get back into play, but the activity of the remaining black pieces, the dangerous passed a4-pawn and the weakness of the pawns on c4 and e4 offer Black considerable compensation for the awkward situation of his bishop. Nevertheless, Capablanca's idea of g2-g4, f4-f5 is extremely instructive.

**36.♗d4!?**

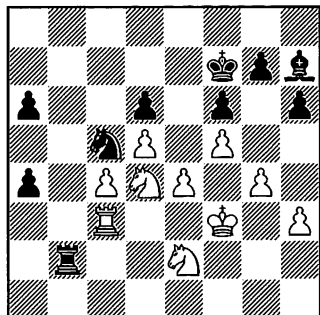
White continues with his plan of transferring the knight to e6 and sacrifices the ♖c4 for that reason.

Capablanca thought that Black could not even take the pawn on account of 36...♙xc4 37.♞c2 ♙xd5 38.♗e6. But as Kasparov discovered, the great Cuban was wrong – after 38...♙b3! White could resign with a clear conscience.

Of course, 37.♞c2 would be a blunder. Instead, Kasparov recommends 37.♗e6 ♖b8 with an unclear position. A further interesting option is 37.h4, and the threat of g4-g5 turns out to be rather unpleasant.

Be that as it may, we have to realise that 36...♙xc4 would have led to an unclear struggle. In the game Black did not take advantage of this opportunity.

36...♖xe3? 37.♗xe3 ♜b8 38.♞c3  
♝f7 39.♝f3 ♜b2 40.♞ge2



The black bishop remains unemployed, the ♞d4 is aiming for e6, and compared to the situation before the exchange of queens Black now has no effective counterplay in spite of his passed pawns.

40...♙g8 41.♞e6 ♞b3

After 41...♞xe4 Kasparov gives 42.♝xe4 ♜xe2+ 43.♝d4 ♜d2+ 44.♜d3 ♜xd3+ 45.♝xd3 h5 46.♝c3 hxg4 47.hxg4 ♙h7 48.♝b4 g6 49.♞d4+- — this variation really clearly brings out the pitiful position of the black bishop.

42.c5! dxc5 43.♞xc5 ♞d2+  
44.♝f2 ♝e7?

44...♞b1 (Capablanca) was stronger, although, as was established in later analyses, the white position was also winning in this case after 45.♞c4! a3 46.♞e6. The resulting variations are very interesting as well as beautiful, but they no longer have anything to do with the subject of this book. Anyone interested in seeing more of them should consult Kasparov's in-depth analysis in *My Great Predecessors* (volume 1).

Now White wins effortlessly:

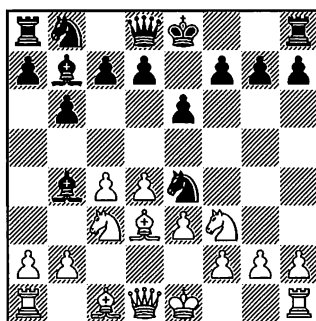
45.♝e1 ♞b1 46.♜d3 a3 47.d6+  
♝d8 48.♞d4 ♜b6 49.♞de6+  
♙xe6 50.fxex6 ♜b8 51.e7+ ♝e8  
52.♞xa6 1-0

In the following example, keeping the black bishop in a cage works in a slightly different way: after a pawn sacrifice the latter is shunted on to a siding on a5; after that the ♙b7 is also hemmed in by the formation ♞c4/d5/e4.

## ► 5.4 Balashov–Romanishin

Lvov 1978

1.d4 ♞f6 2.c4 e6 3.♞f3 b6 4.♞c3  
♙b4 5.e3 ♙b7 6.♙d3 ♞e4



### 7.0-0!

This developing move represents a pawn sacrifice. The point of it will soon become clear.

### 7...♞xc3?!

Black accepts the offer, but in doing so puts his bishop in a highly unfavourable position. Alternatives are 7...f5 or 7...♙xc3 8.bxc3, and here 8...♞xc3 9.♖c2 ♙xf3 10.gxf3 ♖g5+ 11.♝h1 ♖h5 12.♜g1 ♖xf3+ 13.♜g2 f5 14.♙a3 ♞e4 15.♜f1♙, 8...0-0 and 8...d6 have been played.

### 8.bxc3 ♙xc3

After 8...♙e7 9.e4 White has a clear advantage thanks to his strong pawn centre.

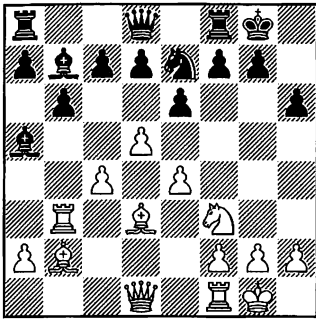
### 9.♜b1 ♞c6

9...0-0? looked absolutely unsatisfactory on account of 10.♙a3 d6 11.♖c2 with the double attack on c3 and h7.

10.♖b3 ♘a5 11.e4 h6

Or 11...♗e7 12.d5 ♘g6 13.♗d4 ♖e7  
14.♙c2 ♘b4 15.♗b5 with a very strong  
initiative for the pawn he has sacrificed,  
Gligoric-Larsen, Lugano (Olympiad)  
1970.

12.d5 ♗e7 13.♙b2 0-0



The black king's bishop has strayed to the queenside, and in addition its colleague on b7 has been eliminated from the action by the d5- and e4-pawns. These are for White favourable preconditions for an attack on the kingside, where his opponent has noticeably fewer forces available for the defence.

14.♗e5! ♗g6 15.♗g4 ♖e7 16.f4!  
△f4-f5.

16..f5 17.exf5 exf5 18.♗xh6+!  
gxh6 19.♖h5 ♗h7 20.♙xf5 ♗xf5  
20...♗g8 21.♗h3 ♖f8 22.g4+-.

21.♖xf5 ♗f8 22.♖c2 ♖c5+  
23.♗h1 ♙xd5 24.♗g3 ♗g8

24...♙f7 25.f5+-.

25.f5 ♗f8 26.f6+ ♗g6

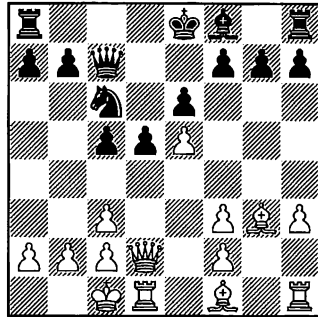
26...♗g6 27.f7+-.

27.♗xg6 ♗xg6 28.f7 1-0

In the following example the ♙f1 is shut in the bottom right corner of the board:

## ► 5.5 Yates–Capablanca

Moscow 1925



11...♙c4!

This limits the ♙f1. After any other move White could have played 12.c4, after which the ♙f1 can pop up on d3. At the same time ...c4 increases the mobility of the ♙f8. Now White must try at least to get rid of his 'bad' ♙g3.

12.f4

△13.f5.

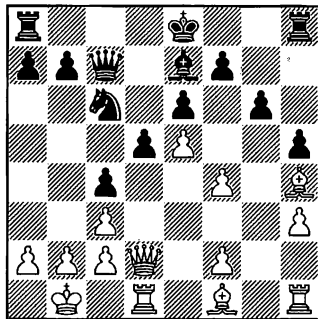
12...g6 13.♗b1

13.♙h4!?

13...h5

13...♙e7!?

14.♙h4 ♙e7

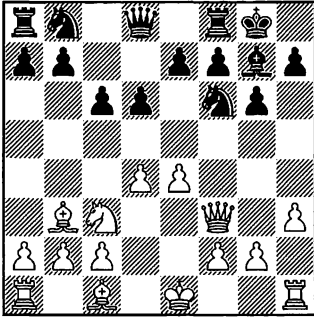


The dark-squared bishops are now exchanged, but the ♙f1 remains in its prison, the walls of which are built of the black pawns placed on light squares – a successful example of Capablanca's

Rule No. 2 ( $\Leftrightarrow$  *Technique No. 6!*). Black's chances are consequently preferable.

► **5.6 Medina Garcia–Botvinnik**

Palma de Mallorca 1967



**9...e6!**

Black narrows the effective radius of the  $\text{♞b3}$  and plans ...d6-d5, after which that bishop would be totally passive.

**10.♞g5 h6 11.♞h4 ♘bd7 12.0-0-0!**

According to Botvinnik this is a risky decision. And in fact the queenside turns out to be a dangerous place for the white king, especially if Black manages to activate his bishop by means of ...c6-c5.

**12...♞a5 13.♞e2?!**

13.♞he1.

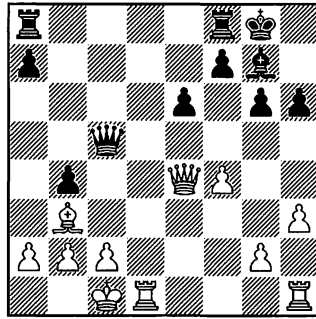
**13...b5 14.f4 b4 15.♘b1 d5!**

Now the  $\text{♞b3}$  becomes even more passive. White could be tempted to try out tit for tat – 16.e5 ♘e4. However, he would not manage to keep the  $\text{♞g7}$  out of the action in the long run – Black continues with ...c5 and where appropriate then ...f6 (17.f5!? followed by g2-g4).

**16.♘d2 c5!**

The threat is 17...c4. With his next move White enters a series of exchanges in the hope that it will help him weaken his opponent's initiative.

**17.♞xf6 ♘xf6 18.dxc5 dxe4!  
19.♘xe4 ♘xe4 20.♞xe4 ♞xc5**



The  $\text{♗d5}$  has disappeared, but thanks to the  $\text{♞e6}$  the white bishop continues to be ineffective. The  $\text{♞g7}$ , on the other hand, is raging down the long diagonal, e.g. there is a strong threat of the manoeuvre ...♞e7-f6 with disaster on the long diagonal.

**21.♞d7 ♞ad8+ 22.♞hd1? ♞xd7  
23.♞xd7 ♞g1+ 24.♚d2 ♞f2+  
25.♚d3 ♞f1+ 26.♞e2 ♞xf4,**

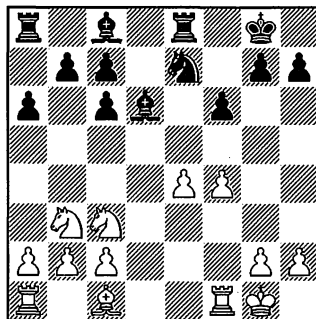
and Black won.

In the next two examples White shuts in the opposing queen's bishop with an apparently double-edged looking pawn move – in each case the price is giving up the control of a central square (e5 or d5).

These two examples too can be seen in connection with 'Capablanca's Rules' in the next technique!

► **5.7 Lasker–Capablanca**

St. Petersburg 1914



What we have here is a position typical of the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez. White has the better pawn structure, but in return Black has the bishop pair.

To understand Lasker's next move, we need to think prophylactically. What is Black planning to do next?

Of course he wants to develop his ♖c8. The option ...♖c8-d7 looks a bit passive, but the two alternatives ...b7-b6, ...c6-c5 and then ...♖c8-b7 (with pressure against e4) or ...♖c8-e6 look good. In addition, in the last case White also has to reckon with ...f6-f5, as a result of which Black forces the exchange or the advance of the ♔e4 and consequently wins the d5-square for his pieces.

It can be sensed that Black has come out of the opening well and can even hope to seize the initiative after a few more moves. Naturally Lasker senses that too and at this point he takes a very interesting decision.

**12.f5!**

The disadvantages catch one's eye immediately. The ♔e4 becomes weak and backward, White devalues his pawn majority on the kingside and gives up control of the e5-square, which can now become a secure outpost for the black knight.

But on the other hand: how should Black now develop his bishop? The option ...♖e6 no longer exists, whilst after ...♖b7 the e6-square becomes very weak.

In addition White has also prevented the aforementioned idea of ...f6-f5 and at the latest after the exchange of the dark-squared bishops it will become clear how this fits in with Capablanca's first rule (⇒ *Technique No. 6*).

All this should in no way mean that 12.f5 forcibly brings White an advantage.

But at the very least Black has more difficult problems to solve than would have been the case with a standard course of the game without f4-f5.

**12...b6**

Capablanca decides on the fianchetto. An alternative to that was 12...♖d7!?. As said, this move may look slightly passive, but with it Black develops his bishop without losing control over the e6-square. In that case the game would have been more or less level after e.g. 13.♖f4 ♖xf4! (13...♞ad8?! 14.♖xd6 cxd6 15.♞ad1 with the initiative) 14.♞xf4 b6 (or 14...♞ad8).

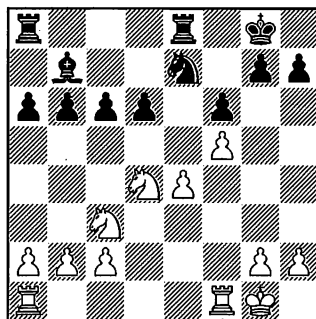
**13.♖f4 ♖b7?!**

An inaccuracy. 'Basically Black should be happy to resolve the doubled pawns on the c-file, but here the pawn on d6 becomes a lasting weakness' (Kasparov).

And it is not only the ♔d6 which is concerned, there is also the fact that Black weakens the e6-square with ...♖b7, without previously having prevented the move ♘b3-d4 by means of ...c6-c5.

13...♖xf4! was stronger: 14.♞xf4 c5! 15.♞d1 and only then 15...♖b7, e.g. 16.♞f2 (16.♞d7 ♞ac8 Δ...♖c6, Δ...♘e5) 16...♞ad8 17.♞xd8 ♞xd8 18.♞d2 ♞xd2 19.♘xd2 ♘c6 20.♘d5 ♘d4 21.♘xc7 ♘xc2 22. ♘c4 ♖xe4 23.♘xb6 ♘b4 24.a3 ♘d3= (variations according to Kasparov).

**14.♖xd6 cxd6 15.♘d4**



It is becoming clear that Capablanca has not found the optimal solution to the problem of the development of his light-squared bishop. But it was not yet too late to correct this mistake: after 15...♙c8! Black would still have good chances of equalising. Here Kasparov points out, for example, 16.♞ad1 c5 17.♜de2 d5! 18.♜xd5 (18.exd5 ♜xf5) 18...♜xd5 19.♞xd5 ♙b7 20.♞d6 ♙xe4 21.♞xb6 ♙xc2=.

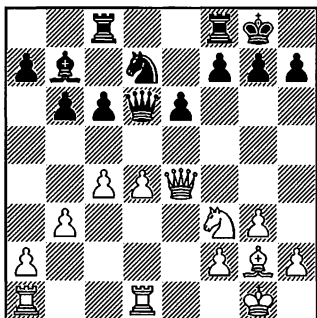
Instead of that Capablanca made a serious mistake:

**15...♞ad8? 16.♜e6 ♞d7 17.♞ad1 ♜c8**  
**18.♞f2 b5 19.♞fd2 ♞de7 20.b4**

with a strong initiative for White, with the black bishop continuing to remain passive. Lasker went on to win this game in the long run.

► **5.8 Portisch–Radulov**

Moscow (European Team Ch 1977)



Black is planning to free his bishop by ...♜f6 and then ...c6-c5. Can White prevent this?

**16.c5!**

This concedes to his opponent the d5-square and makes the ♖d4 backward – but what is more important is that the ♙b7 remains blocked in.

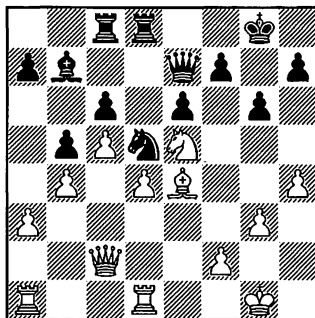
**16...♞e7**

16...bxc5 17.dxc5±.

**17.b4 ♞fd8 18.♞c2 ♜f6 19.♜e5**  
**♜d5 20.a3 b5 21.♙e4 g6**

21...♜f6 could be followed by 22.a4! with queenside initiative, whilst 21...h6 would palpably weaken the b1-h7 diagonal.

**22.h4**



**22...a5**

A despairing attempt to obtain counterplay.

**23.bxa5 ♞a8 24.a4 b4**

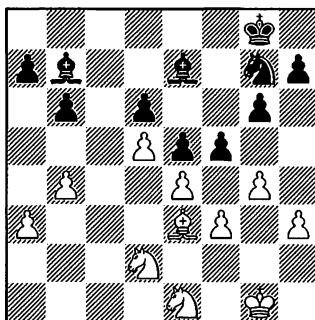
Or 24...♞xa5 25.axb5 ♞xb5 26.♞a7+–.

**25.♙xd5! ♜xd5 26.♞ab1 f6 27.♜g4 ♞ad8 28.♞xb4 ♙c8 29.♜e3 ♞5d7 30.♞b8 e5 31.d5! cxd5 32.c6 ♞d6 33.c7 ♞f8 34.♞xd5 f5 35.♞c5 ♞e6 36.♞xe7 ♞xe7 37.♞xc8 ♞xc8 38. ♞d8+ ♞e8 39. ♞xe8+ ♞xe8 40.♜d5 1-0**

In the next example too, a queen's bishop is immobilised on b7, after Black hesitated to activate it by a moment.

► **5.9 Seirawan–Andersson**

Skelleftea 1989



White has an advantage in space and the black pawns on the queenside can turn out to be weak – but if Andersson had now activated his light-squared bishop by **27...♙a6** (28.a4 ♙e2 Δ...♙d1), he would have obtained sufficient counter-play.

However, the game took a different course:

**27...h5? 28.gxf5 gxf5 29.b5!**

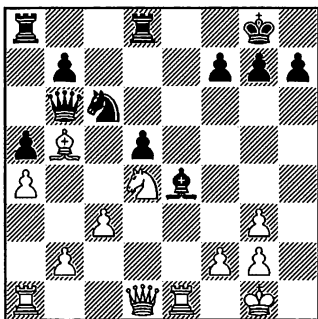
Now the ♙b7 is imprisoned in the cage of the opposing pawns and White has no problem carrying out his expansion on the queenside. There is nothing the ♙b7 can do but wait for one of the opposing knights to come to c6, so as to be able to swap it off, but then the first player gets a strong passed pawn.

**29...♗e8 30.♗c2 ♙h4 31.♙f2 ♙g5 32.♗c4 ♖f7 33.♗b4 fxe4 34.fxe4 ♖e7 35.♖g2 ♗d7 36.a4 ♖c7 37.♗c6 ♙xc6 38.dxc6 ♗f6 39.a5 bxa5 40.♙xa7 ♗xe4 41. ♗xa5 1-0**

In the final example Karpov manages by dint of a subtle pawn move to shunt the opposing bishop on to a siding for the duration:

► **5.10 Karpov–Uhlmann**

Madrid 1973



If it were now Black's move, he could easily go in for the variation **22...♗xd4 23.♗xd4 ♗xd4 24.cxd4 ♖ac8 25.f3 ♙f5 26.♖e7 ♖c2** (26...b6 is also not a bad move: **27.♖ae1 ♙e6**) **27.♖ae1 ♙e6**. The role of the black bishop, which in this line is disrupting the communication between the white rooks from e6, ought not to be overlooked.

Here Karpov takes a profound positional decision:

**22.g4!**

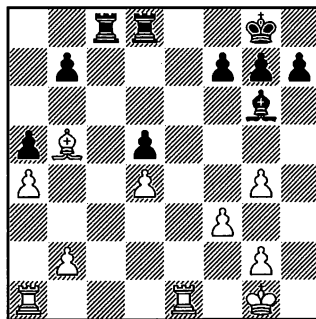
The first player deprives the ♙e4 of the f5-square and also prevents its return to the h3-c8 diagonal. At the same time the bishop is also cramped by its own ♗d5.

Actually, this move is in contradiction to Capablanca's second rule (see the following page!), according to which whenever there are bishops of the same colour one should when possible place one's own pawns on squares of the opposite colour to the bishop so as not to get in the way of the said bishop. But here the field of activity of the white bishop is on the queenside and the ♗g4 is not in the least in its way.

**22...♗xd4**

According to Karpov it was preferable to first play **22...♖ac8**.

**23.♗xd4 ♗xd4 24.cxd4 ♖ac8 25.f3 ♙g6**



'The first consequence of 22.g4 can be spotted. Instead of taking up an active position on f5 the bishop must occupy the observation point g6.' (Karpov)

**26. ♖e7 b6**

The position after 26... ♖c2 27. ♗ae1 h6 28. ♖1e2 ♖xe2 29. ♔xe2 b6 30. ♔b5 was very unpleasant for Black on account of

the difference in activity between the pieces and the weakness of the b6- and d5-pawns.

But the text move is certainly no better.

**27. ♗ae1 h6 28. ♖b7 ♖d6**

28... ♖c2 29. ♖e2 ♖xe2 30. ♔xe2 ♖d6 31. ♔b5± 'followed by the centralisation of the king' (Karpov).

**29. ♖ee7±**

## Technique No. 6

### IV. Which colour of squares for the pawns? For & against Capablanca's rules

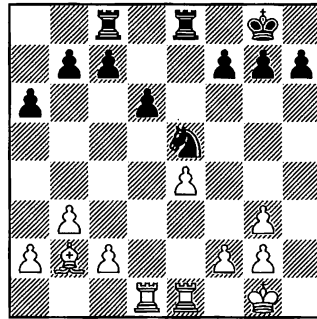
Capablanca established the following guidelines for the placing of the pawns – we shall restate them, slightly modified so as to avoid any misunderstandings:

- 1) if our opponent has a bishop but we do not, we must put our pawns on squares of the same colour as that opposing bishop  
(thus if our opponent has a light-squared bishop our pawns should be on light squares, if his bishop is dark-squared, they should be on dark squares).
- 2) But if we have a bishop, then the pawns should go on squares of the opposite colour, it does not matter whether our opponent also has a bishop or not.

Of course these rules must frequently be subject to modification according to the concrete demands of the position.

#### ► 6.1 Lasker–Capablanca

New York 1924

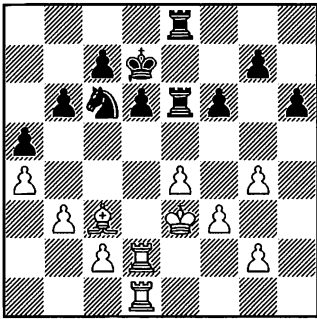


**20...f6!**

This example reinforces Capablanca's idea. White has a dark-squared bishop, and in order to limit its effective radius Black puts his f-pawn on a dark square. The ♕g7 will also continue to observe rule no.1 and remain where it is. Thus the pawn duo g7/f6 represents a barrier for the ♔b2. The same also lies in wait for him on the a3-f8 diagonal – should the bishop want to go to a3, its efficacy there would be clearly inhibited by the dark-squared pawn duo c7 and d6.

And of course in general this is the case: the more pawns Black places on dark squares, the more dark squares they control and the less freedom of movement the white bishop will have.

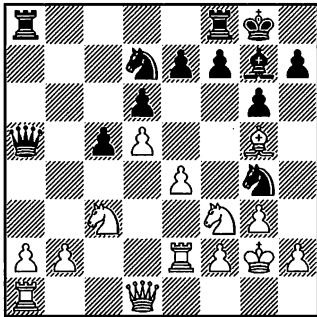
21.f3 ♖f7 22.g4 h6 23.♞e2 ♘c6  
24.♖f2 ♞e7 25.♙c3 a5! 26.♞d5  
b6 27.a4 ♞e6 28.♞d1 ♞ce8 29.  
♞ed2 ♖e7 30.♖e3 ♖d7 1/2-1/2



In spite of his advantage in space, there is nothing which White can undertake – his rooks do not have any open files and the bishop is too limited.

### ► 6.2 Gavrikov–Meshkov

USSR 1981



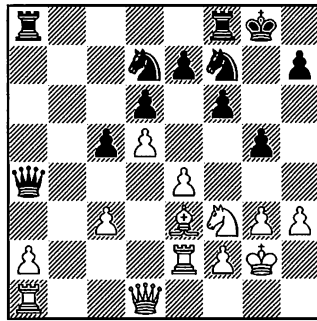
We see a position from the Volga Gambit – in this opening Black sacrifices a pawn on the third move so as to obtain an initiative on the queenside.

If Black had no dark-squared bishop here, he would employ Rule No. 1 and restrict the opposing bishop by means of ...f7-f6 and then ...g6-g5. But with the bishop on g7 he should not of course realise this idea – which moreover is in harmony with Rule No. 2.

14...♙xc3!?

A highly interesting idea. Black swaps off his active ♙g7, in order to then carry out the aforementioned restriction of the opposing bishop.

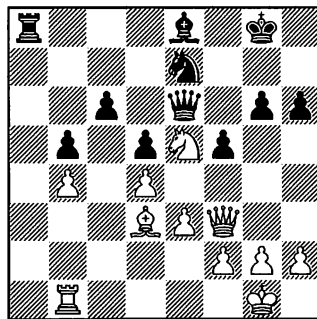
15.bxc3 f6 16.♙d2 ♔a4! 17.♙f4  
g5 18.h3 ♘h6 19.♙e3 ♘f7



Thanks to his pressure on the queenside and the passivity of the ♙e3 Black has sufficient compensation for the missing pawn.

### ► 6.3 Taimanov–Kotov

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



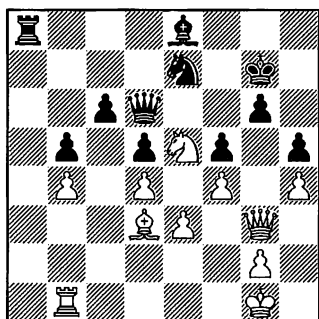
White has an incontestable advantage: His knight dominates the centre, the ♙e8 cannot even dream of comparing itself to the ♙d3 and Black's king position is weakened.

Let us first look at what happened next:

**35.h4 ♖g7 36.♗g3 ♞d6 37.f4**

According to Rule No. 2 White's pawns are correctly positioned – he has the light-squared bishop and practically all of his pawns are on dark squares. Things look very different for the second player: almost all of his pawns are 'wrongly' placed with respect to his bishop.

**37...h5!**



And now this pawn also infringes Capablanca's rule. But with it Black has set up a fortress which is hard to crack open: all the weak points in his camp are protected and it is practically impossible for White to open the position – by 37...h5 Black has prevented both h4-h5 and also a future g2-g4.

Despite that, Kotov lost this game after he let himself be tempted to win the ♖b4 and by doing so allowed the opposing pieces to invade his camp. That has nothing to do with the evaluation of the present position.

Let us return to the position in the initial diagram. In his famous tournament book

David Bronstein points out the following: because the opponent's weaknesses are on light squares, Taimanov should also attack the light squares. Instead of h2-h4 he had the very promising plan of preparing his attack (g2-g4) with h2-h3, ♖g1-h2 and ♞b1-g1. He gave yet another alternative – preparing a central breakthrough by means of f2-f3 and e3-e4.

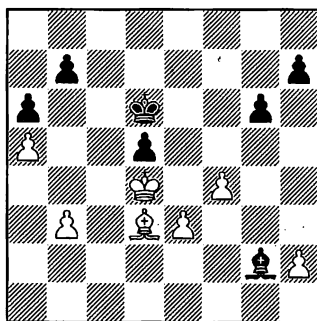
These two opportunities for a breakthrough are in contradiction to Capablanca's Rule No. 2 – White's pawns occupy light squares despite his having a light-squared bishop – but they accord with the demands of the position.

In effect, one can hang on to this: if a fortress is involved we must devote our attention to the possibilities for a breakthrough, which frequently contradicts Capablanca's rules.

And now we shall apply what we have learned to pure bishop endings:

## ► 6.4 Polugaevsky–Mecking

Mar del Plata 1971



**40.h4!**

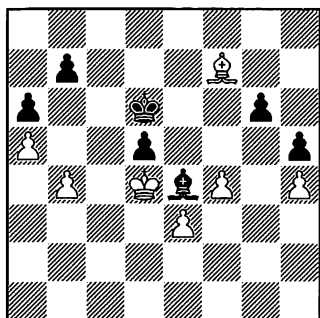
Extra prophylaxis against ...g6-g5.

**40...♙f3 41.b4!**

Now – in complete harmony with Rule No. 2 – all White's pawns are on dark

squares, which secures the maximum amount of mobility for his bishop.

41...♙h1 42.♙e2 ♘g2 43.♙g4  
 ♙e4 44.♙c8 ♔c7 45.♙e6 ♔d6  
 46.♙g8 h6 47.♙f7 h5 48.♙e8  
 ♙c2 49.♙f7 ♙e4



50.f5! ♙xf5

50...gxf5 51.♙xh5 ♔e6 loses on account of 52.♙d1 ♙g2 53.♙b3 ♙f3 54.h5 ♙xh5 55.♙xd5+ ♔d6 56.♙xb7 ♙e2 57.♙c8+- (Müller/Lamprecht).

51.♙xd5 ♙c8 52.e4 ♔e7

The alternatives were no better, e.g. 52...♔d7 53.♔c5 ♔c7 54.♙f7 g5 55.hxg5 h4 56.g6+- (Müller/Lamprecht) or 52...♔c7 53.♙f7+-.

53.♔e5

Zugzwang!

53...g5 54.hxg5 h4 55.g6 h3  
 56.g7 h2 57.g8 ♖ h1 ♖ 58.♖f7+  
 ♔d8 59.♖f8+ 1-0

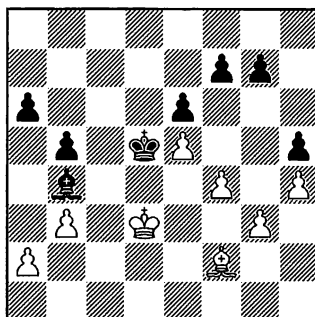
59...♔d7 60.♙e6+ ♔c6 61.♖c5#, therefore Black resigned:

In this endgame everything was clear-cut – Capablanca’s Rule No. 2 was confirmed.

But the following examples leave us with doubts as to whether Capablanca’s recommendations are really the non-plus-ultra.

## ► 6.5 Sveshnikov–Kasparov

Minsk (USSR Ch) 1979



The game continued:

33...g6

(played in accordance with Rule No. 2!)

34.♔e2 ♙c5,

and here White, according to Kasparov/Shakarov, could have held the game with 35.♙e1 (instead of 35.♙xc5 ♔xc5 36.♔d3 ♔b4 37.♔c2 ♔a3 38.♔b1 a5 39.♔a1 a4 40.bxa4 ♔xa4 41.♔b1 ♔a3 42.♔a1 b4 43.♔b1 b3 0-1) 35...♔e4 (35...b4 36.♔f3=) 36.♙a5.

Equally in the opinion of Kasparov/Shakarov Black could have played more strongly in the position in the diagram. After

33...♙a5!

(this forces White to worsen his position in view of the zugzwang)

34.♔e2 ♔e4 35.♙c5 f6 36.exf6  
 gx6

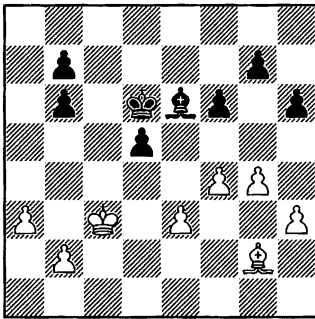
Black has excellent winning chances thanks to the idea of ...♔f5, e6-e5.

Instead of 34.♔e2 perhaps 34.a3 creates a better impression (White does not surrender the e4-square), but on the other hand another of White’s pawns would be on a dark square, which is not in his favour in view of his dark-squared bishop. In any case Black then sooner or

later gets in ...f7-f6 and then (after exchanging on f6) ...e6-e5, once again with good prospects of success.

► **6.6 Wojtkiewicz–Khalifman**

Rakvere 1993



**30.a4!!**

Obviously played against Rule No. 2, and yet this is the best move. How come? For the first player it is enormously important that the ♖b7 should remain where it is – after e3-e4 along with the exchange of the e4- and d5-pawns this is meant to prove the decisive weakness. Should White – instead of 30.a4 – carelessly decide on the natural move 30.♖d4, then Black reacts with 30...b5! and then ...b7-b6, when the position would already be drawn.

**30...g5 31.♖d4 ♗f7 32.♗f3 ♗e6 33.f5!!**

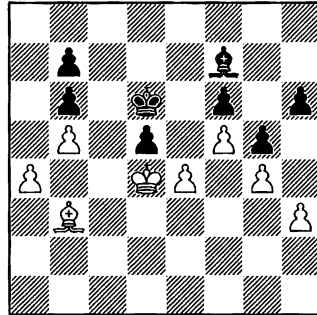
And once more White breaks Rule No. 2 – he puts another pawn on the same colour of square as his bishop.

But the main task is to deprive the opposing bishop of as much space to free itself as possible – and in this position that is much more important than securing for his own ♗f3 as much mobility as possible. Why that is so will soon become clear.

**33...♗f7 34.b4 ♗e8 35.b5!**

The third infraction against Rule No. 2!

**35...♗f7 36.♗d1 ♗g8 37.♗b3 ♗f7 38.e4**



Here at the latest one realises that it was of decisive importance to deprive the black bishop of the e6- and c6-squares.

**38...♗g8 39.♗a2 ♗f7 40.♗xd5 ♗xd5 41.exd5 ♖c7 42.♖c3 ♖d6 43.♖c4 ♖e5**

After 43...♖c7 or 43...♖d7 then 44.♖b4 followed by 45.a5 wins.

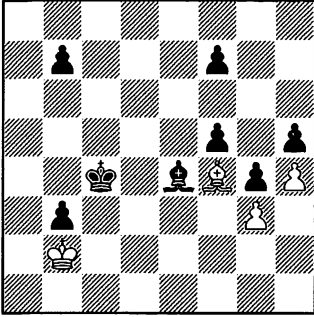
**44.a5! bxa5 45.♖c5 a4 46.d6 b6+ 47.♖c6 a3 48.d7 a2 49. d8♖ a1♖ 50.♖d6+ ♖e4 51. ♖xb6+-**

Admittedly, cases like the last two examples do not come about often and they can be considered as exceptions to Capablanca's guidelines. But there are other, far more typical positions which do not fit in with his rules.

For example, Rule No. 2 usually does not apply for the weaker side in endings with bishops of opposite colours (without other pieces on the board). In their highly recommendable book *Fundamental Chess Endings* Müller/Lamprecht show the following position:

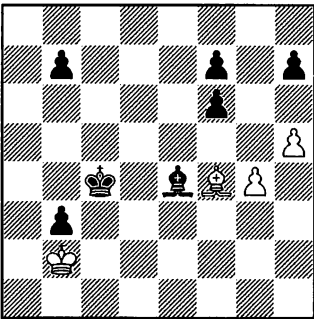
► **6.7 Müller/Lamprecht**

Textbook Example 2001



Despite being four(!) pawns behind, White holds the draw and does so only because his two remaining pawns are breaking Capablanca's Rule No. 2! They are on dark squares and they are effortlessly protected, whereas the opposing bishop cannot attack them.

You can easily imagine what would happen if, according to Rule No. 2, the white pawns were on light squares:

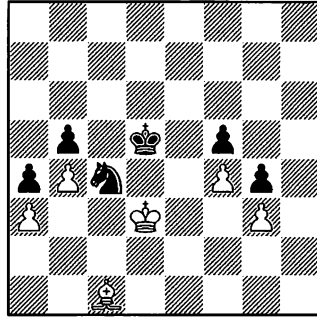


For example, **1.h6** (or 1.g5 fxg5 2.♙xg5 f5+) **1...♙f3** 2.g5 fxg5 3.♙xg5 f5 4.♙f4 ♙d5 5.♙c1 ♙d3 6.♙d6 ♙e4+ Δ...f5-f4. That means: in a pure bishop ending with bishops of opposite colours the weaker side should forget Capablanca's rule and act according to the diametrically opposed principle, as has been formulated with crystal clarity by Dvoretzky:

*'The weaker side should keep its pawns on the same colour of square as its own bishop.'*

► **6.8 Jan Timman**

1996/2004



White loses, quite independently of whose move it may be. If it is his own move White can resign straight away, if it is Black's some manoeuvres are required. The ♘c4 is dominating the ♙c1, because the latter is completely restricted by its own pawns. This still fits in with Rule No. 2, according to which it would be much better for White to have his pawns on the light squares.

But note the following: Black has posted his pawns on the light squares, in contradiction to Rule No. 1. But it was the only way for him to fix his opponent's pawns on the colour of square which did not suit them – we can see that in such circumstances Rule No. 1 to a certain extent contradicts itself!

For the curious reader, here is how Black wins if it is his move:

- 1...♙d6!** **2.♙d4 ♙c6** **3.♙c3 ♘d6**  
**4.♙d4 ♘e4** **5.♙e5 ♘xg3** **6.♙e3**  
**♘e2!** **7.♙xf5 g3** **8.♙g5**  
 Or **8.♙e6** g2 9.f5 g1♙ 10.♙xg1 ♘xg1 11. f6 ♘f3!, and Black wins the pawn ending.  
**8...♙d5!**

Centralisation!

But not 8...g2? 9.f5 g1♖+ 10.♙xg1 ♘xg1

11.f6 ♘f3+ 12.♙f4! ♘h4 13.♙g5!=.

**9.f5 ♙e4 10.♙c5 ♘d4!-+**

## Technique No. 7

# Paralysing opposing rooks

A comparably tricky business: rooks are either mechanically immobilised or otherwise robbed of their efficacy.

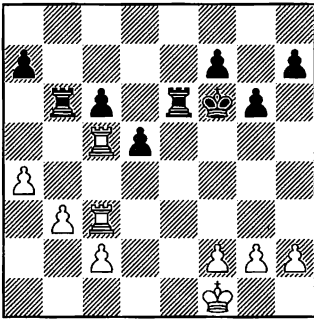
Since *open files* actually represent an elixir of life for rooks, this section serves as preparation for techniques such as:

'Karpov's line-blocking' (⇒ *Technique No. 19*) or

'Avoiding line opening – the padlock' (⇒ *Technique No. 21*).

### ► 7.1 Matsukevich–Borodin

USSR 1965



**31.a5! ♖a6 32.b4!**

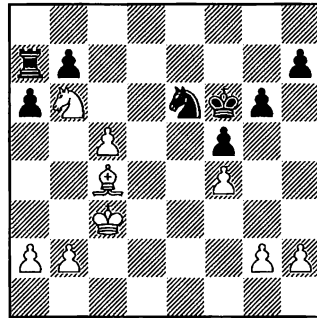
Now the ♖a6 has been completely shut in. White's next step is to swap off the 'normal' rook on e6.

**32...♙e7 33.♞e3 ♙d6 34.♙e2 h6  
35.♞xe6+ ♙xe6 36.♙e3 ♙e5  
37.f4+,**

and White won.

### ► 7.2 Savon–Alburt

Kiev 1978



In terms of numbers Black has a slight advantage in material, but his rook is condemned to immobility. White could now have forced the draw by 32.♘d7+ ♙e7 33.♘b6 ♙f6 34.♘d7+, but he correctly surmised that here that was too little.

So Savon exchanges Black's active knight and simply plays for zugzwang.

**32.♙xe6! ♙xe6 33.b4**

The ♘b6 is not simply depriving the rook of the a8-square, but it is also helping to keep the black king at a distance. With his next two moves Alburt tries to create some breathing space for his ♞a7.

**33...a5**

Black could not simply wait and see, e.g. **33...h6 34.a4 g5 35.g3 gxf4 36.gxf4 h5 37.h4 ♙f6 38.♙c4 ♙e6 39.♙d4** (zugzwang) **39...♙f6 40.♙d5+.**

**34.b5 a4**

Otherwise 35.a4 would follow.

**35.a3 h6 36.h4 ♖a5 37.♗b4 ♖a7 38.g3!**

38. ♘xa4? would be much weaker: 38... ♖a8, and the rook achieves its freedom.

**38...g5**

In despair, Black sacrifices a pawn, but on account of the pitiful ♖a7 his position was in any case lost, e.g. **38...♗f6 39.♘d5+ ♗f7 40.♘c7** with the deadly threat **41.b6** (40...b6 41.cxb6 ♖b7 42.♗c5) or **38...h5 39.♗c3 ♖a5** (39...♗f6 would mean just the same: 40.♗c4 ♗e6 41.♗b4) **40.♗c4 ♖a7 41.♗b4** (zugzwang!) **41... ♗f6 42.♘d5+ ♗f7 43.♘c7!** (once more the rook does not have a single square, and now there is the additional threat of 44.b6) **43...b6 44.cxb6 ♖b7 45.♗c5+-.**

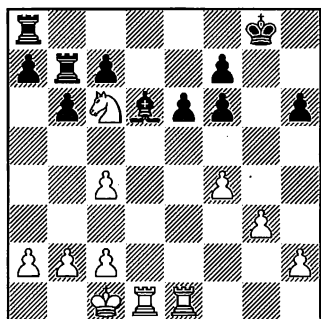
**39.hxg5 hxg5 40.fxg5 ♗f7 41.♘c8 ♖a8 42.♘d6+ ♗e6 43.♘xb7 ♖g8**

At last the rook can enjoy some freedom. But far too late – in view of White’s connected passed pawns the pleasure will not last for long.

**44.b6 ♖xg5 45.♘a5 ♖xg3 46.b7 1-0**

### ► 7.3 Radulov–Westerinen

Helsinki 1972



The ♖b7 is condemned to immobility. White is planning to open a file on the kingside and force the exchange of the ♖a8, after which the horrible position of

the remaining rook would become even more obvious.

**24.f5 e5 25.b4 ♗g7 26.♖e4 h5 27.h4 ♖g8 28.♗d2 ♗h6 29.♖g1 ♖bb8**

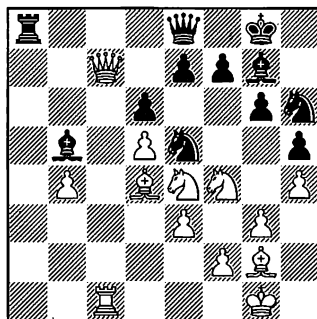
In his desperation Black decides on an exchange sacrifice, though he does not obtain sufficient compensation and will clearly be losing.

But even wait-and-see tactics would not have helped, e.g. **29...♗h7 30.g4 ♗h6 31.♗e2 a5 32.b5 ♖c5 33.♖g2 ♗h7 34. ♗f3 ♗h6 35.gxh5 ♖xg2 36.♗xg2 ♗xh5 37.♗f3 ♗h6 38.♖g4 ♗h7 39.h5 ♖d6** (39...♗h6 40.♖g8 ♗xh5 41.♘d8 ♖b8 42.♖h8+ ♗g5 43.♘xf7+) **40.a4 ♖c5 41.♖g2 ♖d6 42.h6! ♖f8** (42...♗xh6 43.♖g8 ♗h7 44.♖a8 and then ♘d8, and the unfortunate rook is lost) **43.♖g1 ♗h8** (43...♗xh6 44.♖d1 and then ♖d8-a8, ♘d8 or 43...♗xh6 44.♖g8 ♖d6 45.♖a8, as usual) **44.♘d8 ♖b8 45.♘xf7+ ♗h7 46.♖g6 ♖e8 47.♗e4 ♖c8 48.♖xf6+-.**

**30.♘xb8 ♖xb4+ 31.♗e2 ♖xb8 32.g4+-**

### ► 7.4 Zaichik–Vasiukov

Telavi 1982



White has an extra pawn, but the position is not just simply won. The active position of the ♖a8 has its part to play in that circumstance.

**30. ♖a7**

This bars the a-file for the opposing rook. The same move as in *Example 19.1!*

**30... ♜f5?**

Black goes wrong. The correct move was **30... ♖a6!**, to bring the rook back into the game with ... ♜c8. What is important is that 31. ♖f1? fails to 31... ♜c8.

**31. ♖b7!**

After this the rook remains passive.

**31... ♜g4 32. ♖f1!**

This eliminates the ♖b5, which is blocking the passed b4-pawn.

**32... ♖xf1 33. ♜xf1**

Actually **33. ♜xf1**, which keeps the black rook in its passive position, would look even better. But probably White did not want to go into the position after 33... ♜xa7 34. ♖xa7 ♖b5+ 35. ♜g1 ♖xb4.

**33... ♜c8 34. b5 ♜c4**

The rook has got into play but much too late. The white b-pawn is already too strong, and in addition Black can no longer activate his queen.

**35. ♜g5 ♖e5**

35... ♖b4 36. ♖c6+-.

**36. ♜d3 ♜c3 37. ♜c1! ♜xd3**

37... ♜xc1+ 38. ♜xc1 would be equally hopeless.

**38. ♜c8 ♖xc8 39. ♖xc8+ ♜g7 40.**

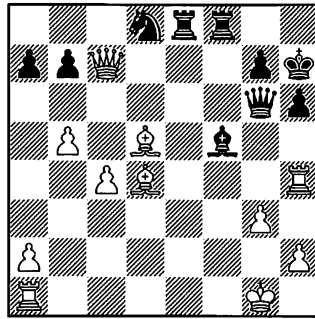
**♖e8 ♜d1+ 41. ♜g2 ♜fh6 42. ♖xe7 ♜d2 43. e4 ♖a2 44. ♜e6+ 1-0**

► **7.5 Aronson–Tal**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1957

(see diagram next column)

Here we have a complicated position. White has an extra pawn and with the exception of his ♖a1 all his pieces are very actively posted. However, the position of White's king looks really draughty.



**26... ♖b1!**

This cuts the ♖a1 out of the play and in doing so also creates the threat ... ♖e1+.

**27. ♖e5**

This does the same to the black bishop and in his turn blocks the e-file.

**27... ♜e6 28. ♖d6 ♖f5!**

Now the threat is mate on f1 – once more White painfully feels the ‘absence’ of his ♖a1.

**29. ♖f4**

Now the bishop closes the f-file.

**29... ♜g5!**

This not only renews the threat of ... ♖e1+, but also intends 30... ♖c2.

**30. ♖b4**

The queen protects e1 and attacks the condemned ♖b1, which is turning the life of the ♖a1 into a living hell.

**30... ♖e4! 31. ♖xe4 ♜xe4**

At last the ♖a1 has been freed, but too late – the activity of the black pieces can no longer be reined in.

Now there are the threats of both 32... ♜f3+ and 32... ♖e2, and White cannot defend against both of them simultaneously.

**32. ♜f1 ♖e2 33. ♖d6 ♜xa2**

**34. ♖d5 ♖c2 35. c5 ♜d8 36. ♖d6**

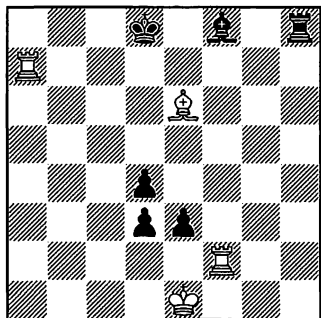
**♜e8**

White resigned – the penetration of the second rook will be too much for his position.

And to close this section, there will follow two studies:

► **7.6 B.Horwitz**

Conclusion of a study, Chess Monthly 1885



White has a major advantage in material terms, but the black pawns look frightening – principally because the ♖h8 and the ♗f8 are ready to rush to their support at lightning speed.

**1. ♖xf8+!**

Firstly, the dangerous bishop is disposed of ...

**1... ♗xf8 2. ♗f7!**

... and then White completely paralyses the opposing rook.

The black king is equally condemned to immobility on account of ... ♗c8 ♖a8+.

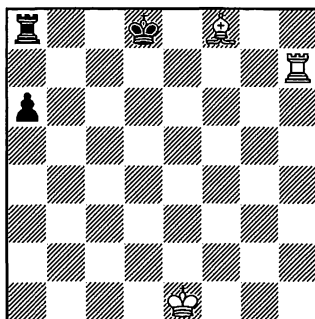
A lovely zugzwang position!

**2... d2+ 3. ♗e2 d3+ 4. ♗d1**

and White wins.

► **7.7 L.Kubbel**

Study, Rigaer Tagblatt 1909



**1. ♗c5!**

The only winning continuation – the bishop now has two important options, ♗b6 and ♗a7.

**1... ♖c8**

After **1... ♗c8** the move **2. ♗a7!** is decisive, since after it Black can move neither the king nor the rook. The remaining pawn moves are soon exhausted: 2... a5 3. ♗d2 a4 4. ♗c3 a3 5. ♗b3 a2 6. ♗xa2+–.

**1... ♗b8** loses even more simply: 2. ♖h8+ ♗c7 3. ♗d6+.

**2. ♗b6+ ♗e8 3. ♗c7!**

The second pretty position with the domination of the rook. Once more Black is left with only pawn moves:

**3... a5 4. ♗d1 a4 5. ♗c2 a3 6. ♗b1!**

But not 6. ♗b3? a2 7. ♗xa2 ♖a8+, and Black frees himself.

**6... a2+ 7. ♗a1!+–**

## Chapter II

# Create breathing space for your pieces!

Instead of, as in the previous chapter, restricting opposing pieces, the discussion is now about the activation of our own pieces or how the pawns are used for that.

They can either sacrifice themselves ( $\Rightarrow$  *Technique Nos. 8-9*), blasting open outposts ( $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 10*) or securing them ( $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 11*).

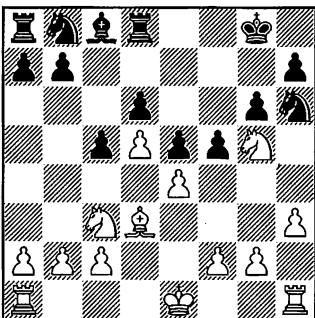
### Technique No. 8

## The temporary pawn sacrifice

Now, the temporary pawn sacrifice. Every chess player knows that in the Queen's Gambit the c-pawn is not really sacrificed; or there are cases where one offers the b-pawn in the knowledge that  $\text{♙:♖b7}$  is always followed by  $\dots\text{♜b8}$  and  $\dots\text{♞:♖b2}$ . Here are some less trivial examples:

#### ► 8.1 Alekhine–Tartakower

Dresden 1926



White has the more active position and a lead in development. Consequently he should open the centre, but the natural  $12.0-0$  ( $\Delta 13.f4$ ) is followed by  $12\dots f4$  or even first  $12\dots \text{♜a6}$  ( $\Delta\dots \text{♜b4}$ )  $13.a3 f4$ , and the centre would remain closed.

#### 12.f4!

This pseudo-sacrifice allows Alekhine to achieve his aim. He first forces the opening of the centre and only then does he castle.

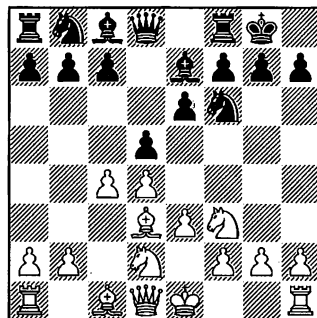
#### 12...exf4 13.0-0

The  $\text{♖f4}$  cannot be protected.

#### 13...♜a6 14.♞xf4 ♜b4 15.♞h4±

#### ► 8.2 Nimzowitsch–Capablanca

New York 1927



How should Black continue here?  $6\dots \text{♜c6}$  is scarcely worth considering – Black would deprive himself of the resource  $\dots c5$ . Of course Black could continue with  $\dots \text{♜bd7}$ , but Capablanca wants to bring about a more active position for this knight.

**6...c5! 7.dxc5**

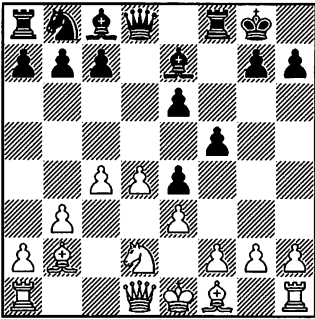
After both **7.0-0** cxd4 8.exd4 ♘c6 and also **7.cxd5** cxd4 8.♘xd4 e5 9.♘4f3 ♗xd5 Black gets a pleasant game.

**7...♘a6! 8.0-0 ♘xc5 9.♙e2 b6**

with comfortable equality for Black.

► **8.3 Kan–Konstantinopolsky**

Sverdlovsk 1943



**9...c5! 10.dxc5**

**10.d5** could be followed with 10...♘a6 ♠...♘c7 with better play for Black.

**10...♘a6!**

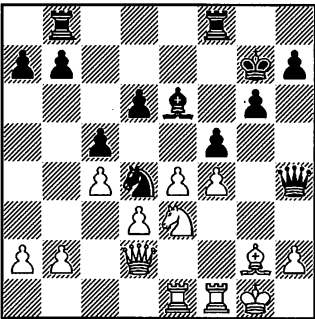
**10...♙xc5** 11.♙e2 with equality.

**11.♙e2 ♘xc5 12.0-0 ♘d3**

Black has the initiative.

► **8.4 Angantysson–Reshevsky**

Lone Pine 1978



The threat is 20...fxe4 followed by 21...♙xf4. White could prevent this by 20.exf5,

but after 20...♙xf5 21.♘xf5+ ♘xf5 the ♠f4 would remain a palpable weakness. White finds a way to keep the f-file closed:

**20.e5! dxe5 21.♘c2!**

Self-evidently not 21.fxe5?? f4 22.♘d5 f3–+.

**21...♘xc2?!**

21...e4 would lead after 22.♘xd4 cxd4 23.dxe4 ♖bd8 24.♗b4 b6 25.e5 to a more or less level position.

**22.♗xc2**

Black cannot make his extra pawn count. Additionally the ♖e1 is now extremely active.

**22...♖bd8?**

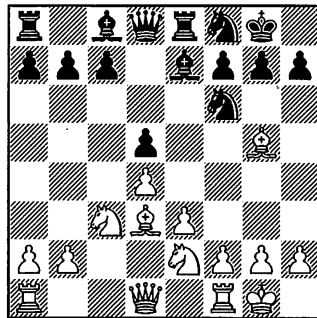
22...♖be8 was stronger, e.g. 23.♖xe5 (23.♗c3!?) 23...b6 24.♖fe1 ♙d7 25.♗d2 ♖xe5 26.♖xe5 ♗f6 27.♗e3±.

**23.♖xe5 ♗f6 24.♖fe1±**

White will soon be able to rejoice in an extra pawn, because Black has simply too much material hanging (♙e6, ♠b7, ♠c5).

► **8.5 Bareev–Lputian**

Montecatini Terme 2000



Here White has two basic plans: central play with f2–f3, e3–e4 or the minority attack b2–b4–b5 (from time to time both ideas can be combined).

And even if White decides on the second plan, it still appears that he must first

prepare the advance b2-b4 (e.g. with ♖a1-b1), or does he?

**10.b4!**

No mucking about! Can you already see what happens if Black takes this pawn?

**10...♙xb4?!**

Lputian accepts the offer. In earlier games the most frequent reply was **10...a6**, in the long run with sad results for Black.

**11.♙xf6 gxf6**

**11...♖xf6? 12.♘xd5 ♖d6 13.♖a4 ♙d7 14.♖xb4 ♖xd5 15.♘f4 ♖c6 16.♜fc1 ♖b6 17.♜ab1 ♜ab8 18.♖c3+-.**

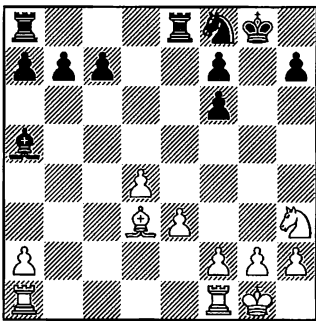
**12.♘xd5! ♖xd5 13.♖a4**

Now it becomes clear that White recovers the material he has sacrificed.

**13...♙h3**

**13...♙d7 14.♖xb4±.**

**14.♘f4 ♖a5 15.♖xa5 ♙xa5 16.♘xh3**



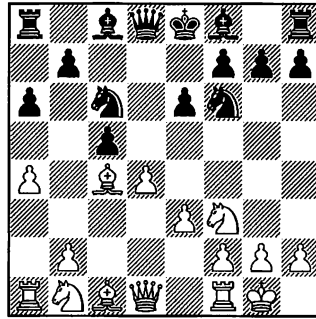
In view of Black's fragmented pawn structure White has a clear advantage.

Temporary pawn sacrifices can be seen in many modern opening variations. Let us close with just one example:

### ► 8.6 Queen's Gambit Accepted

Theoretical variation

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 dxc4 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.e3 e6 5.♙xc4 c5 6.0-0 a6 7.a4 ♘c6**



A well-known position from the Queen's Gambit Accepted. The most popular continuation here is

**8.♖e2,**

winning back the pawn in the event of

**8...cxd4 9.♞d1.**

## Technique No. 9

### The 'simulated' pawn exchange

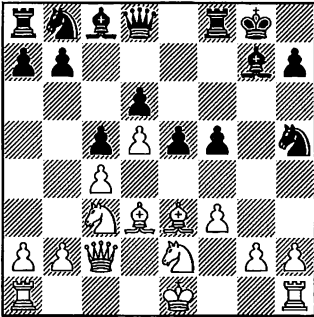
Here we are describing the following: supported by a neighbouring pawn, a pawn advances, allows itself to be captured by an opposing infantryman – and what about the neighbouring pawn?

It does not recapture – it quite suddenly pushes forward!

The following examples illustrate various scenarios in which knowledge of this technique is useful:

► **9.1 Kotov–Gligoric**

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



**11...e4!**

Plugs e4 for the opposing pieces and clears e5 for his own.

**12.fx e4 f4 13.♙f2 ♘d7 14.♘g1**

In an effort to exchange off the knight which will soon pop up on e5.

**14.e5?! ♘xe5 15.♙xh7+ ♖h8** with threats like ...♘xc4, ...f4-f3, ...♙g5 (Bronstein).

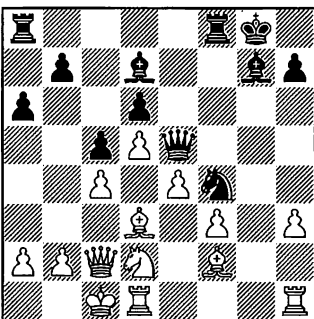
**14...♙g5 15.♙f1 ♘e5 16.♘f3 ♙e7 17.♘xe5 ♙xe5 18.0-0-0 ♘f6 19.h3 ♙d7**

With a totally clear conscience! It was worth considering **19...a6 20.♙d3 b5 21.cxb5 axb5 22.♙xb5 ♙a6**.

**20.♙d3 a6 21.♘b1!**

♘b1-d2-f3. So Gligoric sacrifices a second pawn in order to maintain the blockade.

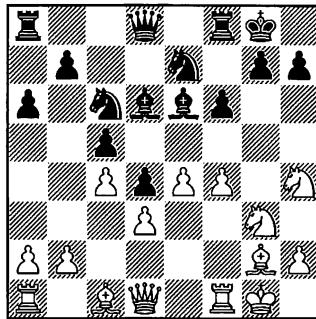
**21...f3 22.gxf3 ♘h5 23.♘d2 ♘f4**



Obviously White's two extra pawns are worthless, because after all they are keeping their pieces enclosed as though in a cage! Despite that, it is also difficult for Black to make progress without lifting the blockade. In the long run Kotov was only just able to hold his own (1/2-1/2/41).  
An equivalent with reversed colours:

► **9.2 Romanishin–Polugaevsky**

USSR (rapid) 1982



**14.e5! fxe5 15.f5 ♙d7 16.♙g5 h6 16...e4 17.♙xe4 ♙xg3 18.hxg3± or 16...♙c7 17.f6 gxf6 18.♙xf6** with a strong attack.

**17.♙d5+ ♘xd5**

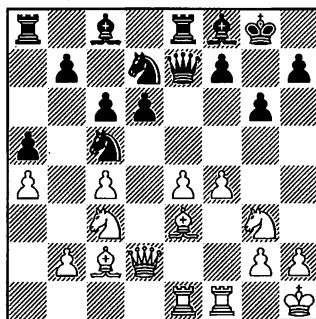
17...♖h7 18.♘g6 winning the exchange.

**18.♙xd8 ♘e3 19.♙f3**

Black does not obtain enough compensation for the queen.

► **9.3 Rubineti–Partos**

Nice (Olympiad) 1974



For a promising attack on the kingside White requires the advance f4-f5. However, the immediate 21.f5 would hand over to the black knight the e5-square. What can be done?

**21.e5! dxe5 22.f5! ♖g7 23.♖f2 b6 24.♗ce4 ♗xe4 25.♗xe4**

Threatening with the wedge pawn 26.f6 (⇒ *Technique No. 12*).

**25...gxf6 26.♖xf5 ♗f8 27.♖h5 f5**

So, it has not come to a blockade on f5, therefore immediate tactics follow:

**28.♖g5 ♖e6**

There are problems in store for example with the unprotected position of the rook on e8, e.g. after 28...♖d7 29.♖d1.

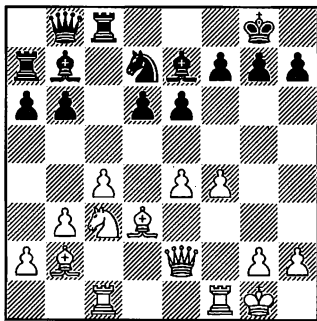
**29.♖xf5! ♖xf5 30.♗f6+ ♖xf6 31.♖xf5 ♖xf5 32.♖xf6+-**

The motif e4-e5 dxe5 f4-f5 is quite specially typical of Sicilian positions with the 'small' centre ♔d6/♗e6 and of the Modern Benoni Defence.

We continue with an example of each:

#### ► 9.4 Suba–Csom

Dortmund 1983



White's attacking plan includes the advance f4-f5, but carrying it out immediately would be good news for the opposing knight, which would at once have available to it the dream square e5. Thus:

**19.e5! dxe5 20.f5! ♗f6**

Or 20...♖c5+ 21.♗h1 exf5 22.♖xf5 ♖d8 23.♗e4 with an attack (Suba).

**21.fxe6 fxe6 22.♗h1 ♖c5 23.♗a4 ♖d4 24.♖xd4 exd4 25.♖xe6+**

The immediate 25.♖xf6! was more precise: 25...gxf6 26.♖xe6+ ♗h8 27.♖xf6+ ♗g8 (± Suba), and then e.g. 28.♗xb6 or 28.♖e1.

**25...♗h8 26.♖xf6! ♖xg2+! 27.♗xg2 gxf6 28.♖f1 ♖g7+ 29.♗h1 ♖e8 30.♖xf6 ♖a8+**

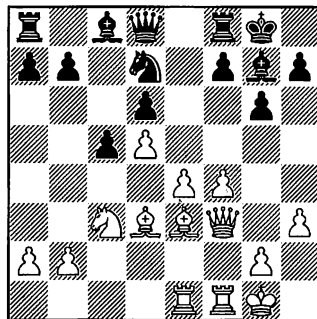
30...♖e3! (Suba), e.g. 31.♖f8+ ♖xf8 32.♖xf8+ ♖g8 33.♖xg8+ ♗xg8 34.♗b2, and the outcome of this endgame is not yet clear (± Suba).

**31.♖f3 ♖xf3+ 32.♖xf3±**

White could keep a rook on the board like this (32...♖e3? 33.♖xe3 dxe3 34.♗xb6+-), which reduces Black's counter-chances compared to the last note. White won.

#### ► 9.5 Tukmakov–Norwood

Reykjavik 1990



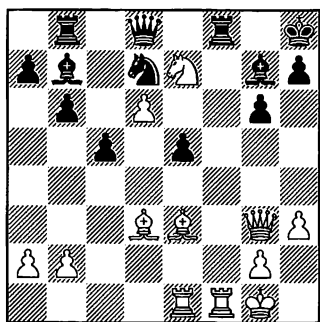
**16.e5!**

In this example too, before playing f4-f5 White forces a black pawn on to e5.

**16...dxe5 17.f5 b6**

17...e4 18.♖xe4 ♗e5 19.♖f2 gxf5 20.♖xf5 ♖xf5 21.♖xf5± was perhaps the lesser evil.

**18.d6 ♖b8 19.♗d5 ♖b7 20.fxg6 fxg6 20...hxg6 21.♗e7+ ♗h8 22.♖g4+-.**  
**21.♗e7+ ♗h8 22.♖g3**



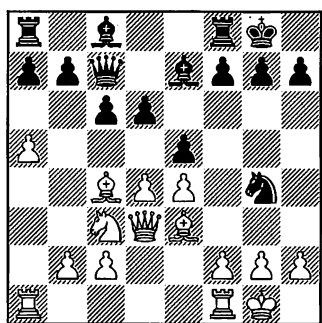
**22...d6**

This loses by force, but other moves could not save the game either, e.g. **22... fxf1+ 23. fxf1 e4 24. dxcg6+! hxg6 25. c4 e5 (25...d6 26. Wxcg6+-) 26. Wg4 d6 27. Wg5+- or 22...e4 23. fxf8+ dxf8 (23...Wxf8 24. dxcg6+ hxg6 25. Wh4+ +- , 23...xf8 24. dxcg6+ hxg6 25. g5 We8 26. Wh4+ +-) 24. c4 a6 25. f1 b5 26. fxf8+ xf8 27. g5 We8 28.d7! Wxd7 29. f6+ g7 30. dxcg6+ hxg6 31. Wh4#.**  
**23. Wh4 Wxd6 24. dxcg6+ cg8 25. c4+ f7 26. dxf7+ cxf7 27. d1 Wc7 28. d7+! 1-0**

Next we have some more tactically justified examples of the ‘by-passing’ move:

► **9.6 Panov–Yudovich**

Moscow 1936



Black is intending ...d6-d5, so as to meet e4xd5 with ...e5-e4 or ...e5xd4 – including the threat of mate on h2. With his next move White built in the hope of banishing this danger:

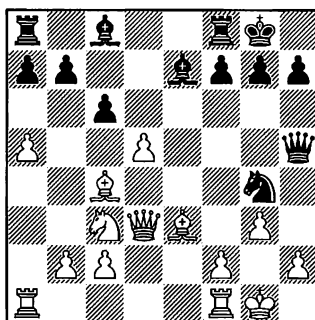
**14.dxe5?!**

Of course White considered all ‘normal’ replies such as 14...dxe5, 14...dxe5 and 14...dxe3 – but there is a surprise in store for him:

**14...d5!**

The pawn simply moves on past and attacks the opposing bishop – this gains time for the attack on h2!

**15.exd5 We5 16.g3 Wh5**



**17.h4 e4! 18.g2**

**18.gxh4** would be followed by **18... We5!** (not 18... Wh4? 19. e4) **19. fxc1 Wh2+ 20. f1 e8!**, after which Black’s attack breaks through, e.g. **21.dxc6** (or **21. dxe4 dxe5 22. Wd4 eg4+-) 21... Wh3+ 22. g1 (22. e2 xe3+! 23.fxe3 Wh2+ +-) 22... dxe5+-**. Even after the text move things should be no better for White. After

**18...ef5 19.Wd2**

(**19. We2 eae8+- Δ eg3, Δ 20.gxh4 Wg6**)

**19...dxe3+ 20.fxe3**

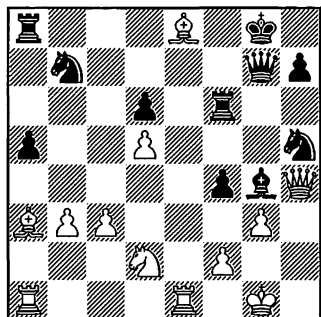
(**20. Wxe3 eh3+**)

**20...ef6 21.g1 ec3 22.Wxc3 e4**

Black could achieve a decisive advantage.

► **9.7 Katalymov–Razuvaev**

Rostov-on-the-Don 1976



Here Black decided on

**31...fxg3,**

in the hope of being able to struggle on after **32.fxg3** ♟f4! 33.gxf4 ♔d7+ 34. ♟f2 ♖xe8 35. ♖xe8 ♔xe8 36. ♖g1 ♖g6 37. ♖xg6 ♔xg6 despite being a pawn down.

But things continued:

**32.f3!**

The pawn heads on past and attacks the ♔g4, which in the end leads to the win of a piece. The game did not last much longer:

**32...♔xf3 33.♟xf3 ♟f4**

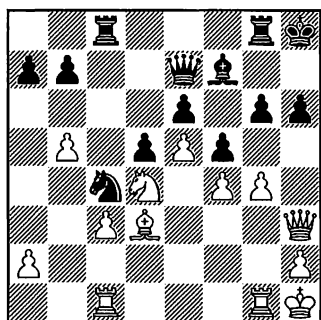
Or 33... ♖xf3 34. ♔xh5+-.

**34.♖e4 ♖c8 35.♖ae1**

**1-0**

► **9.8 Kaev–Chistiakov**

Kiev 1938



**25...h5!?** **26.gxh5?**

White falls into the trap! After the suggestion of GM Marin **26.gxf5 exf5** (26...gxf5 27.♟xf5 exf5 28.♖xf5+-; 26...g5 27.f6 or 27.fxg5 would obviously make no sense) **27.♟xf5!** ♖e6 (27...gxf5 28.♖xf5+-, 27...♖d7 28.♖h4!+-) **28.♖g3!** he could have reached an easily won position.

But White probably believed that the text move 26.gxh5 would leave his opponent with no choice – after all there is only one way to recapture the pawn!

**26...g5!**

This riposte saves Black – he leaves the opposing ♔h5 on the board and uses it as a protective shield.

**27.♖ce1?!**

27.fxg5 ♖xg5∞.

**27...g4 28.♖g3 ♟d2 29.♔xf5?!**

**exf5 30.♟xf5 ♖e6 31.♟d6 ♟e4**

**32.♖xe4 dxe4 33.f5 ♖d5 34.e6**

34.♖e3 ♟h7±.

**34...e3+! 35.♖g2 ♔xe6 36.fxe6**

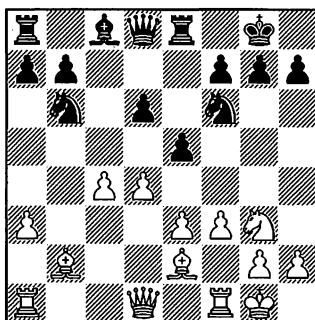
**♖xc3,**

and Black won.

In the closing considerations it is once more positional considerations which are the most important:

► **9.9 Botvinnik–Keres**

The Hague/Moscow (WCh tournament) 1948



According to Botvinnik 13...♙e6 was required here, although White would also then be better after 14.♞c1. But Black decided on another continuation:

**13...exd4?**

'Now after every possible recapture on d4, Black's last move would be justified: 14.♞xd4 ♘a4, 14.exd4 d5, 14.♙xd4 ♙e6 15.♞b1 ♞c8, in every case with counterplay' (Botvinnik). But there is a fourth possibility, which Keres probably overlooked.

**14.e4!**

Getting rid of the ♘d4 can wait.

**14...♙e6 15.♞c1!**

White clears the a1-square for the bishop, so that after ♞d1xd4 he need not fear the reply ...♘b6-a4 with the exchange of his strong bishop.

**15...♞e7 16.♞xd4 ♞c7?!**

16...♞c8 17.♞fd1 ♞c7 18.♞xd6 ♞xd6 19.♞xd6 ♘e8 20.♞d4 ♞ec7± Botvinnik.

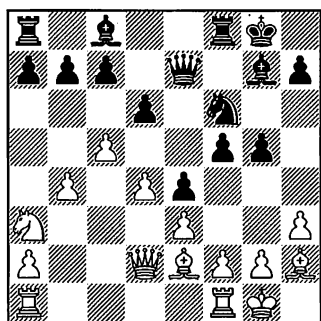
**17.c5! dxc5 18.♞xc5**

White's initiative is very dangerous. After a few moves it is all over.

**18...♞f4 19.♙c1 ♞b8 20.♞g5 ♘bd7 21.♞xg7+ ♘xg7 22.♘h5+ ♘g6 23.♞e3 1-0**

► **9.10 Jussupow–Tukmakov**

Ashkhabad 1978



White is active on the queenside, whereas Black has to look for counterplay on the other side of the board. What catches the eye is the difference in activity between the queen's bishops: the ♙h2 is extremely effectively posted, which can hardly be said of the ♙c8.

But Tukmakov finds a possibility to alter the course of events:

**16...f4! 17.exf4 g4!**

By his 'simulated pawn exchange' Black has activated the ♙c8 and at the same time restricted the ♙h2.

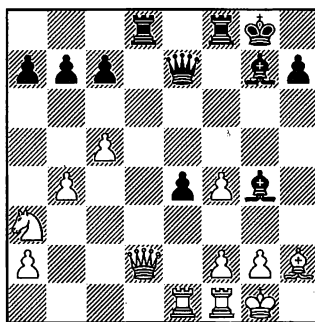
**18.hxg4**

18.h4 ♘h5 with good counterplay. White could meanwhile meet like with like: 18.f5!? gxh3 (after 18...♙xf5 then 19.cxd6 cxd6 20.♘c4 is strong) 19.g4! ♘e8! (Tukmakov) with a very unclear position.

**18...♘g4 19.♙xg4**

19.♙g3 dxc5 20.bxc5 e3±.

**19...♙xg4 20.♞ae1 dxc5 21.dxc5 ♞ad8**

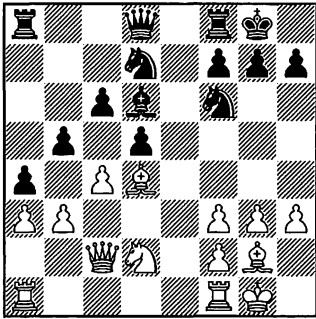


The difference from the position in the first diagram is striking: Black is controlling files and diagonals, and there is nothing left of White's queenside initiative.

Compared to that, White's extra pawn hardly counts at all.

► **9.11 Cabrilo–Farago**

Albena 1984



White believed that it made no difference whether to capture on b5 or on d5, but his opponent's reply taught him different:

**16.cxb5?!**

After **16.cxd5** cxd5 a complicated and roughly level position would be the result.

**16...c5!**

But the c-pawn does not recapture, it moves forward, leaving Black with the lovely pawn duo d5/c5. After 16.cxd5 instead of 16.cxb5 Black would naturally not have had this option!

**17.♙xf6 ♜xf6 18.♞fd1?!**

**18.bxa4 ♚a5**

**18...axb3 19.♚xb3 c4 20.♚c2 ♚b6**

**21.f4 ♙c5** and now **22.♞xc4!?** dxc4 **23.♙xa8 ♞xa8 24.a4** would be interesting.

**21...♙g3**

**Technique No. 10**

**Creating an impregnable outpost for a piece**

A lovely active outpost for a piece is in sight, but it must first be secured from attack by opposing pawns.

A frequent and not necessarily spectacular procedure – in the following *Technique No. 11*, however, we will get to know a more dynamic variation of this method!

**18.a4!**

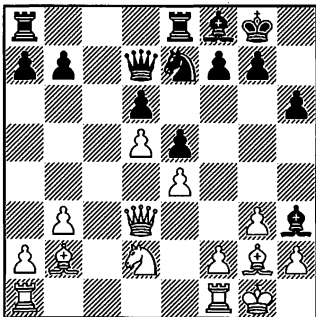
With this move White secures the c4-square for his knight.

**18...♙g2 19.♙xg2 ♞eb8 20.♞c4 b5 21.axb5 ♚xb5 22.♞a3 ♙g6 23.♞fa1±**

White won after 52 moves.

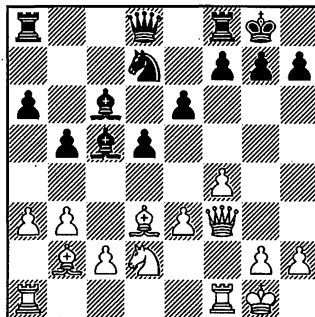
► **10.1 Rubinstein–Duras**

Karlsbad 1911



► **10.2 Van Vliet–Nimzowitsch**

Ostend 1907

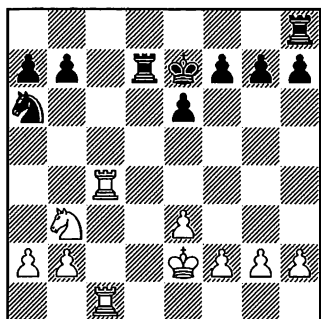


According to Nimzowitsch, White should now have decided in favour of

**15.b4! ♖b6 16.♗b3 ♜e7 17.♗d4!**  
after which the ♜f4 guarantees the impregnability of the ♗d4.

### ► 10.3 Nimzowitsch–Tarrasch

Breslau 1925

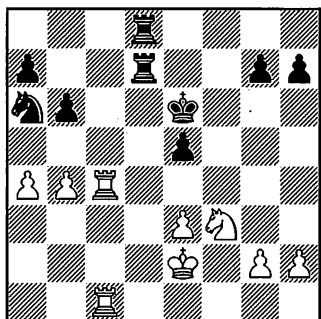


The d4-square would suit White's knight very well if his opponent were not able to drive it away by means of ...e6-e5.

**20.f4! ♜hd8 21.♗d4 f6 22.a4 e5**

Tarrasch does not want to put up with the opposing knight on d4 any longer, but after the subsequent exchange the ♜e5 turns out to be weak – a logical consequence of f2-f4.

**23.fxe5 fxe5 24.♗f3 ♖e6 25.b4 b6**



And here Nimzowitsch could already have won a pawn with **26.♞e4!**, e.g.

**26...♞d5 27.♗d4+ ♖d6** (27...♖d7 28.♗c6, 27...♖f6 28.♞f1+ ♖g6 29.♗f3 ♞e8 30.♗h4+-; 27...♖f7 28.♗c6 ♞d2+ 29.♖f3) **28.♗f5+ ♖d7** (28...♖e6 29.♗xg7+ ♖f7 30.♗f5 ♖f6 31.g4 ♞d2+ 32.♖f3 ♞xh2 33.♞c6+-) **29.♞g4 ♖e6** (29...g6 30.e4!) **30.♗xg7+ ♖f7 31.♞f1+ ♖e7 32.♞f5±.**

Instead of that he decided on the prophylactic

**26.♞1c2,**

which was also good – play continued

**26...h6**

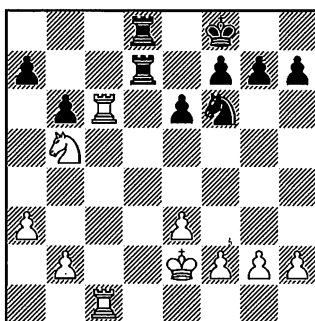
(aimed against 27.♗g5+)

**27.h4! ♞d6 28.h5!**

with a clear advantage on account of the pawn weaknesses on e5 and g7 as well as the out-of-play ♗a6.

### ► 10.4 Miles–Ligterink

Amsterdam 1978



**22.♞1c2 ♗e4 23.f4! ♖e7 24.♞c7 a6 25.♗d4 ♖f6?!**

**25...♞xc7 26.♞xc7+ ♖b5** was stronger and then not **26...♖f6?!** **27.♗f3± ♗e5**, but **26...♖e8!±.**

**26.b4 h6**

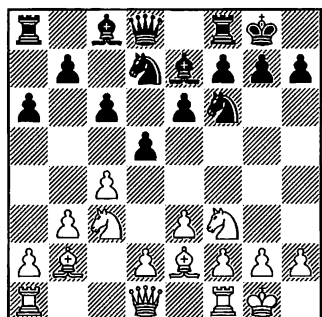
**26...♞xc7 27.♞xc7 ♖b5 28.♗f3±.**

**27.♞xd7 ♞xd7 28.♖f3 ♗d6 29.♞c6**

White won a pawn and soon afterwards the game.

► **10.5 Botvinnik–Chekhover**

Moscow 1935



9.♘d4

*'This manoeuvre was played in a game by Nimzowitsch. White is intending 10.f4, but if the second player drives this knight back to f3 by 9...c5, White goes on to carry out the standard plan of cxd5 followed by d2-d4'* (Botvinnik).

After this statement, is there anyone who still doubts the usefulness of a study of the games of the old masters?

9...dxc4?!

Botvinnik criticises this decision and thinks that 9...c5 would have been better.

10.bxc4 ♘c5 11.f4!

The first player prevents ...e6-e5 and with this move further strengthens the strong central position of the ♘d4.

On the other hand, 11.♘f3 (Δ♘e5, d4) was not advisable in view of 11...♘d3.

11...♞c7 12.♘f3!?

Now ...♘c5-d3 is no longer possible and the white knight is aiming for e5.

12...♞d8 13.♞c2 ♘cd7 14.d4 c5  
15.♘e5 b6 16.♙d3 cxd4 17.exd4

White has the initiative.

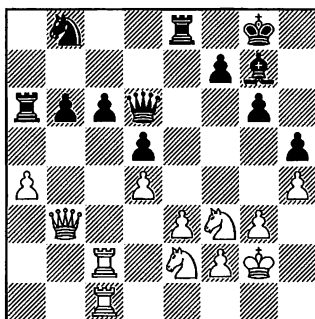
In the final example the post on f4 has already been created. In fact the constel-

lation ♘f4/♙h4 is found very frequently, quite often with the pawn chain d4-e3-f2-g3-h4.

This formation often smothers any counterplay and itself creates the opportunity for all sorts of niggles:

► **10.6 Petrosian–Spassky**

Moscow (20th WCh game) 1969



Moreover, we shall look at an earlier phase of this game as ⇒ *Example 42.1!*

35.♘f4 ♞d8 36.♘d3 ♙f8 37.♘fe5  
♞c8 38.♞c3 ♙e7 39.♘f4 ♙f6 40.  
♘ed3+–

After this little shell game with the knights there is the threat of ♘b4 as well as ♘xd5; so the loss of a pawn is unavoidable.

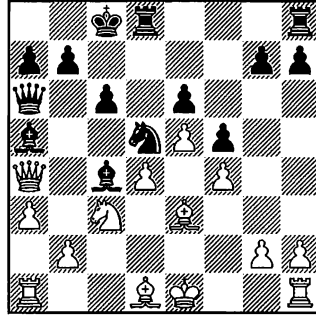
Here is an opening variation which – with reversed colours – has as its aim the creation of such an outpost for a knight:

1.e4 g6 2.d4 ♙g7 3.♘c3 c6 4.f4 d5  
5.e5 h5!? 6.♘f3 ♘h6 7.♙e3 ♙g4 8.♙e2  
e6 9.♞d2 ♘d7 10.g3 (10.h3?! ♙xf3  
11.♙xf3 h4 and the white pawns are  
fixed on unfavourable squares) 10...♙f8  
11.h3 ♙xf3 12.♙xf3 ♘f5 13.♙f2 ♙b4  
(14.g4?! ♘h4) etc.

## Technique No. 11

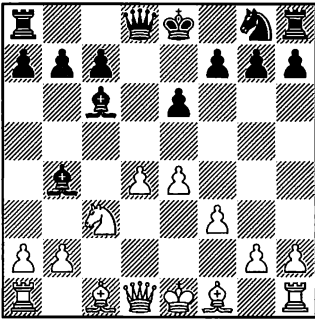
# Blasting open outposts

The counterpart to *Technique No. 10*: a nice possible outpost for a piece, mostly for the knight, is for the moment still under the opponent's control, but the obstacle (e.g. a  $\triangle f4$ , which is guarding e5) can, however, be blasted away. Sometimes a temporary pawn sacrifice is the way to achieve this (see e.g. *Example 11.3*):



### ► 11.1 Pillsbury–Chigorin

St. Petersburg 1895



**8...f5!?**

An interesting and very aggressive continuation. Black wants to get rid of the  $\triangle e4$  at any cost (exchange it or force it to advance) in order to secure for his knight the lovely outpost square d5.

**9.e5?**

A positional mistake – Black now achieves his aim without problems. **9.♙c4 ♜h4+ 10.g3 ♜h3** leads to sharp play.

**9...♞e7 10.a3 ♙a5 11.♙c4 ♙d5**

**11...♞d5!?**

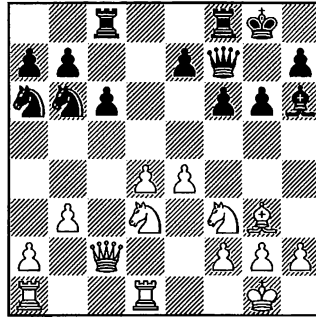
**12.♜a4+ c6 13.♙d3 ♜b6**

**14.♙c2 ♜a6 15.♙d1 ♙c4 16.f4**

**0-0-0 17.♙e3 ♞d5**

### ► 11.2 Smyslov–Botvinnik

The Hague/Moscow (WCh tournament) 1948



The black position looks very suspicious – both his knights are very passive, whilst White has a lovely pawn centre.

**19...f5!**

The only possibility to change the course of the game – Black wants to force the exchange or the advance of the  $\triangle e4$ , so as to conquer the d5-square for the  $\triangle b6$ .

**20.♞c5**

Later, the stronger **20.♞e1!** was discovered.

**20...fxe4 21.♜xe4**

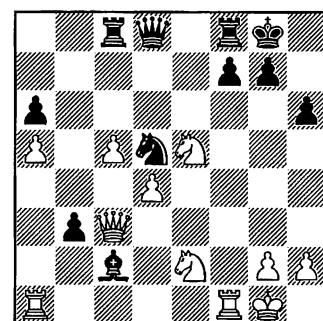
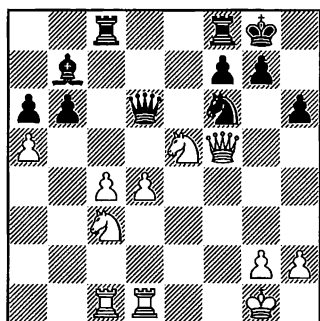
**21.♞e5 ♜f5 22.♞xb7 ♞b4 23.♜e2 ♞d4d5∞.**

**21...♞xc5 22.dxc5 ♞d5**

Now the black knight is occupying a lovely central post. Despite that, White is still slightly better thanks to his superior pawn structure but his advantage is limited.

### ► 11.3 Bondarevsky–Smyslov

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1950



Black could at least temporarily secure an extra pawn with **27...bxa5**, but when one considers the power of his opponent in the centre with the c- and d-pawns this would not appear very advisable, and at the same time the doubled a-pawns look rather sickly. For that reason Smyslov takes a different decision:

**27...b5!**

Instead of capturing on a5 Smyslov himself sacrifices a pawn (although, as will soon become clear, this is only a pseudo-sacrifice). No matter whether White takes on b5 or not, the  $\triangle c4$  is disposed of and Black will have conquered the d5-square.

**28.c5**

Bondarevsky declines the offer and prefers to count on his passed c-pawn. After **28.cxb5** axb5 29.  $\triangle$ xb5  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ d5 30.  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ f1  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ xc1 31.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ xc1  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ a6 32.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ c5  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ xb5 33.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ xb5  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ xd4+ 34.  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ h1  $\triangle$ e4 Black would have recovered his material and had a lasting initiative.

**28... $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ d8! 29.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ a1 b4 30.  $\triangle$ e2?!**

**30.  $\triangle$ a4  $\triangle$ b6** was stronger (30...  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ xa5? 31.  $\triangle$ b6).

**30... $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ e4 31.  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ h3  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ c2 32.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ f1 b3 33.  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ c3  $\triangle$ d5**

**34.  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ b2  $\triangle$ e3 35.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ fe1**

**35.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ f3?  $\triangle$ d1-+.**

**35... $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ d5 36.  $\triangle$ f3**

**36.  $\triangle$ f4** was inadvisable on account of **36... $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ e4**, e.g. **37.  $\triangle$ g4** (37.g3  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ fd8-+ 38.  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ f2  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ xd4 39.  $\text{\textcircled{W}}$ xd4  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ xd4 40.  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ xe3  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ e4+ 41.  $\text{\textcircled{Q}}$ d2 b2) **37... $\triangle$ c4** 38.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ xe4  $\triangle$ xb2 39.  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ e3  $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ fd8-+.

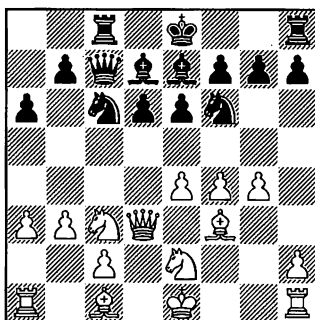
**36... $\text{\textcircled{B}}$ fe8**

Black is visibly dominating the play.

Really typical of this manoeuvre is the apparently risky  $\dots g7-g5!$  in the Sicilian, so as to free the e5-square for the knight:

### ► 11.4 Tarnowski–Boleslavsky

Debrecen 1961



The ♖c6 would like to go to e5, which for the moment is still being prevented by the ♜f4.

**13...g5! 14.h4**

After **14.fxg5 ♖e5** 15.♞e3 ♜fxg4 16.♙xg4 ♜xg4 17.♞g3 ♖e5 Black has a comfortable game.

**14...gxf4 15.♙xf4 h5!?**

**15...♖e5?!** would still be premature on account of 16.♙xe5 dxe5 17.g5 ♜g8 18.♙h5 with an initiative for White.

But **15...e5** was possible: 16.♙g5 ♜d4 (16...♜xg4?? 17.♜d5+-) 17.♙xf6 ♙xf6 18.0-0-0∞.

Another interesting move is **15...h6!?**, e.g. 16.0-0-0 ♖e5 (16...e5 17.♜d5 ♜xd5 18.exd5∞) 17.♙xe5 dxe5, after which Black has the bishop pair and is exerting good control over the central squares.

**16.g5 ♜g4**

He simply wants to control the e5-square with both knights! Understandably White does not wish to allow that.

**17.♙xg4! hxg4 18.♜f2?**

A serious mistake. The correct move was **18.0-0-0 ♖e5** 19.♙xe5 (gives up the second bishop so as not to have to put up with an opposing knight on e5, 19.♞d4!?) 19...dxe5 20.♜b2, and in spite of Black's bishop pair the position would remain unclear.

**18...♖e5 19.♙xe5 dxe5**

Now the white king is starting to feel quite insecure.

**20.♜g3 ♙c5 21.♜xg4**

Courage or gallows humour along the lines of 'a dying man can eat anything'? Of course this cannot save White.

**21...♙d4 22.♞ad1**

22.♞h3 ♙xc3 23.♜xc3 f5+!-+. 22.♜xd4 exd4 23.♖e2 e5+ 24.♜f3 f5! with a decisive attack.

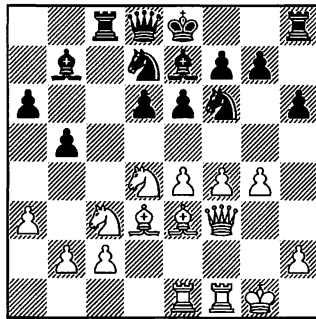
**22...♙xc3 23.♜xc3 f5+ 24.gxf6 ♞g8+ 25.♜h3**

25.♜h5 ♙c6!-+.

**25...♞xc3 26.h5 ♙b5 27.♞xc3 ♞xc3+ 28.♜h4 ♞cg3 29.h6 ♞3g6 0-1**

## ► 11.5 Milos–J.Polgar

Sao Paulo 1996



At first glance White is better – he has totally completed his development, he has an advantage in space and is threatening a dangerous pawn storm on the kingside. But ...

**13...g5!!**

Just like in the previous example, with this advance Black conquers the e5-square for her knight.

**14.f5**

**14.fxg5** could be followed by **14...♖e5** 15.♞h3 (not 15.♞f4? hxg5 16.♞xg5 ♞g8-+) 15...♜fxg4 16.g6 ♙f6 17.gxf7+ ♜xf7, 'and with control over e5 and the g-file Black is better' – Frank Zeller in *Sizilianisch im Geiste des Igels*. (The Sicilian in the spirit of the Hedgehog) But there is the simpler **14...hxg5** and then **15...♖e5** with good play.

**14...♖e5**

Black sticks to the subject! According to Zeller **14...e5** 15.♜b3 h5! is also good.

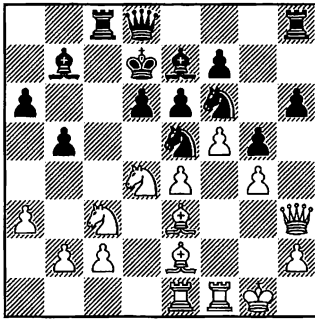
**15.♞h3**

15. ♖g2 ♔d7! 16. h3 h5! with the initiative.

15... ♔d7!

'The king secures the centre' (Zeller).

16. ♕e2



What now? 16... ♘e4 is followed by 17. ♘xe4 ♕xe4 18. fxe6+ fxe6 19. a4! with the initiative for the pawn.

But the lady finds a far better continuation.

16... h5!

It turns out that Black is in total charge and the position of ♘e5 is playing an extremely important part in that.

17. fxe6+ fxe6 18. gxh5

Or 18. ♕xg5 hxg4 19. ♖e3 ♜h3 ♠ (Polgar).

18... g4 19. ♖g2 ♝xc3!

But not 19... ♝xh5? 20. ♘xe6! ♘xe6 21. ♜xf6+ ♕xf6 22. ♕xg4+∞.

20. bxc3 ♕xe4 21. ♖f2 ♘xh5

The threats are both the simple 22... ♕h4 winning the queen and also the pretty 22... g3! 23. hxg3 ♘f4! 24. ♖xf4 ♜h1+ 25. ♘f2 ♜h2+ 26. ♘g1 ♜g2+ -+.

22. ♕f4 g3! 23. hxg3

23. ♕xg3 ♘xg3 -+.

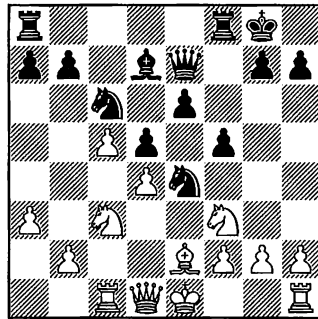
23... ♘xf4 24. ♖xf4 ♜h1+ 25. ♘f2 ♜h2+ 26. ♘e3 ♕g5 27. ♘xe4 ♕xf4 28. gxf4 ♜h3! 29. ♘xe6 ♘xe6

And White resigned.

It is not only pawns which are protecting squares which can be eliminated; that can happen to pieces too. In the following example Black holds out at first, but the weakness of e5 cannot be denied in the long run:

## ► 11.6 Botvinnik–Konstantinopolsky

Sverdlovsk 1943



Here Black can no longer control with his pawns the outpost square e6 after which White is lusting, but his knight is guarding the said point.

13. ♕b5!

The intention is clear: the ♘c6, which is controlling e5, is to be swapped off so as to follow up with ♘f3-e5.

13... ♘g5!

For his part Black wants to exchange the ♘f3 before the latter can get to e5.

14. ♕xc6 ♘xf3+ 15. ♖xf3 bxc6

16. ♖f4! ♗ae8 17. 0-0

Now Botvinnik plans ♜f1-e1, after which the ♘c3 sets out on the long march to e5. Of course it is quite understandable that Black does not want to see the game proceed along these lines.

17... e5! 18. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 19. dxe5 ♜xe5 20. f4!

Directed against ...f5-f4.

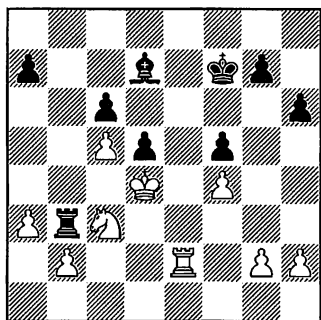
20... ♜e7

Black has changed the pawn structure with the advance ...e6-e5, but the new situation is also anything but favourable to him – his dark squares are weak, d4 is a wonderful square for the opposing knight or king and it is easy to spot the difference in the activity of the minor pieces.

21.♖fe1 ♜fe8 22.♞xe7 ♞xe7  
23.♝f2 ♝f7 24.♞d1!

Aimed against ...d5-d4. After 24.♞e1? ♞xe1 25.♝xe1 Black could get out of the clinch: 25...d4! 26.♞e2 ♝e6 27.♞xd4 ♝d5 with counterplay.

24...♞e8 25.♞d2 h6 26.♞e2 ♞b8  
27.♝e3 ♞b3 28.♝d4



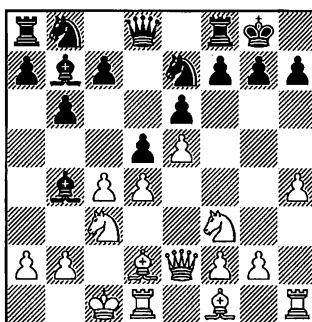
28...♝f6 29.♞a2 ♞b8 30.b4 g5  
31.g3 gxf4 32.gxf4 a6 33.♞c3

♞g8 34.a4 ♞g4 35.♞f2 ♟e6 36.  
b5 axb5 37.axb5 cxb5 38.♞xb5  
♞g1 39.♞c3 ♝f7 40.♞b2 ♞f1  
41.♞e2,

and White won.

In the closing example Black targets his play on the conquest of d5:

► 11.7 Kortchnoi–Karpov  
Moscow (3rd match game) 1974



10...♟xc3! 11.♟xc3 dxc4! 12.♞xc4  
♟a6!

This forces the exchange of White's good bishop.

13.♞a4 ♟xf1 14.♞hxf1 ♞d5

Black has a good game.

## Chapter III

# The clash between pawn formations

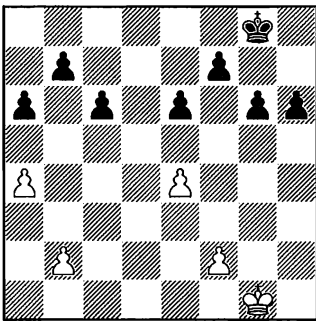
This short chapter is not intended to cast doubt on Nimzowitsch's ground-breaking reflections on pawn chains. The intention is rather to introduce some methods involving the clash of pawn formations *on the flanks*.

### Technique No. 12

## Attacking the pawn triangle

Let us first explain what is meant by the concept of the 'pawn triangle'.

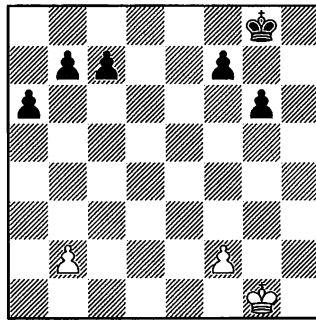
We are talking about formations consisting of three neighbouring pawns in which the middle one is on the seventh rank whereas the other two are on the sixth rank:



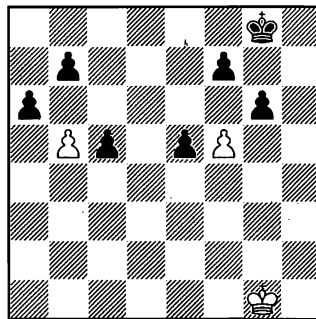
Here we can see two black pawn triangles: a6-b7-c6 and e6-f7-g6.

Let us now add to our chess vocabulary with another two new concepts: the 'incomplete' triangle and the 'extended' triangle.

In the following diagram the pawn constellation a6-b7-c7 is an 'incomplete triangle' – here the c-pawn is not on c6 but on c7.



The pawn duo f7-g6 can also be described as an incomplete triangle – for it to be 'perfect' it lacks the pawn on e6.



The pawn formations a6-b7-c5 and e5-f7-g6 are 'extended' triangles – the c- and e-pawns are not on the sixth but on the fifth rank.

After the advance of the attacking pawn from the fifth rank the following two possibilities arise:

- ‘Driving in a wedge’ (another concept!) – the attacking pawn takes another step forward on to the sixth rank.
- File opening – the attacking pawn is exchanged and thus an open file for the attack is created.

Moreover, this alternative will be seen again in the subsequent chapter on the rook pawn, where the creation of a potential passed pawn ( $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 14*) fits in with the hammering home of a wedge or otherwise the file is opened ( $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 15*). So it could be said that the advance of the rook pawn is a special case of the attack on the triangle!

In the *first diagram* the attack on the triangle a6/b7/c6 consists of b2-b4-b5, and, according to what follows, b5-b6 or b5xc6 (or b5xa6). If White attacks the triangle e6/f7/g6, then it would be f4-f5 and then f5-f6 or else f5xg6 (or f5xe6).

In the *second diagram* the attack on the ‘incomplete’ triangle a6/b7/c7 consists of b4-b5 followed by b5-b6 or by b5xa6. On the right-hand side against f7/g6, by f4-f5 and then f5-f6 or f5xg6.

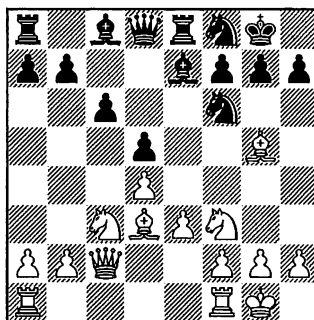
*Third diagram:* here the attacking pawns are already on the fifth rank. Next comes b5-b6 or b5xa6, or on the right f5-f6 or f5xg6.

In all this please note the following: the attack on a triangle on the queenside is mainly aimed at file-opening, with the attack on a kingside triangle the ‘driving

in of a wedge’ is however more frequent, since this is generally linked to threats of mate (naturally, insofar as the defending side has castled kingside).

## ► 12.1 Smyslov–Keres

The Hague/Moscow (WCh match tournament) 1948



### 11. ♖ab1

Smyslov is planning the minority attack – namely using b2-b4-b5 as a battering ram against the ‘incomplete triangle’ a7-b7-c6, so as to weaken the opposing pawn structure on the queenside and to open the b-file.

Moreover, we already saw a similar position in  $\Rightarrow$  *Example 8.5*, and we shall again take up the subject of the ‘minority attack’ under *Technique No. 25*.

**11... ♟g6 12.b4 ♟d6 13.b5 ♟d7?!**

A stronger move is **13...h6 14. ♟xf6 ♟xf6** with counterplay on the kingside.

**14.bxc6**

File opening.

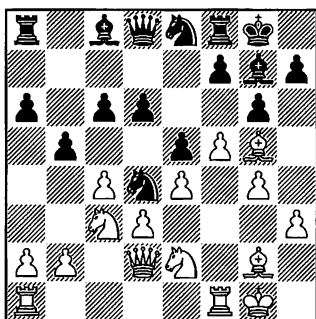
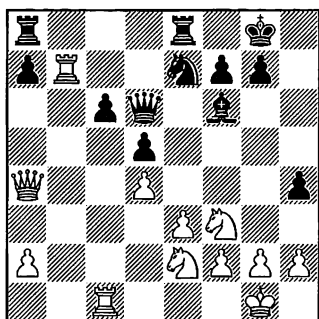
**14... ♟xc6?!**

14...bxc6±.

**15. ♖b3!**

The threat is 16. ♟xf6 ♟xf6 17. ♟xd5.

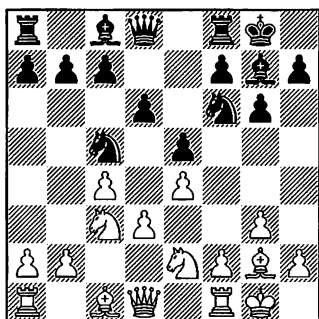
**15... ♟e7 16. ♟xf6! ♟xf6 17. ♟b5! ♖d6 18. ♖fc1 h5 19. ♟e2 h4 20. ♟xc6 bxc6 21. ♖a4 ♟e7 22. ♖b7**



On account of Black's weaknesses on a7 and c6 White clearly has a superior position.

► **12.2 Botvinnik–V.Sherbakov**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955



With his next move Botvinnik begins his attack on the 'extended triangle' e5-f7-g6.

**9.f4! c6**

So as to prepare counterplay on the queenside with ...b7-b5.

**10.h3! ♖e6**

Or 10...a6 11.f5!.

**11.f5! ♖d4 12.g4**

The start of the second phase of the attack – the exploitation of White's f-pawn which has forced its way into the opposing triangle e5-f7-g6.

**12...♗e8 13.♙e3 a6 14.♖d2 b5 15.♙g5**

**15...♙f6?**

15...f6, to prevent the further advance of the f-pawn, would have offered Black better chances of survival.

**16.♙xf6 ♜xf6 17.♜xd4 exd4 18.**

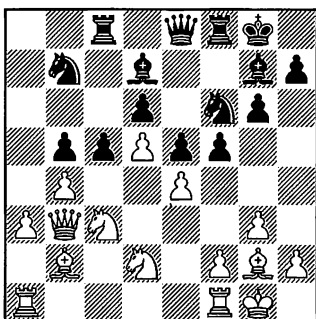
**♜e2 ♖b6 19.cxb5 axb5 20.♖h6**

**♙d7 21.g5 ♜h5 22.♜f4 ♜g7 23.f6**

After this driving home of the wedge, Black resigned.

► **12.3 Averbakh–Tolush**

Leningrad (USSR Ch) 1956



**23...f4**

The 'extended triangle' e4-f2-g3 is attacked. Now Black plans ...g5-g4.

**24.♜f3 ♙h6 25.♖ae1 g5 26.♙c1 ♖h5**

**26...g4 27.♜h4 ♖h5 28.f3!?** would have been less clear. But now there is the threat of 27...g4 and if 28.♜h4, then 28...♙g5+.

**27.gxf4**

Now Black could have been satisfied with the opening of the g-file – after 27...gxf4 Δ...♙h8, ...♖g8 it can hardly be imagined that White will survive.

The game continued

27...g4 28.♗xe5

(a despairing attempt to escape his opponent's attack with a knight sacrifice)

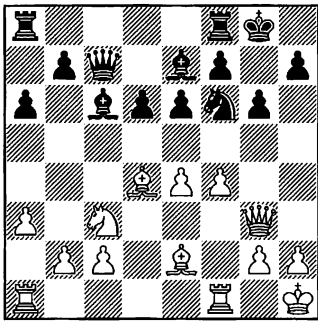
28...dxe5 29.fxe5 ♖xc1 30.♖xc1

♗xe5 31.bxc5 ♗xc5 32.♗b1 ♗h5,

also with a won position.

### ► 12.4 Jussupow–Sveshnikov

Ashkhabad 1978



15.f5!

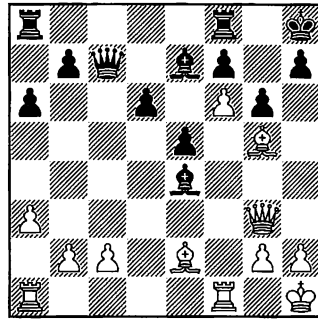
A typical situation in the Scheveningen Variation of the Sicilian Defence: White attacks the triangle e6-f7-g6.

The alternative is e4-e5, sometimes also as a pawn sacrifice (⇒ *Technique No. 9, Example 9.4*) e4-e5 d6xe5 f4-f5.

15...e5 16.♖e3 ♖h8.

After 16...♗xe4 17.♗xe4 ♖xe4 18.f6 ♖d8 19.c4! (19.♗h4 ♗xc2!?) the black king is in great danger in view of the threat of ♗h4-h6, whereas 16...♖xe4 is very dangerous on account of 17.fxg6, e.g. 17...fxg6 (17...hxxg6? 18.♖g5+-, 17...♖xxg6 18.♖xf6 ♖xf6 19.♗d5 ♗d8 20.♖b6 ♖h4 21.♖xd8 ♖xxg3 22.♖f6 h6 23.hxxg3±) 18.♖xf6 ♖xf6 19.♗xe4 ♗xc2 20.♗g4±.

17.♖g5 ♗xe4 18.♗xe4 ♖xe4 19.f6!±



Driving in a wedge. The further course of the game shows a typical way to attack – in the long term Black cannot guard against the changing threats.

19...♖d8 20.♖d3 ♖c6 21.♗h4

♗d7 22.♖ae1

Threatening ♖e3.

22...♖b6 23.♖e4!

This prepares ♗h6 and then ♖f3-h3.

23...h5

After 23...♖xe4 24.♖xe4 h5 25.♖c1! nothing can save him from the threat of mate with ♗g5-h6-g7#.

24.♖f5!+- ♗d8 25.♖d2!

Δ ♗g5-h6+.

25...♖e8

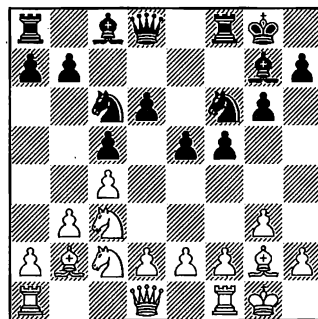
25...♖a5 26.♖xa5 ♗xa5 27.♗g5 ♖h7

28.♗xh5+ and then mate.

26.♗g5 ♖g8 27.♖xxg6 1-0

### ► 12.5 Hecht–Hübner

Germany Bundesliga 1979/80



**10...f4!**

Hübner begins the attack on the 'incomplete triangle' e2-f2-g3 and at the same time prevents the manoeuvre ♖e3-d5.

**11.♘d5 ♘xd5**

11...g5!?

**12.cxd5 ♘e7 13.♞b1?**

White under-estimates the danger of his opponent's attack on the kingside and takes too long to act.

According to Hübner **13.e3?!** would be followed by the thrust 13...g5 (Δ...g4), with an unpleasant position similar to that in the text. Correct was **13.b4**, he continues with **13...b6** (13...cxb4 14.d4 ♘f5 15.dxe5 dxe5 16.♘xb4 ♘d6∞) **14.bxc5** bxc5 15. ♘a3 Δ♘c4 – in this case White could hope for counterplay on the queenside.

**13...g5! 14.e3**

He is intending 15.d4, but he weakens the f3-square, into which Black will soon hammer his wedge.

**14...♘g6 15.d4 cxd4 16.exd4 ♘f5 17.dxe5?**

17.♞e1!? ♞c8≠ Hübner.

**17...f3! 18.♙h1**

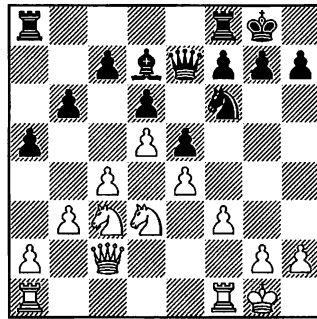
18.♙xf3 ♙xc2 costs a piece.

**18...♙xe5 19.♙xe5 ♘xe5--**

White is playing without his bishop, so in theory the position is lost.

The following preventive occupation of a file leads to the measures gone into in more depth in *Technique No. 13*:

► **12.6 Textbook Example from Nimzowitsch**



White plans to prepare an attack with c4-c5 on the b6-c7-d6 triangle by means of a2-a3, b3-b4. As compensation for that, Black is planning to obtain counterplay on the a-file – which he can open after b3-b4.

**1...♞a7! 2.a3 ♞fa8! 3.♞b2 ♞d8 4. b4 axb4 5.axb4 ♞b8 6.♞fb1 ♙f8 7.c5 bxc5 8.♞xa7 ♞xa7 9.bxc5 ♞xb2 10.♞xb2 ♞a3 11.♞c2**

The actively posted black rook makes up for White's advantage in space.

**Technique No. 13**

**Prophylaxis against menacing pawn formations**

The attack on the pawn triangle is frequently a component of the clash on both wings – one side is attacking on the kingside and the other on the queenside. In the present section we do not wish to make a subject of the contest on two

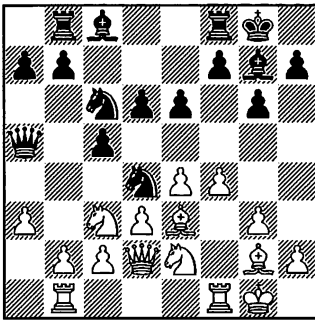
flanks. It is more about four related methods of standing up to the opponent on 'his' wing. Thus, for example, in structures in which Black routinely attacks with ...f7-f5-f4, White often has an effective counter in f2-f4!.

## 1) Hitting the junction

This is how we describe the courageous occupation of that point which the opposing pawn army is absolutely aiming for in its advance – for example in the attack e4/f4/g4 against the triangle e6/f7/g6 this is the f5-square:

### ► 13.1 Broman–Tukmakov

Barcelona 1965



### 13.g4

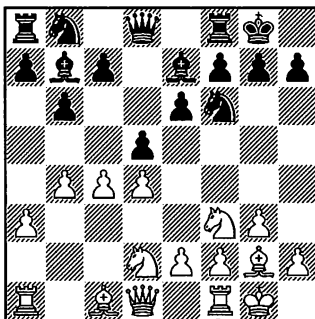
White is planning f4-f5 with an attack on the triangle e6-f7-g6. Tukmakov opposes this threat by ‘hitting the junction’:

**13...f5! 14.gxf5 exf5 15.♖g3 ♕d7 16.♜f2 ♜be8**

Black has good counterplay.

### ► 13.2 Rubinstein–Alekhine

Semmering 1926



White has just played 9.b4 so as to attack the ‘extended triangle’ b6-c7-d5 by means of c4-c5.

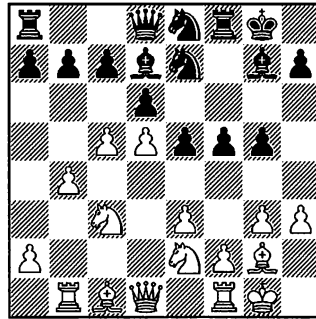
Alekhine offsets this by ‘hitting the junction’ – which in this constellation also turns out to be an effective method against a threatened attack on the triangle:

**9...c5! 10.bxc5 bxc5 11.dxc5 ♕xc5,**

and Black obtained an easy game.

### ► 13.3 Gulko–I.Zaitsev

USSR 1968



Black is hoping for counterplay by ...f5-f4 with an attack on the triangle e3-f2-g3.

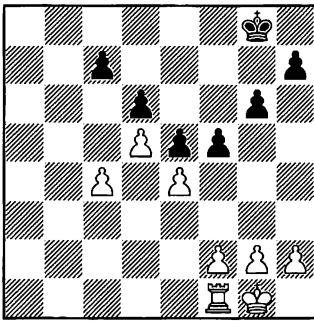
**14.f4!**

Once more we see a player ‘hitting the junction’: White prevents the advance of the opposing f-pawn, which underlines the passive position of the ♕d7 and the ♜f8.

**14...gxf4 15.exf4±**

## 2) Botvinnik’s first method: e4xf5 g6xf5 f2-f4!

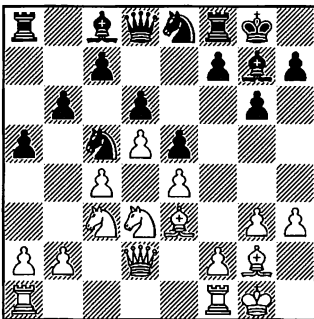
Here we turn our attention to positions of the King’s Indian type, in which the attack on the triangle with ...f5-f4 has a major part to play:



As Botvinnik was the first to demonstrate, in this constellation White can often bring Black's kingside initiative to a standstill by e4xf5-gxf5, f2-f4 and in certain circumstances even become active in that part of the board himself:

### ► 13.4 Botvinnik–Boleslavsky

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1940



This position arose from the King's Indian Defence. White's plan normally consists of preparing b2-b4 in order to then execute c4-c5 (the typical attack on the pawn triangle!).

**14...f5**

This advance is equally typical of the present pawn structure – Black wants to get counterplay on the kingside. Botvinnik's reaction is remarkable:

**15.exf5!? gxf5**

On 15...**xf5** Botvinnik was intending 16.**xc5** dxc5 17.g4!±.

**16.f4! xc3?!**

A positional inaccuracy.

'Probably Boleslavsky was dissatisfied with the position after 16...e4 17.**f2** on account of the idea of g3-g4. But in that case he would have retained his strong **c5**.' (Botvinnik).

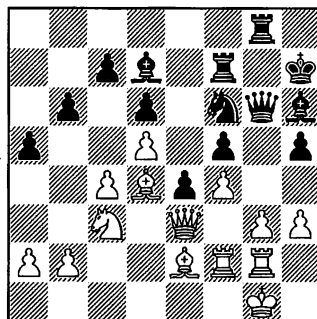
Of course, after 16...e4 White could also decide on 17.**xc5**, but after 17... dxc5 Black obtains control over the d4-square and in doing so deprives White of the important option **e3-d4**. (cf. the positions with a **c5** as in *Example 13.7*)

**17.xc3 e4 18.cxd2**

*'All the commentators evaluated this position as better for Black, which in my view is a misunderstanding. There is no contesting White's queenside advantage, since he is the only one who can become active there (a2-a3, b2-b4, c4-c5). The passed e4-pawn does not represent a danger, as long as there is not a pawn ending. As for the weak **g3**, I do not see how it can be attacked effectively.'* (Botvinnik)

And in addition, in some variations Black has to reckon with g3-g4.

**18...c6 19.f2 d7 20.hd1**  
**c6 21.e2 f6 22.d4 eae8**  
**23.e3 h6 24.c3 f7 25.f1**  
**h7 26.e2 h5 27.g2 h6**  
**28.f1 g8 29.ff2**



### 29...♙g7

Here Botvinnik suggests the following plan: ...♙f8, ...♖fg7, ...♚h6. According to him 'after it White would at least be somewhat limited in what action he can take'.

But can this idea actually be implemented? For example, 29...♙f8 is immediately followed by 30.g4! (Δg4-g5), and 30...hxg4 fails to 31.hxg4 ♖xg4 (or 31...fxg4 32.♙xf6 ♚xf6 33.♗xe4+-) 32.♙xg4 fxg4 33.♞h2+ ♙h6 34.♞xh6+! ♗xh6 (34...♚xh6 35.♞h2+-) 35.f5+ ♗h7 36.♞h2+ +-.

### 30.a3

White has secured his kingside with the previous long manoeuvres and is now at last ready to turn to the execution of his main plan b2-b4.

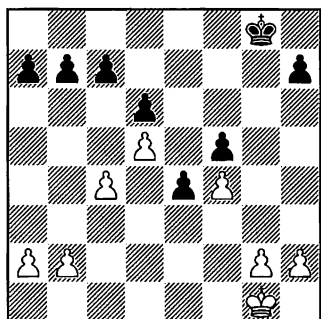
### 30...h4?

Boleslavsky forcibly opens the kingside, but this action turns back on him like a boomerang. He would have done better to have waited.

31.gxh4 ♚h6 32.♞g5! ♚xh4  
33.♞fg2 ♙e8 34.♞xf5,

and White won.

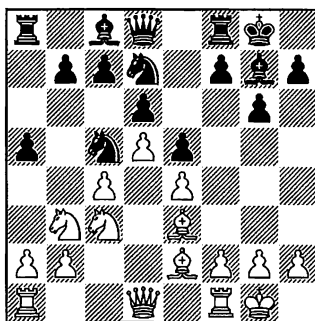
Now back to the pawn structure which had arisen after move 17 (in order to be able to better generalise, we have moved the white g- and h-pawns and also the black a- and b-pawns back to their starting squares):



As the game we have seen clearly showed, this pawn constellation can cause Black certain headaches. So Botvinnik's idea of f2-f4 (after e4xf5-g6xf5) can sometimes be met not with ...e5-e4, but with the exchange on f4. But this means that the ♙f5 is isolated and can in certain circumstances turn into a weakness, e.g.:

### ► 13.5 Gheorghiu-Ree

Sochi 1976



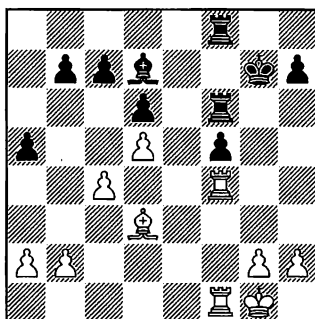
11...f5 12.exf5 gxh5 13.♗xc5  
♗xc5 14.f4 exf4 15.♙xf4 ♗d7?!

15...♙d7, 15...♗e4.

16.♚d2 ♗e5 17.♙h6 ♙xh6

17...♚f6!?

18.♚xh6 ♙d7 19.♞f2 ♚f6 20.  
♚xf6 ♞xf6 21.♞af1 ♞af8 22.♗e4  
♞f7 23.♗g5 ♞f6 24.♗h3 ♗g6 25.  
♗f4 ♗xf4 26.♞xf4 ♗g7 27.♙d3



Thanks to his pressure on f5 White has a clear advantage. Now – in agreement with the principle of the two weaknesses – he can prepare a pawn storm on the queenside, whilst his opponent will continually have to be worrying about his isolated pawn.

27...b6 28.♖e1 ♜f7 29.♞e3 ♜f8  
30.♔f2 ♜f7 31.b3 ♜f8 32.a3  
♜f7 33.♞ef3 ♜f8 34.♔e3 ♜g6  
35.g3 ♜h6 36.♞f2 ♜hf6 37.♔d4  
♜h6 38.b4 axb4 39.axb4 ♜hf6  
40.♞a2 ♜f7 41.♞a7 ♔c8 42.c5,

and White won.

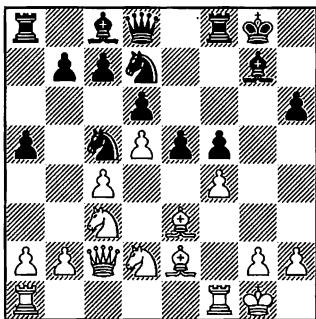
Of course, it is in no way the case that White automatically holds the better cards in the structure after e5xf4 – thanks to his good control over the central squares and his active pieces Black often obtains dynamic counterplay.

The isolated f5-pawn can, under certain circumstances (e.g. in the event of an exchange of pieces on e5) later acquire a neighbour and then we will suddenly see the pawn duo e5+f5, e.g.:

### ► 13.6 Czebe–Sutovsky

Budapest 1993

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♔g7  
4.e4 d6 5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 ♘bd7  
7.0-0 e5 8.d5 ♘c5 9.♚c2 a5  
10.♙g5 h6 11.♙e3 ♘fd7 12.♘d2  
f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.f4



14...exf4 15.♙xf4 ♘e5 16.♞ae1  
♚f6 17.♘f3 ♙d7 18.♘xe5 dxe5  
19.♙e3 ♚d6

In later games 19...b6!?∞ has also been played at this point.

20.♘b5 ♚b6 21.a3?!

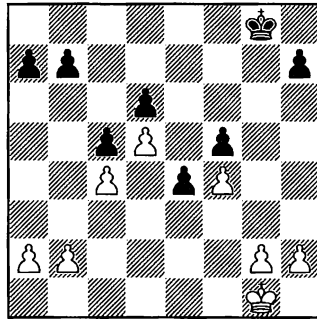
21.♔h1 is stronger.

21...a4 22.♔h1 f4 23.♙g1 e4  
24.♙h5?

24.♙xc5 ♚xc5 25.♚xe4 ♞ae8∞.

24...e3†

But if in the position after e4xf5/g6xf5 followed by f2(f3)-f4 the black c-pawn should be on c5, the reply ...e5-e4 clearly becomes more powerful compared to positions with the pawn on c7:



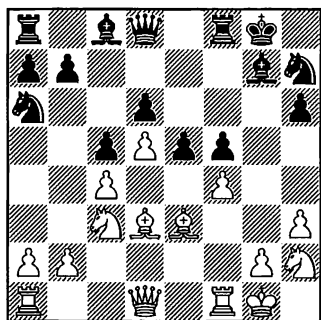
Here the following factors favour Black:

- White cannot occupy the d4-square.
- Should White become active by means of b2-b4, then Black can play ...b7-b6 to make any further expansion on the queenside more difficult or even to thwart it altogether.
- In positions with the pawn on c5 it is not rare for Black even to seize the initiative on the queenside himself by means of ...b7-b5.

► 13.7 Volkov–Minasian

Istanbul (European Championship) 2003

1.d4 g6 2.c4 ♖g7 3.e4 c5 4.d5  
d6 5.♗c3 ♜f6 6.h3 0-0 7.♜f3 e6  
8.♙d3 ♜a6 9.0-0 e5 10.♙g5 h6  
11.♙e3 ♜h7 12.♜h2 f5 13.exf5  
gxf5 14.f4

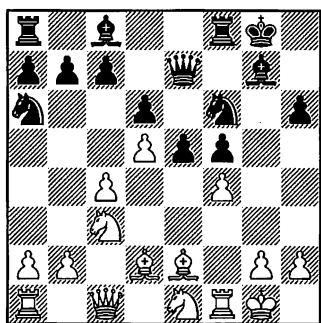


14...e4! 15.♙e2 ♙d7 16.♞f2 ♜c7,  
and thanks to the idea of ...b7-b5 Black  
achieved good counterplay.

Sometime Black does not play the advance  
...c7-c5 till after ...e5-e4. Of course in such  
cases he has to reckon with d5xc6 e.p.:

► 13.8 A.David–Nataf

Paris 2004



14...e4 15.♙e3 c5! 16.dxc6

The best continuation. Should White not  
take the ♖c5, Black would obtain active

play, e.g. 16.♜c2 ♜g4!? 17.♙d2 ♜b4  
18.♜e3 ♙d7 19.a3 ♜d3 20.♙xd3 exd3  
21.♞f3 ♙d4 with the initiative for Black.  
After the text move White plans to put  
the ♖d6 under pressure, but Black's  
excellent control of the centre promises  
him considerable counter-chances.

16...bxc6 17.♙d2 ♞b8 18.♞d1 ♞d8  
19.b3 ♙e6 20.♜c2 c5 21.♜b5

21.g4 d5 with counterplay.

21...d5! 22.♙a5,

and here the position after

22...♙b7

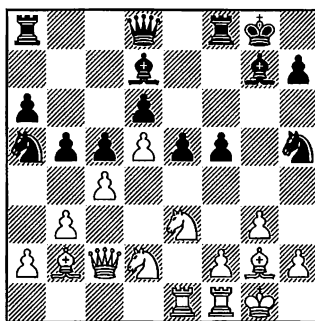
would have remained double-edged,  
e.g. 23.cxd5 ♜xd5 24.♙c4 ♙b6 (∞  
Avrukh) 25.♙d2 ♜dc7 26.♙xb6 axb6  
27.♜e3 ♞f8 28.♜d6 ♙d4 with com-  
plicated play.

If in positions with the black pawn on  
c5 and after f2-f4/e5-e4 the ♜c3 were  
only protected by the ♖b2, then there  
would often be an extra option for Black,  
namely to exchange this knight for the  
♙g7 and thus force b2xc3, after which  
the ♙e3 is notably restricted. For relevant  
examples see ⇨ *Technique No. 4, The  
bishop cage.*

And finally, a very subtle example:

► 13.9 Geller–Langeweg

Amsterdam 1970



The standard **18.f4** can easily be met by **18...exf4** (18...e4?! 19.♙xg7 ♘xg7 20.g4!) **19.♙xg7 ♘xg7 20.gxf4** (White is planning 21.♖c3+) **20...♙g8!** Δ...♗h4 and Black has counterplay. But Geller finds a possibility to get in f2-f4 under clearly more favourable conditions.

**18.♙f3!**

First the ♘h5 has to be exchanged – then after f2-f4 e5xf4 the reply ♖f1xf4 is possible.

**18...♖g5 19.♙xh5! ♗xh5 20.f4! b4**

**20...e4?? 21.♙xg7 ♘xg7 22.♖c3+ +-.**

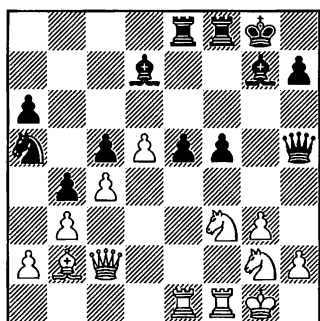
**20...exf4 21.♙xg7 ♘xg7 22.♖xf4±.**

**20...♘b7 21.fxe5 dxe5 22.♘g2 ♖ae8 23.♘f3±.**

**21.fxe5! dxe5 22.♘g2**

Black does not have sufficient resources to oppose the white pressure against e5.

**22...♖ae8 23.♘f3**



**23...f4**

What else? **23...e4** is followed by **24.♙xg7 ♘xg7 25.♖b2+ ♙g8 26.♘e5 ♙c8 27.d6 ♖d8 28.♗d2 ♙e6 29.♘f4** with a strategically winning position.

**24.gxf4 exf4 25.♙xg7 ♘xg7**

**26.♖xe8 ♙xe8**

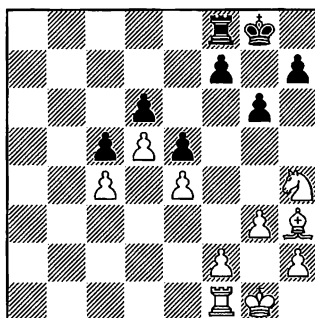
**26...♖xe8 27.♖d2+-.**

**27.♖e4 ♘b7 28.♖e7+ ♖f7**

**29.♖xf7+ 1-0**

In view of **29...♖xf7 30.♖e1 ♙f8 31.♘g5+-** or **29...♙xf7 30.♘xf4+-:**

### 3) Taimanov's prophylaxis

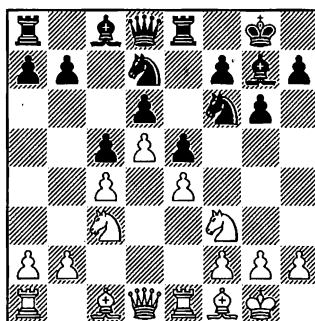


The plan which can be traced back to Taimanov of g2-g3, ♘f3-h4 is frequently a very effective prophylactic measure in the King's Indian pawn structure against the advance ...f7-f5; especially if the light-squared bishop can help out.

But it is not about mechanically preventing ...f7-f5. White often encourages his opponent to play ...f7-f5 so that he can immediately hit the sore spot:

#### ► 13.10 Taimanov–Geller

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



White intends to gain space on the queenside with b2-b4, whereas Black's counterplay is linked to ...f7-f5 with an attack on the kingside (...f5-f4, ...g6-g5-g4 etc.).

**11.g3!?**

A very interesting idea. Before White starts his operations on the queenside, he takes prophylactic measures against the black attack on his king. With his last move he takes control of the h4-square, in order to render more difficult the counter-thrust ...f7-f5 by means of ♖f3-h4 or to totally prevent it. In addition, in certain circumstances the possibility of ♙f1-h3 might now be useful.

**11...♖f8?!**

11...♙f8 looked better.

**12.a3 ♖g4 13.♗h4 a6**

13...f5?! fails to 14.exf5 gxf5 15.♙h3! (this threatens 16.♗xf5) 15...♙f6 16.♗e4! fxe4 17.♙xc8 ♗g6 18.♙xc8 ♗xh4 (18...♙axc8 19.♗xg6 ♙xg6 20.♙e2±) 19.♙xe4 ♙axc8 20.♙xh4 e4 21.♙b1, after which Black does not have sufficient compensation for being a pawn down.

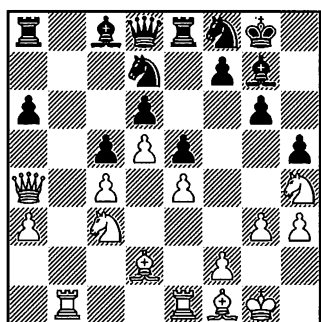
After 13...♙f6 Bronstein suggests 14.f3! ♙xh4 15.gxh4 ♗f6 16.♙g5 ♖g7 17.♙d2, after which the dark squares on Black's kingside appear very susceptible.

With the text move 13...a6 Geller prevents the move ♗c3-b5 which is very unpleasant in some lines, but he weakens the b6-square. Taimanov now starts his main plan – the attack on the queenside:

**14.♙d2 h5 15.h3 ♗f6 16.b4 b6**

**17.bxc5 bxc5 18.♙b1 ♗6d7 19.**

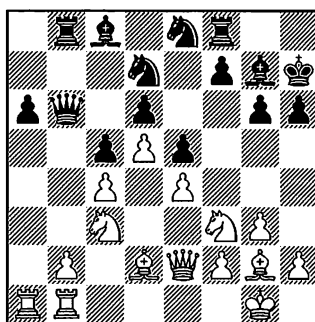
**♙a4**



White has already achieved quite a lot on the queenside, whilst Black still has no counterplay – the result of the prophylaxis g2-g3, ♖f3-h4.

### ► 13.11 Petrosian–Hort

Wijk aan Zee 1971



In this example too, White works on his prophylaxis against ...f7-f5, before he himself aims for b2-b4.

**16.♙h3! ♙b7**

This prepares ...♗b6. After 16...f5? 17.exf5 gxf5 18.♗h4 the ♔f5 would be lost.

**17.♗d1!**

With two ideas:

- ♗d1-e3, aimed against ...f7-f5.
- The preparation of b2-b4.

**17...♗b6**

Here too 17...f5 was bad: 18.exf5 gxf5 19.♗h4 ♗b6 20.♗e3 f4 21.♙xc8 ♙xc8 22.♗ef5, and in view of the weakness of his light squares on the kingside Black's situation is not an enviable one.

**18.♙xc8 ♙xc8**

Now Black is hoping to at last achieve some counterplay with ...f7-f5 – but he has been fooling himself:

**19.♗h4!**

This move cuts across his opponent's intentions: 19...f5?! is followed by 20.exf5 gxf5 21.♗e3, and in no way does Black get the counterplay he was

hoping for on the kingside, but rather he has incurred further problems with the  $\triangleleft f5$  or on the light squares in general.

**19... $\triangleleft c7$  20. $\triangleleft e3$  ♖h3**

Here **20...f5?** would, on account of 21.exf5 gxf5 (or 21...g5 22. $\triangleleft g6$  ♜f7 23.h4 with a strategically winning position) 22. $\triangleleft exf5$  ♜xf5 23.♖e4, lead straight to a loss.

Now, after Black has been deprived of all opportunities for counterplay, there follows the breakthrough on the queenside.

**21.b4!  $\triangleleft d7$**

Or **21...cxb4** 22. $\triangleleft xb4$   $\triangleleft c8$  (22...♜fd8 23. $\triangleleft xd6$  ♜xd6 24.c5 ♜f6 25.♖g4!+-) 23.c5 dxc5 24. $\triangleleft xc5$  ♜xb1+ 25.♜xb1 ♜d8 26.♜b7+-.

**22.b5! axb5 23.♞a7 ♜fc8**  
**24. $\triangleleft a5!$   $\triangleleft b6$**

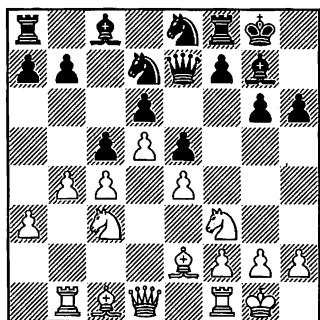
24... $\triangleleft e8$  25.cxb5 would be even more unfavourable.

**25.cxb5**

White has a major advantage and quickly won.

### ► 13.12 G.Kuzmin–Tal

Leningrad (Interzonal tournament) 1973



Here White does not manage to get in  $\triangleleft f3$ -h4 before Black plays ...f7-f5, but after ...f7-f5 too, this knight manoeuvre turns out to be very effective.

**12.g3! f5 13. $\triangleleft h4!$  ♖f6 14.exf5!**  
**gxf5 15. $\triangleleft b2!$**

The  $\triangleleft f5$  is a cause of great worries – Black has to reckon with both  $\triangleleft e2$ -d3 and also f2-f4  $\triangleleft f4xe5$ .

**15...b6**

**15...♖g5** 16.f4 exf4 17.♜xf4  $\triangleleft d4+$  18. $\triangleleft h1$   $\triangleleft e5$  19.♖c2±.

**15...♖f7** 16. $\triangleleft h5$  ♖f6 17. $\triangleleft g6$  ♜f7 18.f4!±.

**16. $\triangleleft d3$  e4**

The ex-world champion does not like the way the game is going and goes in for a double-edged queen sacrifice.

But it is hard to recommend a better course to Black here, e.g. the 'normal' **16...♖g5** fails to the variation **17. $\triangleleft c1$  f4** (17...♖g4 18. $\triangleleft xf5!$ +-) **18. $\triangleleft e4$  ♖d8** **19. $\triangleleft g6$  ♜f7** **20.bxc5  $\triangleleft xc5$**  **21. $\triangleleft xc5$  bxc5** **22.gxf4  $\triangleleft h3$**  (22...exf4 23. $\triangleleft h1$ +-  $\triangleleft g1$ ) **23.fxe5  $\triangleleft xe5$**  (23... $\triangleleft xf1$  24.e6+-) **24.♖h5  $\triangleleft xf1$**  **25. $\triangleleft xe5$  dxe5** **26. $\triangleleft xf1$  ♖f6** **27. $\triangleleft e3$**  with a strategically winning position.

**17. $\triangleleft xe4$  ♖xb2** **18.♜xb2 fxe4** **19. $\triangleleft xe4$   $\triangleleft xb2$**

And here Kuzmin could have got a decisive advantage by means of

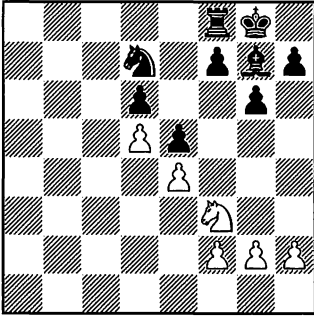
**20.♖c2**

e.g. **20... $\triangleleft df6$**  (or 20... $\triangleleft f6$  21. $\triangleleft h7$ +  $\triangleleft h8$  22. $\triangleleft g6$ +  $\triangleleft g7$  23. $\triangleleft xf8$   $\triangleleft xf8$  24. $\triangleleft f5$ +- Kotov) **21.♖xb2  $\triangleleft xe4$**  **22.♖c2  $\triangleleft f6$**  **23.♜e1+-.**

### 4) Botvinnik's second method: undermining the strength of ...f5 with h2-h4-h5!

This method makes an easy transition to *Chapter IV*, the ode to the power of the rook pawn.

But before we continue with this, we should point out another possibility of absorbing the power of the attack by the triangle with ...f5-f4: the 'padlock' with g2-g4, ⇔ *Example 21.3.*



In positions of this type Black is aiming for ...f7-f5. If White does not react, there generally follows ...f5-f4 and then ...g5-g4 with an attack. But if White decides to play e4xf5, then Black normally recaptures with ...gx f5, after which his pawn duo e5/f5 can become very dangerous (but just think of 'Taimanov's prophylaxis'!), and in addition there is the semi-open g-file. Botvinnik's idea is as follows: after h4-h5xg6 the active plan ...f7-f5 becomes less strong. Firstly, because then after h5xg6/h7xg6, e4xf5/g6xf5 the black king is very exposed and secondly, because after the exchange on g6 Black can no longer play ...h7-h6 and so the white knight (or sometimes the bishop) can occupy a threatening post on g5.

After **8.0-0 f5** Black would obtain good chances, but:

**8.h4! f5**

**8...♟f6** (first of all takes leave of the idea of playing ...f7-f5) **9.♙e3 ♘g4** **10.♙d2 c6** (10...f5?! 11.h5!) **11.♘g5 h5** **12.f3 ♖h6** **13.g4**, and White has the initiative on the kingside, Lautier-Jussupow, Belgrade 1991.

**9.h5 ♘c5**

Or **9...♟f6** **10.hxg6 hxg6** (10...♘xg6 **11.♙d3**) **11.♘g5**, and White has, as was sketched in the preamble, occupied the g5-square.

**10.♘g5**

**10.hxg6 ♘g6!**? with prospects of piece play.

**10...h6** **11.b4!** ♟xe4 **12.♘gxe4 fxe4** **13.hxg6 ♘xg6** **14.g3!**

This prevents ...♟f4; there is no hurry to recover the pawn on e4.

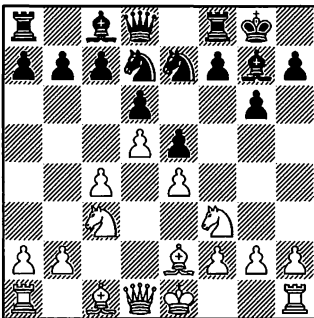
**14...♙f5** **15.♙e3!**

After **15.♙xh6 ♙xh6** **16.♖xh6 e3!** Black achieves counterplay.

**15.♙e3** prevents any counterplay, the black minor pieces are ineffective, and White can recover his pawn at any time on e4 or h6.

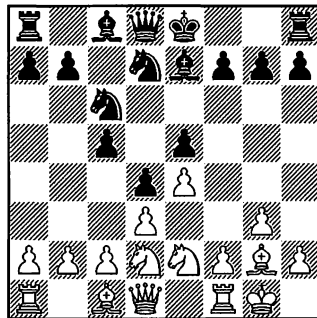
► **13.13 Cvetkovic–Strikovic**

Yugoslavia 1988



► **13.14 Van den Doel–Sosonko**

Rotterdam 1997



The same principle with reversed colours: Black takes advantage of the fact that he has not yet castled:

**9...h5! 10.f4**

**10.h4** g5 11.hxg5 ♙xg5 12.f4 (or 12.♘f3 ♙e7 △...h4) 12...♙e7 and then ...h5-h4 Motwani.

**10...h4 11.♘f3**

**11.g4 h3! 12.♙f3 exf4 13.♘xf4 ♘de5 ♣.**  
**11...h3**

After **11...hxg3 12.♘xg3** White obtains some play for his pieces.

**12.♙h1 ♘f6 13.♘d2?**

**13.fxe5 ♘g4 14.e6! ♙xe6 15.♘f4** with chances of equality.

**13...♘g4 14.♘b1**

**14.♘c4 b5** was hardly any better.

**14...g5 15.♙f3**

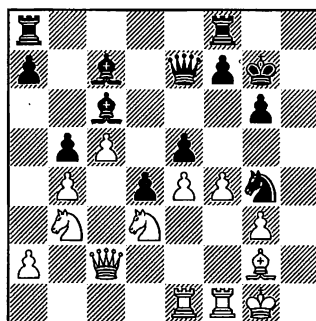
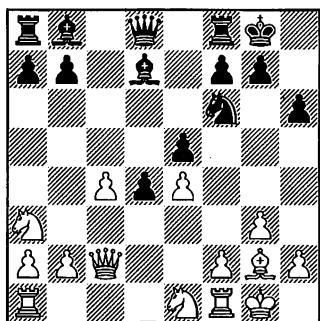
After **15.f5 ♘h6** and then ...g5-g4 White would practically have to manage without the ♙h1; later Black could become active on the queenside.

**15...gxf4 16.gxf4 ♖g8 ♣**

With a clear kingside initiative.

### ► 13.15 Kortchnoi–Botvinnik

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1952



White is planning ♘d3 and f2-f4, but because f2-f4 can be met with ...♘g4, White would still first have to play h2-h3.

**15...h5!**

Aimed at stopping the idea mentioned. Now **16.h3** is strongly met with 16...h4!. But Black is planning ...h5-h4 in any case.

**16.♘d3 h4! 17.c5**

**17.f4?** fails to 17...♘g4, e.g. 18.♖b3 hxg3 19.hxg3 exf4 20.♖xb7 fxg3 21.♖xa8 ♖h4 22.♖fe1 ♙f4! 23.♖d5 ♙e3+ 24.♖xe3 ♘xe3-+.

**17...♖e7 18.♘c4 hxg3 19.hxg3 ♙c7 20.b4**

**20.f4** ♘g4 21.♙f3 exf4 22.gxf4 ♖h4 with an initiative on the kingside for Black.

**20...b5 21.♘d2 ♙c6 22.♖ae1 g6!**

Now a further advantage of ...h5-h4xg3 becomes clear: Black is threatening to start an attack on the king down the open h-file with ...♙g7 and then ...♖h8.

**23.♘b3**

Kortchnoi senses the danger and decides in spite of everything on the plan with f2-f4, but first he takes aim at the ♘d4.

The alternative **23.♙f3** (so as, after ♙g2, to bring the ♖f1 to h1) could not solve White's problems: 23...♙g7 24.♙g2 g5! 25.♖h1 g4 26.♙d1 ♖h8 ♣.

**23...♙g7 24.f4 ♘g4**

**25.fxe5 ♖ad8**

**25...♘e3?! 26.♖f2 ♘xf1 27.♘xd4 ♘xg3 28.♖xg3**, and suddenly White has strong play in return for the exchange.

**26.♖b2 ♘xe5 27.♘f4**

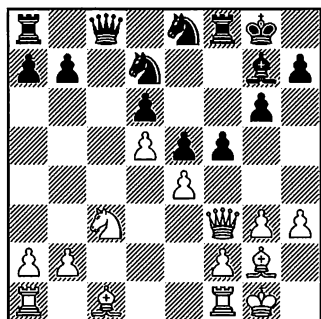
This leads to a difficult position, but what could one advise White to do? After 27. ♖xd4 ♜xd4 28. ♖xd4 ♜d8 29. ♖xe5 ♜xd4 30. ♖xc6 ♖d7 31. ♖xd4 ♖xd4+ 32. ♖h2 ♖c3 too, it would not be so simple for White to hold his position.

27... ♖c4 28. ♖f2 ♖e5+

The bishop pair, squares for his pieces (e5, c4, e3), white pawn weaknesses on g3 (29. ♖d5?! ♖g5!) and e4, the passed d-pawn is more dangerous than the ♖c5 which is cut off from any support – all these were factors in Black's favour.

### ► 13.16 Portisch–Larsen

Sousse (Interzonal tournament) 1967



15.h4!

Although ...f7-f5 has already been played, it is still not too late for h3-h4-h5!

15... ♖c4 16.h5! fxe4

16...f4? would fail to. 17.hxg6 hxg6 18. ♖g4+-.

17. ♖d1!

17. ♖g4 was weaker on account of 17... ♖ef6 18. ♖e6+ ♜f7 19. ♖xd6 (19.hxg6

hxg6 20. ♖xd6? ♖f8 21. ♖e6 ♜e8) 19... ♖f8 20. ♖e6 ♜e8 21. ♖h3 ♖b4∞.

17...gxf5

After 17... ♖ef6 Portisch suggests 18.h6 ♖h8 19. ♖h3 ♖c5 20. ♖e3±.

18. ♖hx5 ♖ef6 19. ♖h4 ♖c5 20. ♖e3 ♜ac8

20... ♖xd5? 21. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 22.b4!, and on account of 22... ♖e6? 23. ♖xe4 Black loses his knight without sufficient compensation.

21. ♜f1

In spite of the extra pawn the black position is really difficult.

White possesses the bishop pair and emphasises the insecure position of the black king by means of ♖h3-f5 and then g3-g4-g5 or ♖g1-g2, ♜d1-h1. At the same time, the ♖e4 is also causing Black worries.

21... ♖h8?!

Why?

22. ♖h3 ♜c7 23. ♖f5 b5?

This should lead to an immediate loss. But in view of the threat of g4-g5 Larsen's situation was difficult in any case.

24. ♜ac1

This threatens 25.b3 ♖b4 26. ♖xe4 as well as the immediate 25. ♖xe4.

24... ♖d3

24... ♖b4 25. ♖xe4 ♖xb2 26. ♖xd6+-.

After 24... ♖d3 Portisch could at once decide the game in his favour after

25.b3 ♖b4 26. ♜xd3

e.g. 26...a5 27. ♖xe4 ♜xc1+ 28. ♖xc1 ♖e1+ 29. ♖g2 ♖xc1 30. ♖xf6+-.

## Chapter IV

# The rook pawn – an underrated fighter

Bent Larsen once very appositely stated that whenever he did not have a clear plan available, he would simply move a rook pawn.

In any case, most players always link the rook pawn with the idea of the 'airhole' or with that of protection from a bishop pin on b4/g4 or b5/g5, but back in *Technique No. 1* we got to know an effective way to employ this particular chessman.

In this chapter we will highlight a few more things: h2-h4-h5 (or a2-a4-a5), and then:

- Either h5-h6 (a5-a6) with the creation of the potential passed pawn (⇒ *Technique No. 14*)
- or h5xg6 (a5xb6), so as to attack down the open file which has arisen (⇒ *Technique No. 15*).

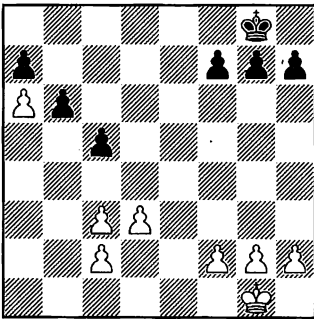
Deciding between these two techniques is not always simple. However, reading this chapter should give the reader a little more certainty as far as this question is concerned.

On the other hand, the setting up of the wave-breaker f2/g3/h4 (⇒ *Technique No. 16*) tends to be more of a defensive technique.

### **Technique No. 14**

## The potential passed pawn is created!

Now let us turn to the 'potential passed pawn':



What is the purpose of the march of the pawn to a6, although a black counterpart is still blocking its way forward?

Well, sometimes a support point is required for a piece (in the constellation above, for example, ♖b7 could be unpleasant in the late middlegame), or – in the case of h4-h5-h6 and kingside castling – threats against the king will occur.

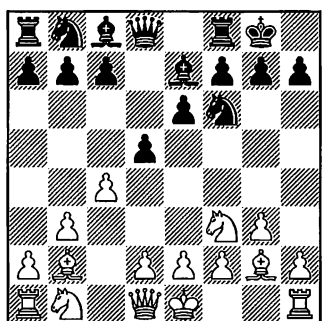
However, the 'potential passed pawn' on a6 is most important in the endgame: if the barrier on a7 falls (or there could be a sacrifice on b6), what there is at once is a dangerous (because it is so far up the board) passed pawn.

Nevertheless, the advance to the sixth rank can start in the middlegame or even in the opening – in the hope of a future favourable endgame:

► **14.1 Levenfish–Bogoljubow**

Moscow 1924

1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.g3 d5 4.b3  
 ♙e7 5.♙b2 0-0 6.♙g2



6...a5!? 7.0-0

Alternatives are 7.♘c3 or 7.a3.

7...a4 8.d3

8.♘a3!?

8...c6 9.♘bd2 ♘a6 10.d4 a3!

The 'potential passed pawn' has been created. Therefore, better was 10.♖c1!?

11.♙c3 b5!

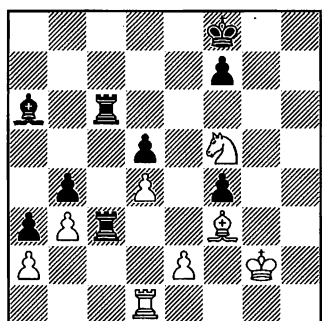
In order to support the ♘a3 and to gain more space on the queenside. And the closer it gets to the endgame, the more White will feel the weakness of the ♘a2 and the strength of Black's 'potential passed pawn'.

12.cxb5 cxb5 13.♘b1 b4 14.♙d2

♙d7 15.♘e5 ♙b5 16.♙g5 h6

17.♙xf6 ♙xf6 18.♘d2 ♖b6

This was the final position of this game:

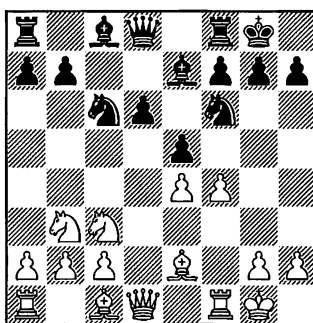


White is down by an exchange and after 40...♖c1, as was played, he also loses the a2-pawn. For that reason he resigned.

In the next game middlegame and endgame motifs go hand in hand – uprooting the ♘c3 offers a starting point for dynamic operations for Black and these finally – thanks to the leitmotif of the '♘a3' – lead into an easily won endgame:

► **14.2 Liuboshits–Boleslavsky**

Minsk 1955



9...a5!

Black wants to drive away the ♘b3, which is controlling the important central square d4, by further advancing his a-pawn. But I can hear your objection, 'surely this move weakens the b6- and b5-squares?' How can White exploit it?

10.♙e3!?

10.a4 is stronger, though after 10...♘b4 the knight occupies a nice square.

10...a4! 11.♘d2

After 11.♘c1 exf4 12.♙xf4 Black obtains comfortable play (12...♙e6, 12...♘e5).

11...a3!

With this move Black undermines the position of the ♘c3. And after the practically forced reply the pawn is promoted to the rank of a 'potential passed pawn'.

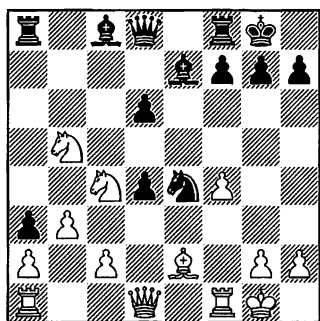
12.b3 ♖d4! 13.♗c4

13.♗xd4 exd4 14.♗d5 ♖xd5 15.exd5 ♗a5 with an initiative for Black.

13...b5! 14.♗xd4

A better try was 14.fxe5 ♖xe2+ 15.♗xe2 bxc4 16.exf6 ♗xf6 17.♗d2♞.

14...exd4 15.♗xb5 ♖xe4



16.♗f3

After 16.♗xd4 d5 17.♗f3 (17.♗e5 ♗c5 18.♗ef3 ♖c3 19.♗d2 ♖xe2+ 20.♗xe2 ♗a6♞) 17...♗c5 18.♗xe4 dxe4 19.c3 ♗a6 Black would have more than mere compensation for the pawn he has sacrificed.

16.♗cxa3? would be pretty bad: 16...d5 17.♗b1 ♗b6 18.♗d3 ♗a6 19.a4 (19.♗xe4 d3+ 20.♗h1 dxe4+-) 19...♗xb5 20.♗xb5 d3+ 21.♗h1 ♖f2+ 22.♗xf2 ♗xf2 23.♗xd3 ♗f6 24.c3 ♗fe8!+-.

16...d5 17.♗xe4 dxe4 18.♗xd4?

18.♗xd4 ♗c5 19.c3 ♗a6 would transpose to the variation we have just seen with 16.♗xd4 etc., which would doubtless be the lesser evil.

18...♗a6 19.♗xd8

The nearer the endgame approaches, the clearer the strength of the ♗a3 becomes. But what else could one advise White to do? 19.♗cd6 is in any case followed by 19...♗f6 20.♗e3 (20.♗xe4 ♗b6+-) 20...♗xa1 21.♗xa1 f5, and Black is clearly winning.

19...♗fxd8 20.♗c7 ♗xc4! 21.bxc4 ♗a4 22.♗ad1?

As though hypnotised, White exchanges more pieces, which plays right into his opponent's hand.

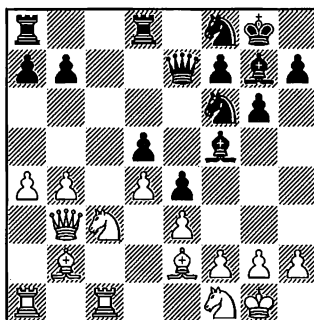
His position was in any case lost, e.g. 22.♗d5 ♗c5+ 23.♗h1 ♗xc4 24.♗d1 ♗b8! Δ...♗b2-+.

22...♗xd1 23.♗xd1 ♗xc4 24.♗d7 ♗c5+ 25.♗f1 ♗xc2 26.♗d8+ ♗f8 27.♗d5 f5 0-1

The ♗a2 falls (28.♗b4 ♗b2), after which the black a-pawn decides the struggle.

### ► 14.3 Tolush–Bronstein

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1944



19...h5! 20.a5 h4! 21.♗a3

After 21.h3 ♖e6 and then ...♗g5 a knight or a bishop sacrifice on h3 (which would be very unpleasant for White) is in the offing.

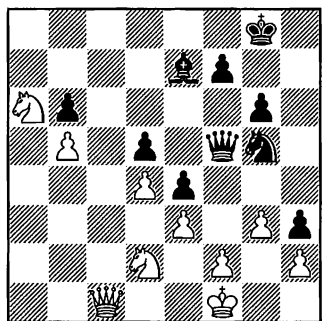
21...h3! 22.g3 ♖8h7! 23.♗d2 ♖g5 24.b5 ♗e6 25.♗a4 ♗g4!

Bronstein aims to exchange the ♗e2, after which the weakness of the light squares in the white camp becomes critical.

26.♗d1

26.♗f1 ♗f5 Δ...♗f3, ...♗g4 with dangerous attacking threats.

26...♖f5 27.♙e7 ♙xe2 28.♖xe2  
 ♜dc8 29.♙xf6 ♙xf6 30.♘c5 b6  
 31.axb6 axb6 32.♞xa8 ♞xa8  
 33.♘a6 ♙e7 34.♙f1 ♜c8 35.♖d1  
 ♞xc1 36.♖xc1



White may have managed to escape a mating attack, but in the endgame which has now arisen Black has at his disposal a very strong trump card – the ‘potential passed pawn’ on h3, and it will decide the game!

**36...♙g7**

The immediate 36...♙f3 37.♘xf3 could be followed by 37...♖xf3 38.♖c8+, after which the ♠h3 falls. Despite this Black could have gone in for this variation, because after 38...♙g7 39.♖xh3 ♖h1+ 40.♙e2 ♖b1! 41.♖d7 ♖d3+ 42.♙e1 ♙a3!! 43.♖xd5 ♙b2! the white king finds itself in a mating net.

But, of course, it was anything but simple to calculate such a variation accurately during the game – and possibly during time trouble.

**37.♖c7**

A very pretty variation would be 37.♙e1 ♙d6 38.♖c6 ♘f3+! 39.♘xf3 exf3 40.♙d2 (40.♖xd6 ♖d3+–) 40...♙xg3! 41.♘c7 ♙xf2 42.♖xd5 ♙g3!–+.

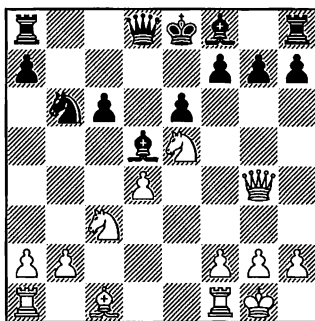
**37...♙f6 38.♙b4 ♘f3 39.♘xf3  
 ♖xf3 40.♙e1 ♖h1+**

White resigned.

The pawn march to h3 is frequently a tried and tested method against ♖g4 in the French Defence or also in many variations of the c3-Sicilian:

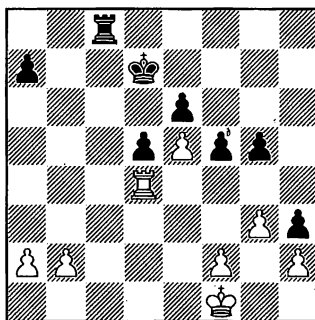
### ▶ 14.4 I.Margulis–Ketslakh

Volokolamsk 1972



**13...h5! 14.♖g3 h4! 15.♖g4 h3!  
 16.g3**

In the further course of the game Black managed to exchange a lot of pieces, after which it came down to the following endgame:

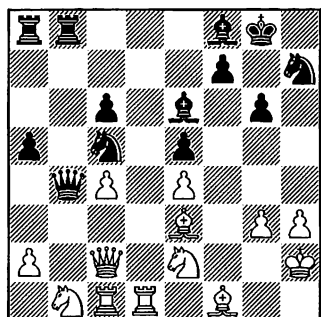


**33...♞c1+ 34.♙e2 ♞h1 35.♞a4  
 ♞xh2 36.♞xa7+ ♙c8 37.♞a8+  
 ♙b7 38.♞e8 ♞h1 39.♞xe6 ♙b1  
 40.♞h6 ♞xb2+ 41.♙e3 g4**

And in this position Black has good winning chances thanks to the strong passed pawn on h3.

► 14.5 Botvinnik–Smyslov

Moscow (20th WCh game) 1954



25...a4! 26.♙d2 ♖b6 27.♙e3 a3! ♚

White's position is now very difficult, since the b2-square is accessible to his opponent's major pieces, which is not very promising for the barrier on a2.

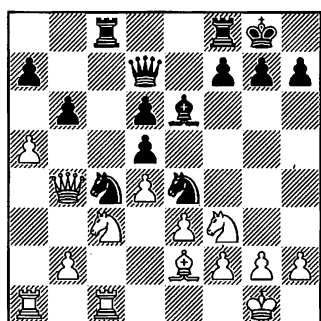
Things continued

28.♙ec3 ♖a5 29.♖f2 ♙e7 30. ♙c2 ♙f6 31.♙d2 ♖b2,

and after long, but vain resistance Botvinnik had to lay down his arms.

► 14.6 Vaganian–Christiansen

Caracas 1976



Black has just played 15...b6, 'offering' to exchange the advanced pawn. However, Vaganian replied:

16.a6!

This turns the a-pawn into a 'potential passed pawn'.

16...♙a5 17.♙b5 ♖e7

Now White can consider exchanges and a transition to the endgame.

18.♙xe4! dxe4 19.♙d2 ♙d5?

19...f5 was better.

20.♖a4!

♙b2-b4.

20...♖g5

20...♖e6 21.♙xc8 ♖xc8 22.b4 ♖c3

23.bxa5 ♖xd2 24.axb6 axb6 25.a7+-.

21.♙d7!

21.b4?! ♙b3!.

21...♙cd8

21...♙xc1+ 22.♙xc1 ♙d8 23.b4+-.

22.♖b5 h6 23.h4! ♖h5 24.b4

♙xd7 25.♖xd7 ♙b3 26.♙xb3

♙xb3 27.♖xa7

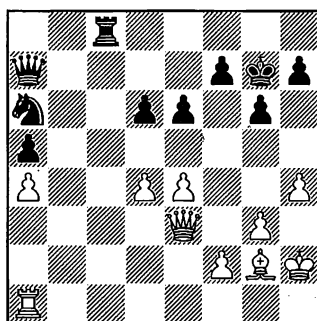
Now the ♙a6 becomes a genuine passed pawn.

27...f5 28.♖e7 f4 29.a7 ♙d5 30.

♙c7 ♖g4 31.♖xf8+ 1-0

► 14.7 Ljubojevic–Tringov

Lucerne (Olympiad) 1982



29.h5! ♖e7

Of course, after 29...h6 30.hxg6 fxg6 the black pawn structure would be visibly weakened. But now a potential passed pawn appears on h6:

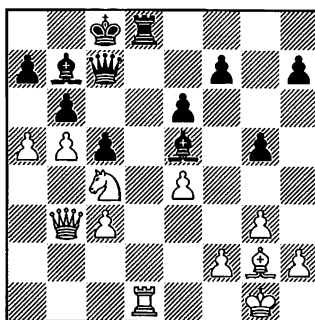
30.h6+! ♙g8 31.♙c1! ♙xc1 32. ♖xc1

Now Black also has to pay some attention to his back rank weakness.

**32...♖d8 33.♙f1! ♘b4 34.♙g1 f6  
35.d5 e5 36.♖c4 ♙f7 37.♙h3  
♖b8 38.♙e6+ ♙e7 39.♙g8! f5**

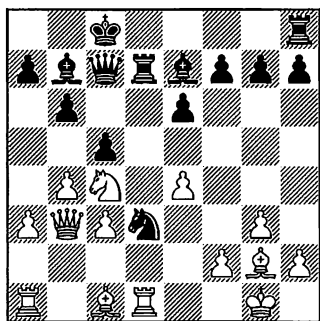
39...♖xg8 40.♖c7+ ♙e8 41.♖c8+  
♙f7 42.♖d7+ ♙f8 43.♖xd6+ ♙e8  
44.♖b8+ ♙f7 45.♖b7+ ♙f8 46.d6+-.

**40.♙xh7 ♙f6 41.exf5 ♖h8 42.fxg6  
1-0**



### ► 14.8 Sutovsky–Gershon

Ramat Aviv 2000



**17.b5! ♜hd8 18.a4! ♙f6 19.a5 ♘e5**

Black wants to force the exchange of some pieces and is hoping that by doing so he will weaken his opponent's initiative on the queenside. **19...h5** would probably have been followed by **20.axb6 axb6 21.♙e3** and the open a-file promises White excellent attacking chances.

After **19...♘e5** the move **20.♜xd7?** fails to **20...♖xd7 21.axb6? ♖d1+ 22.♖xd1 ♜xd1+ 23.♙f1 ♘xc4+-**.

**20.♙f4 ♜xd1+ 21.♜xd1 g5 22.♙xe5!**

The **♘c4** is too strong to allow it to be exchanged.

**22...♙xe5**

**22...♜xd1+ 23.♖xd1 ♙xe5 24.a6! ♙a8 25.♖h5 ♙xc3 26.♖xh7 ♙f6 27.♖g8+ ♙d8 28.e5+-.**

Now the opening of the a-file does not promise White much: **23.axb6 axb6 (23...♜xd1+?! 24.♖xd1 axb6 25.♖h5),** and **24.♜a1?!** (a stronger move would be **24.♜xd8+ ♙xd8 25.♖d1+ ♙e7 26.♖h5 ♙xc3 27.♖xg5+ ♙f8,** though after it too, White does not have anything special) fails to **24...♜d3!**, when Black seizes the initiative.

But there is a better option – the creation of the potential passed pawn!

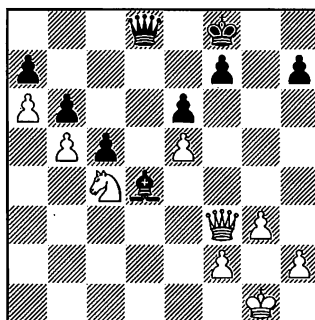
**23.a6! ♙a8 24.♜xd8+ ♙xd8 25.♖d1+ ♙e8**

After this not only is the **♙h7** lost by force, but also a bit later the **♙g5** too.

But other moves were no better:

**25...♙c8 26.♖h5+-.**

**25...♙e7 26.♖h5 ♙xc3 27.♖xg5+ ♙f8 28.♖f4 ♖d8 (28...♖xf4 29.gxf4 ♠e4-e5+-) 29.♙f3 ♙d4 30.e5 ♙xf3 31.♖xf3,**



analysis diagram

and the weakness of the  $\triangle a7$  is decisive:  
**31... ♖d5 32. ♖xd5 exd5 33. ♘xb6 c4**  
**34. ♘xd5 c3 35. ♘b4+- ♙xe5?! 36. b6 or**  
**31... ♖d7 32. ♖b7 ♙e7 33. ♖xd7+**  
**♙xd7 34. ♘b6+.**

The game continued:

**26. ♖h5 ♙xc3 27. ♖xh7 ♖d8**

**27... ♙f8 28. ♖h6+.**

**28. ♖g8+ ♙e7 29. ♖xg5+ ♙f6**

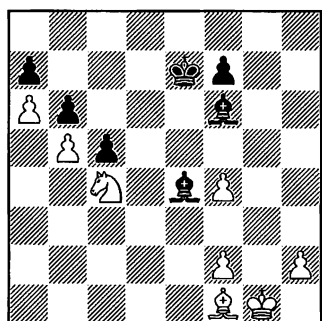
**30. ♖f4 ♖d1+ 31. ♙f1**

Threatening **32.e5.**

**32... e5 32. ♘xe5 ♖d6 33. ♘c4**

**♖xf4 34. gxf4 ♙xe4**

Often enough the bishop pair represents reasonable compensation for a pawn, moreover here the white pawn structure on the kingside is compromised. But here what decides matters is the potential passed pawn!



**35. ♘xb6! ♙d8**

After **35...axb6** decisive is **36. ♙g2.**

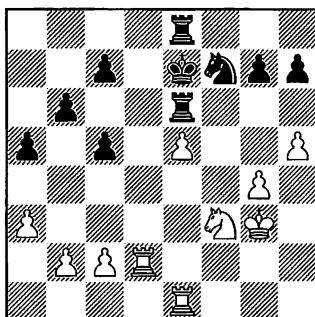
**36. ♘c4,**

and White won.

Next, a typical endgame from the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez. White exploits his positional advantage in instructive fashion:

## ► 14.9 Romanovsky–Grünfeld

Moscow 1925



**43.g5!**

This gains even more space on the kingside.

**43...g6?!**

Black should only make this move in a real emergency. Now White obtains the 'potential passed pawn':

**44.h6! ♖d8 45. ♙f4 ♖f8 46. ♙g4**

**♖d8 47. ♖xd8 ♙xd8 48. ♙f4 ♙e8**

And now the knight heads to f6.

**49. ♘h2 ♘d8 50. ♘g4 ♖e7**

**51. ♘f6+ ♙f8**

Now White only has to exchange rooks, which he manages without further ado.

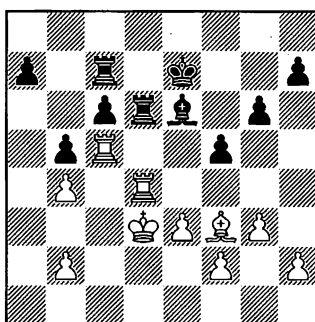
**52. ♖f1 ♖f7 53. ♙g4 ♙e7 54. ♖d1 ♘c6**

**55. ♖d7+ ♙e6 56. ♖xf7 ♙xf7 57. ♙f4**

**♘d4 58. ♘h7 ♘xc2 59. ♘f8! 1-0**

## ► 14.10 Porat–Cala

Helsinki (Olympiad) 1952



The dark squares in the black camp are weak, the ♖c6 is causing much trouble, but for the moment everything is protected.

Can White strengthen his position further?

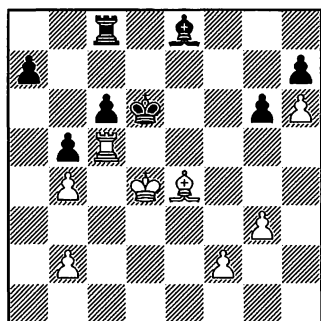
**30.h4!**

And the plan with which we are so well acquainted comes to his aid.

**30...♖xd4+ 31.♙xd4 ♖d6 32.h5!**  
**♞c8 33.e4 fxe4 34.♙xe4 ♙f7**

34...gxh5 35.♞xh5+–.

**35.h6! ♙e8**



Now the task is to get at the ♖h7:

**36.f4! ♞c7 37.f5 gxf5 38.♞xf5 ♙e6**

38...♞e7 39.♞f8+–.

**39.♞e5+ ♙f7 40.♙c5**

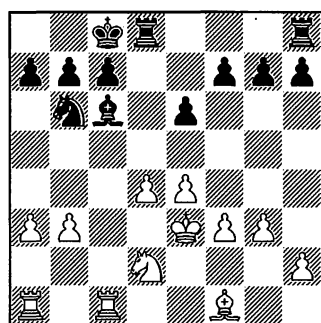
Or 40.♙xh7 ♙f6 41.♙f5 winning.

**40...♙f8 41.g4 ♞f7 42.♞f5 ♙d7**

**43.♞xf7+ ♙xf7 44.g5 1-0**

### ► 14.11 Botvinnik–Vidmar

Groningen 1946



**23.a4!**

Planning a5-a6.

**23...♙e8**

The bishop gets out of the line of fire of the opposing rook – if the white a-pawn now gets to a6, the reply ...b7-b6 is possible.

But perhaps **23...♙b8 24.a5 ♖c8 25.a6 ♖e7 26.axb7 ♙xb7 27.♞a4±** was the lesser evil.

**24.a5 ♖a8**

**24...♖d7 25.a6 b6 26.♞c3 ♙b8 27.♞ac1 ♞c8 28.♖c4** (threatening ♖d6) **28...♞d8 29.♖a3 ♞c8 30.♖b5+–** (Botvinnik).

**25.a6 b6 26.b4**

The pawn is heading for b5, to cramp the black position even further.

**26...♙b8**

**26...c6 27.♙b5 ♙c7 28.♞c3+–** and then ♞ac1 (Botvinnik).

**27.♞c3?**

White hurries to double his rooks, but lets his opponent play ...c7-c6 and then ...♖c7. The immediate **27.b5** was stronger.

**27...c6 28.♞ac1 f6!**

Directed against ♖c4-e5. **28...♖c7 29.b5 ♖xb5 30.♙xb5 cxb5 31.♞c7!+–** (Botvinnik).

**29.♖b1!**

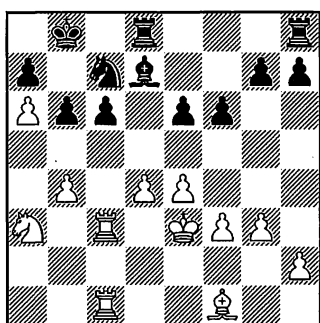
Intending ♖b1-a3, b4-b5.

**29...♙d7**

**29...♖c7? 30.b5!**, as after **30...♖xb5** White again wins with **31.♙xb5 axb5 32.♞c7+–**.

**30.♖a3 ♖c7**

After **30...♞c8** the move **31.♖c4 Δ♖d6** would be very unpleasant.



**31.b5!?**

By means of this pawn sacrifice, which we have already seen in some previous variations, White invades the seventh rank. In conjunction with the ♖a6, this then means extreme danger for the black king.

**31...♟xb5 32.♞xb5 cxb5 33.♞c7**

The obvious threat is 34.♞b7+ and then 35.♞cc7.

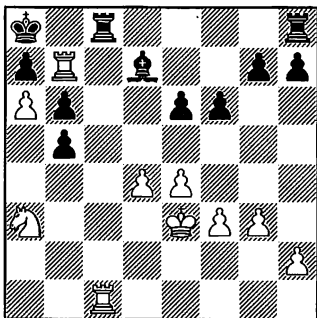
**33...♞c8?**

The decisive mistake. At all costs Black had to destroy the constellation of '♖a6 + rook on the seventh rank', and the only correct way to do so was the move pointed out by Botvinnik: **33...♞c8!**. Black prepares ...♞d8-d7, attacks the ♖a6 and prevents the check on b7. After that White would probably have to rue his previous inaccuracy (27.♞c3?! instead of 27.b5):

- a) **34.♟xb5 ♞d7!** 35.♞xd7 ♞xd7 36.♟xa7 ♟xa7 37.♞c7+ ♟xa6 38.♞xd7 ♞c8!, and the passed pawn makes up for the losses on the seventh rank (Botvinnik).
- b) **34.♞xg7 b4** (34...♞xa6!?) 35.♞cc7 ♞dg8 36.♞gf7 ♞f8 37.♞xa7 ♞xf7 38.♞xf7 ♞c8⇒) **35.♟b5** (35.♟c2 b3 36.♟b4 ♞d7 37.♞xd7 ♞xd7 38.♞b1 ♞a4⇒) **35...♞d7!** 36.♞xd7 ♞xd7 37.♟d6 b3, also with considerable counterplay for Black.

**34.♞b7+ ♟a8**

At first glance everything seems to be OK for Black, or is it!? Consider, e.g., **35.♞xc8+ ♞xc8 36.♞xg7 ♞xa6.**



**35.♞xd7!!**

Vidmar either overlooked or underestimated this move. White sacrifices the exchange, but the ♖a6 remains there and in addition the knight comes to b5. In conjunction with the rook on the seventh rank this becomes extremely unpleasant for the black monarch.

**35...♞xc1 36.♟xb5**

This threatens 37.♞xa7+ ♟b8 38.♞b7+ ♟a8 39.♟c7+.

**36...♞hc8 37.♞xg7 h6 38.♞xa7+ ♟b8 39.♞b7+ ♟a8 40.♞a7+ ♟b8 41.♞b7+ ♟a8 42.g4!**

He fixes the opposing pawns.

**42...e5**

**42...♞1c2 43.h4 ♞c1 44.h5 ♞1c2 45.♞a7+ ♟b8 46.♞f7+-.**

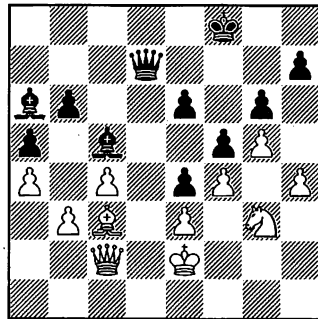
**43.d5 ♞1c5 44.♞a7+ ♟b8 45.♞b7+ ♟a8 46.♞xb6 ♞b8 47.♞xb8+ ♟xb8 48.a7+ ♟b7**

**48...♟a8 49.d6! ♞c8 50.♟d3** (50.♟c7+ ♟xa7 51.♟e6 ♞c3+!) **50...♟b7** (50...♞c1 51.♟c3) 51.♟c7 ♟xa7 52.♟c4+- Botvinnik.

**49.♟d6+ ♟xa7 50.♟e8 ♟b6 51.♟xf6 1-0**

► **14.12 Pirc–Nedeljkovic**

Belgrade (Yugoslav ch) 1952



**31.h5! ♞b7 32.h6! ♟e8 33.♞b2**  
 ♠♞c3.

**33...♙b4 34.♙d4 ♖c7 35.♚d1!**

♠♗a1.

**35...♙d6 36.♚a1 ♙c6 37.♙e5!**

White aims for an endgame with ‘good knight versus bad bishop’, when the potential passed pawn on h6 will have the main role to play.

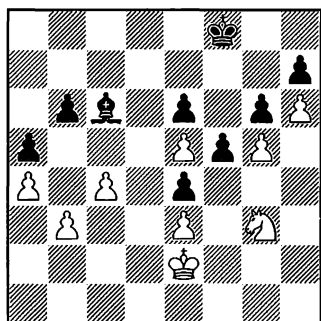
**37...♙xe5 38.♚xe5! ♚xe5**

Forced. **38...♚d7** loses on account of **39.♚b8+ ♚d8 40.♚xd8+ ♙xd8 41.♙h5!** (♠♙f6) **41...gxf5 42.g6** – in this variation the strength of the ♠h6 already becomes clear.

**39.fxe5**

The threat is **40.♙h5!** (♠41.♙f6) **40...gxf5 41.g6**, and as in the variation we have just seen, the ♠h6 decides the game.

**39...♙f8**



**40.♙d2!**

The principle of the two weaknesses! (⇒ *Technique No. 45*). The white king heads for the queenside so as to create a passed pawn there.

**40...♙e8 41.♙e2 ♙e7 42.♙c3**

**♙d7 43.♙f4 ♙f7 44.♙b2 ♙e8**

**45.♙a3 ♙e7 46.b4 ♙d7 47.♙b3!**

**♙f7 48.c5 ♙c6 49.♙c4 ♙e8**

Other moves are no better. Both after **49...bxc5 50.bxa5** and after **49...axb4 50.cxb6 ♙xb6 51.♙xb4** the white a-pawn will divert the opposing king

and enable the decisive penetration **♙b4-c5-d6**.

**50.cxb6 ♙xb6 51.bxa5+ ♙xa5**

**52.♙c5 ♙xa4 53.♙xe6 ♙b3**

**54.♙d4 ♙c2 55.♙f4**

Or **55.♙f8 ♙d2 56.♙xh7 f4 57.♙f6+-**.

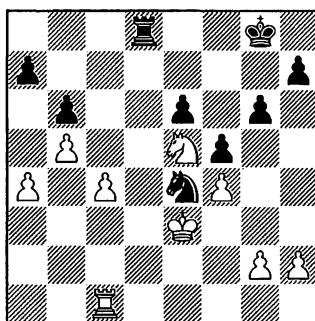
**55...♙d2 56.e6 ♙e1 57.♙d5 ♙f2,**

and here the quickest win was **58.♙f6**.

In the next example, it is only thanks to the deployment of both his rook pawns that White manages to break down Black’s resistance – one of them operates as a potential passed pawn, the other is used to open a file:

### ► 14.13 Smyslov–Karlsson

Las Palmas (Interzonal tournament) 1982



**37.a5! ♙c5**

Not **37...bxa5 38.♙a1 ♙d2 39.♙xa5 ♙xg2 40.♙xa7 ♙xh2 41.b6**, winning.

**38.a6! ♙g7 39.♙c2!**

The threat is **40.♙d2**. Of course Black wants to prevent this – since an exchange of rooks would be out of the question in view of the weakness of a7, the d-file would fall into White’s hands.

**39...♙e4**

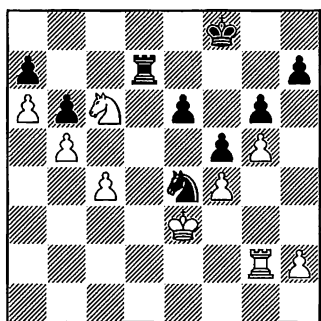
For the moment the white rook still has no access to the black camp. However ...

**40.g4! ♙f6 41.g5+ ♙g7 42.♙c6**

**♙d7 43.♙g2**

43.c5 ♖xc5 44.♞xc5 bxc5 45.b6 axb6 46.a7 would have been too hasty according to Smyslov, since after 46... ♞xa7 47.♗xa7 h6 48.h4 hxg5 49.hxg5 e5! 50.fxe5 ♔f7 Black would retain chances of saving the game.

43...♗f8



44.h4! ♗e8 45.♞h2 ♗f8 46.h5! gxf5

46...♗g3 47.♞h3! ♗xh5 48.c5! bxc5 49.b6! axb6 50.a7, and the a-pawn decides.

47.♞xh5 ♗g8 48.♞h1!

White plays for zugzwang. The text move is stronger than 48.♗e5 ♞d8 49.♞h6 ♗c5 50.♞f6 ♞d1, and Black could still fight on.

48...♗g7 49.♗e5 ♞d8 50.♞h6 ♞d6

Now 50...♗c5 no longer works: 51.♞f6 ♞d1 52.♞f7 +-.

51.♗e2!

Smyslov skilfully eliminates any possible counterplay. 51.♗c6 ♗d2 would be less clear.

51...♗c3+

51...♞d2+ 52.♗e1 ♞d6 53.♗c6+-.

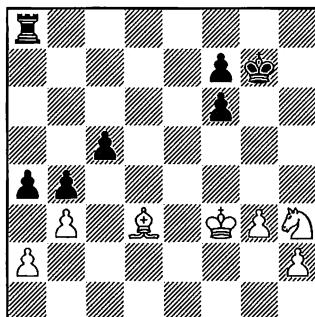
52.♗e1 ♞d1+ 53.♗f2 ♞d4 54.♗f3 ♞d6 55.♞f6 ♗g8 56.♞f7 ♞d3+ 57.♗xd3

If 57...♗xf7 then 58.♗e5+ decides, followed by ♗c6.

Therefore Black resigned.

## ► 14.14 Beliavsky–Dolmatov

Minsk (USSR Ch) 1979



At first glance the situation appears really unappealing for Black. 38...a3 would be followed by 39.♗f4, after which the black rook does not get access to the second rank. The potential passed pawn on a3 would not then be threatening anything, whilst the ♗c5 would be a serious weakness and the passed pawn on h2 would represent a great danger.

38...♞h8 would be slightly better, though after 39.♗f2 axb3 40.axb3 ♞xh2 41.♗e4 ♞h5 42.♗f4 Black would have to fight hard for the draw.

In the game, Dolmatov finds a far better idea:

38...c4!! 39.♗xc4

After 39.bxc4 Black would have the choice between 39...b3 and 39...♞b8, in both cases with dangerous threats on the queenside.

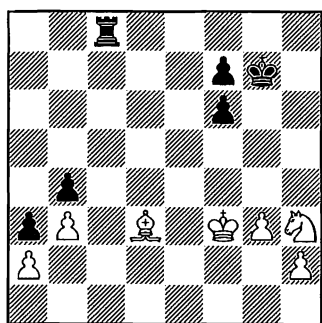
39...♞c8!

The threat of 40...♞xc4 forces the white bishop to leave the c-file, after which the rook gets the chance to hunt down the ♗a2 by means of ...♞c1-a1.

40.♗d3

40.♗f4? ♞xc4! 41.bxc4 b3 42.axb3 a3+-.

40...a3



Now this pawn becomes really dangerous. The threat is both ...♖c1-a1 and also ...♖c3xb3.

Suddenly White must start asking himself whether he can really save his position.

**41. ♖e3?**

41. ♖f4? is followed not by 41... ♖c1? on account of 42. ♖d5+–, but by 41... ♖c3! and then ... ♖xb3!, and now Black should win.

As Dvoretzky points out in his analysis of this endgame, the only safe way to a draw consisted of 41. ♖f2! ♖c1 (41... ♖c3 42. ♖e3 Δ ♖xb3? 43. ♖d1) 42. h4 ♖a1 43. ♖c4 ♖xa2 44. ♖d3 ♖f2+ (44... ♖d2 45. ♖xb4 a2 46. ♖xa2 ♖xa2=) 45. ♖xf2 a2 46. ♖xb4 a1 ♖ 47. ♖d3 – Black cannot take this fortress by storm.

41... ♖c1 42. ♖f4 ♖a1 43. ♖d5 ♖xa2 44. ♖xb4 ♖xh2 45. ♖e2 ♖h3 46. ♖f2 f5 47. ♖a2 f4 48. gxf4 ♖xb3 49. ♖c4 ♖h3 50. ♖f1?

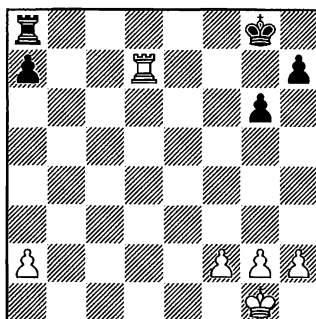
According to Dvoretzky it was not clear whether Black could win after 50. ♖e2!.

50... ♖h2+ 51. ♖g2 ♖f6 52. ♖g3 ♖h5 53. ♖f1 ♖c5 54. ♖d3 ♖d5 55. ♖a6 ♖d2 56. ♖c4 ♖d4

White resigned.

► **14.15 Okhotnik–Cooke**

Zalakaros 2000



This example shows the strength of the 'potential passed pawn' in cooperation with a rook on the seventh rank. White is a pawn up and has the active rook, but Black is hoping that after ...a7-a5 he too can bring his rook into play (e.g. with ...♖a8-b8-b2) and continue to offer resistance.

Okhotnik's way of winning is instructive:

**30. h4! a5 31. h5! ♖b8**

After 31...gxf5 the white f-pawn would advance as a passed pawn. But the text move is no better either.

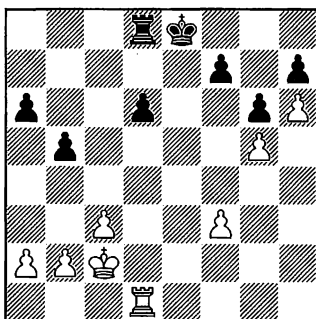
**32. h6! a4**

32... ♖b2 33. ♖g7+ ♖h8 34. ♖a7+–.

**33. ♖g7+ ♖h8 34. ♖a7 1-0**

► **14.16 Noradounghian–A.Nielsen**

Moscow (Olympiad) 1956



White's main task is clear – get at the  $\Delta$ h7. But that is easier said than done.

**29.♖b3 ♗d7 30.♞e1 ♜c8**

White gets the e-file and later the fourth rank as an operational base, since 30...♞e8? of course fails to 31.♞xe8 ♗xe8 32.♖b4.

**31.♞e4 ♜c5 32.f4 a5?!**

The immediate 32...♞f5!? looks better, intending ...f7-f6, so as to exchange the  $\Delta$ g5 thus robbing the potential passed pawn of its backup.

**33.a4 ♞f5 34.axb5 ♞xb5+ 35.♗c2 ♞f5 36.♞a4 ♗c6**

Here too Black should try 36...f6 37.gxf6 ♗e6.

**37.♗d3 ♗b5**

This was the last good opportunity for 37...♞b5 38.♗c2 ♗d7 39.b3 f6 40.gxf6 ♗e6.

**38.♞e4 d5 39.♞e5 ♞xf4 40.♞xd5+ ♗b6 41.♗e3 ♞f1 42.c4 a4 43.♗d4 ♞f3 44.♗e5 ♗c6 45.♗e4 ♞b3 46.♞b5! ♞g3**

46...♞xb5 47.cxb5+ ♗xb5 48.♗e5 ♗b4 49.♗f6 ♗b3 50.♗g7! winning.

**47.♗d4 a3 48.bxa3 ♞xa3 49.♞b8 ♞g3 50.♞f8 ♞xg5 51.♞xf7 ♞g4+ 52.♗e5 ♞xc4 53.♞xh7 g5**

Or 53...♞h4 54.♗f6+- . No matter that the material is now reduced, White's win is guaranteed by the h7-pawn which at last has become a 'genuine' passed pawn.

**54.♞g7 ♞h4 55.h7 g4 56.♗f6 ♗d5**

56...g3 57.♗f7 g2 58.♗g8+- .

**57.♞g5+ ♗e4**

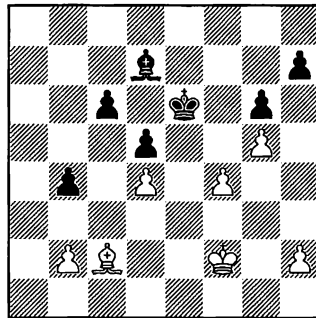
57...♗d6 58.♗g7+- .

**58.♞xg4+ ♞xg4 59.h8♚,**

and White won.

## ► 14.17 Kieninger–Karaklajic

Ljubljana 1955



White has the better bishop – but is that enough for the win?

In what follows we see a winning method which is typical of this sort of endgame – the creation of a potential passed pawn, after which the possibility of a sacrifice by  $\Delta$ xg6 will tie his opponent's hands.

**31.h4! ♗f7 32.h5 ♗g7 33.h6+! ♗f7 34.♗e3**

The king heads towards the  $\Delta$ b4, whereas its black rival may not leave the kingside on account of the idea of  $\Delta$ xg6.

**34...♗g4**

34...♗e8 35.f5! gxf5 36.♗xf5 ♗g8 37.♗f4+- .

**35.♗d3 ♗c8**

35...♗h3 36.♗d2 ♗g2 37.♗c2 ♗e4 38.♗xe4 dxe4 39.♗d2 ♗e6 40.♗e3 ♗f5 41.b3+- .

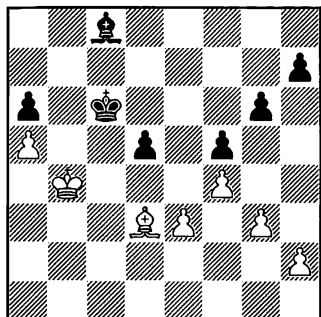
**36.♗d2 ♗g4 37.♗c2 ♗f3 38.♗b3 ♗e4 39.♗a6 ♗e7 40.♗xb4 ♗d6 41.♗c8**

The threat of f4-f5 is deadly, e.g. 41...♗d3 42.f5 ♗e4 43.f6 ♗d3 44.♗b7 ♗f5 45.♗xc6+- .

Therefore Black resigned.

► 14.18 Averbakh–Matanovic

Belgrade (USSR–Yugoslavia) 1961



40.h4! ♖d6

40...h6 41.♙c2 ♖d6 42.♙a4 ♙b7  
43.♙e8.

41.h5

Now Black played 41...gxh5 and after  
42.♖c3 he resigned in view of  
42...♖c5 43.♙e2 ♖d6 44.♖d4+–  
(zugzwang!).

But would White also have won if his  
opponent had not captured on h5? – Of  
course he would, thanks to the potential  
passed pawn, e.g.:

41...♖c6 42.h6! ♖d6 43.♖c3

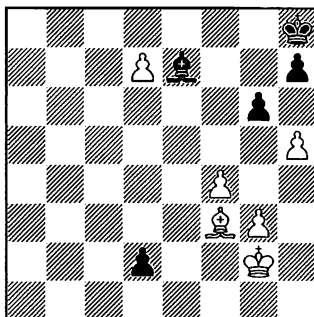
♖c5 44.♙e2 ♙b7 45.g4! ♙c8

45...fxg4 46.♙xg4 ♖b5 47.f5+–.

46.g5 ♙b7 47.♙h5! gxh5 48.g6,  
and once more ♠h6 becomes the hero  
of the day.

► 14.19 Eliskases–Pilnik

Mar del Plata 1962



In view of the bishops of opposite  
colour the chance of a win at first  
appears to be slight. But what about:

46.h6! ♖g8 47.♖f1 ♙d8 48.♖e2  
♙a5 49.♙d5+ ♖f8 50.♙b3

Zugzwang!

50...g5

Or 50...♖e7 51.♙g8 ♖xd7 52.♙xh7  
♖e7 53.♙xg6 ♖f8 54.♙c2, and White  
is winning.

51.fxg5 ♙d8 52.g6!

That was how White got over the barrier  
on h7.

52..hxg6 53.♖xd2 ♙f6 54.♖d3

♖e7 55.♙a4 ♙g5 56.h7 ♙f6

57.♖e4 ♙g7 58.♖d5 ♙c3

59.♖c6 ♙e5 60.h8♙!

Black resigned.

**Technique No. 15**

**File opening by the rook pawn**

This technique is closely related to the  
creation of the potential passed pawn  
(⇒ No. 14). But here, as soon as the  
pawn reaches the fifth rank, it stops  
advancing and gives itself up in return

for the opposing knight pawn in order  
to open the rook file.

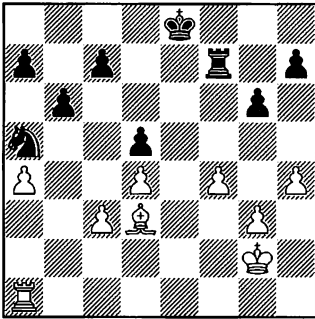
Reasons for deciding against the  
potential passed pawn and in favour of  
the opening of the file can be:

- If one went for the ‘potential passed pawn’ the barrier would be hard or impossible to get at.
- Opening the file promises a dangerous initiative or a direct attack.

When you advance your rook pawn you often have no idea whether your future intention is to open the file or to create a potential passed pawn – that will be decided later depending on the specific circumstances.

### ► 15.1 Capablanca–Tartakower

New York 1924



27.h5! ♖f6

Of course White could now create a ‘potential passed pawn’ by means of 28. h6. But Capablanca prefers to open the h-file, on which he thinks he can penetrate the opposing camp with his rook.

28.hxg6 hxg6 29.♖h1 ♖f8  
30.♖h7 ♖c6 31.g4

31.♖d7!?

31...♖c4

31...♖b3!? Δ...♖c1.

32.g5 ♖e3+ 33.♖f3 ♖f5?!

More chances of saving the game were promised by 33...♖d1 34.♖h6 ♖f7 35. f5 ♖xc3 36.fxg6+ ♖g8 37.♖e2 ♖f2 38. ♖f5 ♖e4.

34.♖xf5 gxf5

Capablanca’s subsequent idea is really very beautiful and very instructive.

35.♖g3!! ♖xc3+ 36.♖h4! ♖f3?!

This game was widely analysed, and especially 36...a6! was much discussed – Black immediately aims for counterplay with ...b6-b5. For a time it was even thought that Black could save the game in this way. But as Kasparov writes in his work *My Great Predecessors*, Capablanca’s work of art was saved by some analysis by GM Igor Zaitsev – White replies 37.♖h5! b5 38.♖g6!!.

The main variation goes as follows: 38...bxa4 39.♖xf5 a3 40.♖h6 a2 41.♖xa6 ♖c2 42.♖e5 ♖f7 43.♖xd5 ♖f2 44.♖e5 ♖e2+ 45.♖f5 ♖f2 46.♖a7+–.

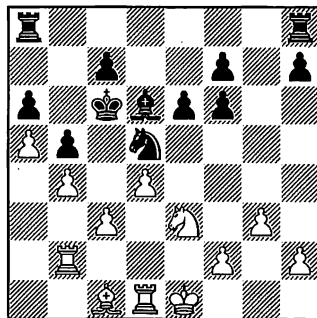
37.g6 ♖xf4+ 38.♖g5 ♖e4 39.♖f6

The rook on the seventh rank, the king on f6 and the passed g6-pawn – Black is completely helpless against such activity. But do not forget – all this is the logical consequence of the plan set in motion with 27.h5!.

39...♖g8 40.♖g7+ ♖h8 41.♖xc7 ♖e8 42.♖xf5 ♖e4 43.♖f6 ♖f4+ 44.♖e5 ♖g4 45.g7+! ♖g8 46.♖xa7 ♖g1 47.♖xd5 ♖c1 48.♖d6 ♖c2 49.d5 ♖c1 50.♖c7 ♖a1 51.♖c6 ♖xa4 52.d6 1-0

### ► 15.2 Mieses–Alekhine

Baden-Baden 1925



We shall study the pre-history of this position in ⇒ *Example 23.1*.

The light squares in White's camp are weak, his pieces are passive and the ♖c1 is simply bad. If Black could now manage to activate his rooks ...

**22...h5!**

So as to open the h-file with ...h5-h4. It was not advisable to play 22...♗xc3?! 23.♞c2 ♔d7 (23...♙xb4? 24.♙d2) 24.♞xc3 ♙xb4 25.♙d2, and play becomes unclear.

**23.♗g2**

An alternative was 23.h4 (⇒ *Technique No. 16*, the 'wave-breaker'), after which Black would devote himself to the preparation of the breakthrough with ...f5-f4. Should White prevent this idea by f2-f4, the ♖g3 would become a weakling.

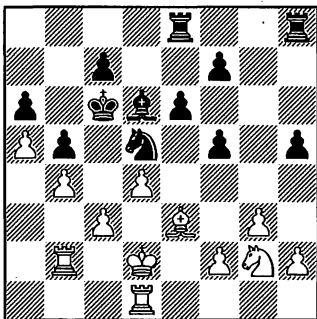
**23...♞ae8**

Δ...e6-e5.

**24.♙e3 f5 25.♔d2?**

A serious error, though White would also have been confronted with great difficulties after the better move 25.♔f1 ♞eg8 Δ...♞g4, ...h5-h4 (Alekhine).

With the text move White blocks his own bishop's retreat, which – as we shall soon see – allows his opponent to get in ...h5-h4 without any further preparation. In addition, White could have found a good use for his monarch on the kingside to protect some important entry squares there.



**25...h4! 26.♔d3**

26.♗xh4? cost a piece on account of 26...f4 (the point!), but 26.♞g1 would not have solved White's problems either: 26...♞eg8 27.♞bb1 h3! ('potential passed pawn') 28.♗f4 ♗xf4 29.♙xf4 ♙xf4+ 30.gxf4 ♞g2-+.

**26...hxg3 27.hxg3 ♞h2 28.♗h4 ♙xg3**

Here *Hiarcs* prefers 28...♗xe3 29.♔xe3 f4+ -+, but basically all that is no longer so important – in any case White can no longer save the game.

**29.♗f3 ♞g2 30.♗e1 ♞g1 31.♞e2**

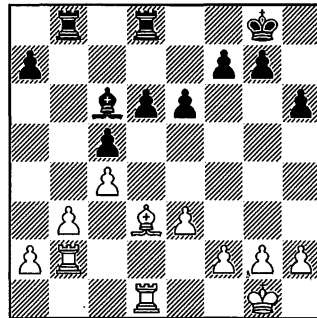
31.fxg3 ♞xg3-+.

**31...♙d6 32.♞c1 ♞h8 33.♗f3 ♞xc1**

**34.♙xc1 ♞h3 0-1**

► **15.3 Sämisch–Alekhine**

Dresden 1926



'In such positions the weakness of the d6-pawn is only apparent. White, on the other hand, has a real weakness on the queenside, because the advance ...a5-a4 cannot be prevented' (A.Alekhine).

**21...a5 22.♞bd2 ♔f8!**

The king will protect the ♖d6, so that the ♞b8 no longer has to worry about such 'details'.

**23.♙c2 ♔e7 24.f3 a4! 25.♔f2**

25.bxa4 ♞b4-.

Now Black has the choice – either to exchange on b3 or to create a ‘potential passed pawn’ by 25...a3.

**25...axb3**

25...a3 would close the position too much and the way to the ♖a2 would be difficult and unclear. After the text move, however, Black can pursue a clear strategy.

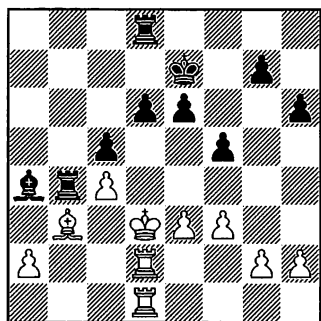
**26.♙xb3**

26.axb3?! would allow the rooks to invade the white camp down the a-file.

**26...f5**

This gains space and prevents e3-e4.

**27.♙e2 ♖b4 28.♙d3 ♙a4**



**29.♙xa4?**

After this White's a- and c-pawns become very weak. He had much better chances of saving the game after 29.♙c3 ♖db8 30.♖b2 (but not 30.♖xd6? ♖xb3+!-+).

**29...♖xa4 30.♖b1**

The position after 30.♖c1 ♖a3+ 31.♙e2 ♖da8 32.♖cc2 ♙d7 (Δ...♙c6, ...d6-d5) 33.e4 fxe4 34.fxe4 ♙c6 would, in view of the bad pawn structure, be completely joyless for White.

**30...♖a3+ 31.♙e2**

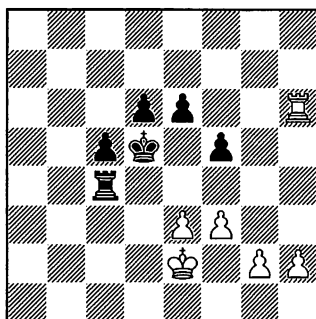
31.♖b3 ♖da8 32.♖xa3 ♖xa3+ 33.♙e2 ♖c3-+.

**31...♖c3 32.a4 ♖a3!**

There is no doubt that the a-pawn is more important. After 32...♖xc4?! 33.♖b7+

♙f6 34.♖a2 White would obtain counterplay.

**33.♖b7+ ♖d7 34.♖db2 ♖xa4 35.♖xd7+ ♙xd7 36.♖b7+ ♙c6 37.♖xg7 ♖xc4 38.♖g6 ♙d5 39.♖xh6**



White has managed to avoid losing material, but that does not help him – the black c-pawn is too strong and can no longer be stopped.

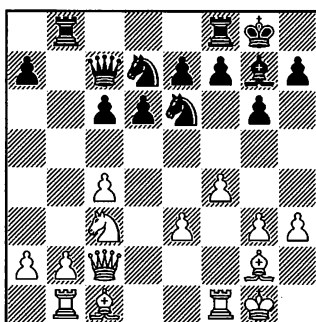
**39...♖c2+ 40.♙f1 c4 41.♖h8 c3 42.h4**

42.♖c8 f4! 43.exf4 ♙d4 44.h4 ♙e3 45.♙g1 ♙xf4 46.h5 ♙g5 47.g4 d5-+ (Alekhine).

**42...♖d2 43.♙e1 ♖xg2 44.♖c8 c2 45.h5 ♖h2 46.h6 ♖xh6 47.♖xc2 ♖h1+ 48.♙d2 ♖h2+ 49.♙d3 ♖xc2 0-1**

## ► 15.4 Najdorf–Geller

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



**19...a5!**

This secures c5 for his knights. In addition Geller intends to provoke b2-b3 later and then by means of ...a5-a4 followed by an exchange on b3 to open the a-file and to inflict on his opponent a weakness on b3.

**20.♙d2 ♘ec5 21.♞e2**

White would like to exchange the strong ♙g7 by means of ♙d2-c3, even if that means the loss of the bishop pair.

**21...♖b6 22.♝h2 ♜fc8**

Over-protecting the ♖c6.

**23.♙c3 ♙xc3 24.♞xc3**

Here Black, according to Bronstein in his famous tournament book, should play

**24...♖b4!?**

Unfortunately Bronstein gives no specific variations, so we shall analyse his suggestion a bit further:

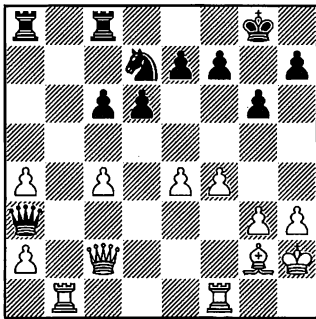
**25.b3**

After 25.♞e2 a4 the weak b-pawn is fixed on b2.

**25...♖a3!?**

After 25...a4 Black would have to be prepared for 26.♙xc6! axb3 27.axb3 ♜xc6 28.♞d5 or for 26.♞xa4! ♞xa4 27.bxa4

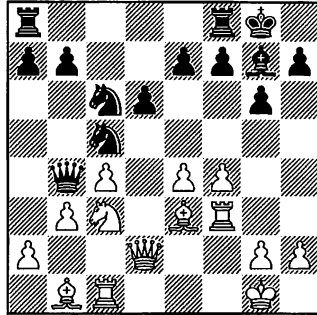
**26.e4 a4 27.♞xa4 ♞xa4 28.bxa4 ♜a8,**



and the black initiative on the queenside expands. The attempt for counterplay with 29.♜b7 ♞c5 30.♜xe7? fails to 30...♝f8.

► **15.5 S.Johannessen–M.Johansson**

Varna (Olympiad) 1962



In view of White's central pawn majority, Black's position looks somewhat cramped.

Nevertheless there is one good option for counterplay:

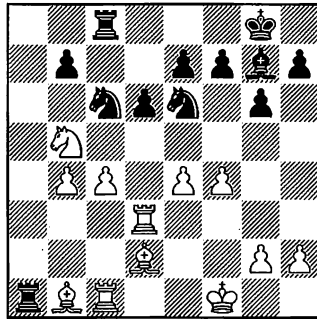
**16...a5! 17.♞b5**

17.♞d5!? ♖xd2 18.♙xd2 with chances for both sides.

**17...a4! 18.♖xb4 ♞xb4 19.♙d2 axb3! 20.axb3 ♞c6 21.b4 ♞e6 22.♝f1**

After 22.♙d3 ♜a2 23.♜f2 ♜fa8 24.♜cf1 ♜b2 Black also has the initiative.

**22...♜fc8 23.♞d3 ♜a1!**

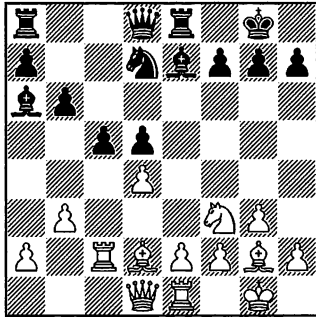


Thanks to the opening of the a-file Black was able to develop his initiative on the queenside.

In effect he was able to notch up the full point.

► **15.6 Karpov–Kasparov**

Moscow (15th WCh game) 1984



White is planning by means of  $\text{♙d2-e3}$ ,  $\text{♖d1-c1}$ ,  $\text{♞e1-d1}$  to increase his pressure on the pawn duo c5/d5. But Kasparov finds a way to achieve counterplay – he opens the a-file!

**14...♙b7! 15.♙e3 a5! 16.♖c1 a4! 17.♞d1 axb3 18.axb3 ♙f6 19.♙e1 h6 20.♙f3 ♖e7 21.♖d2**

Or **21.dxc5 ♞a1 22.♖d2 ♞xd1 23.♖xd1 ♙xc5** with counterplay.

**21...♞a3**

Black has sufficient activity.

position would be totally OK. But Hübner finds a way to create disharmony in his opponent's position.

**14.a4! ♞c8 15.a5!**

Now the knight cannot move: **15...♙d7?? 16.axb6 axb6 (16...♙xb6 17.c5+-) 17.♞xa8 ♞xa8 18.♖xc6+-**. So Black must degrade his pawn structure so as to finally be able to develop the  $\text{♙b8}$ .

**15...bxa5 16.♞xa5 ♖d8 17.♞a4 ♙d7 18.c5 ♙c7 19.♙d2**

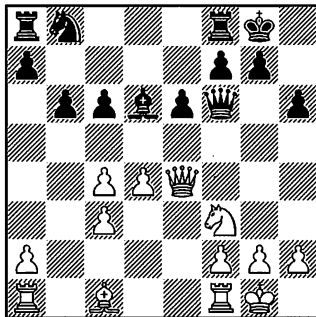
$\text{♙fa1}$ . Thanks to the weakness of the  $\text{♙a7}$  White has a clear advantage.

The advance of the h-pawn to attack the opposing king is a popular motif in the opening, just think, e.g., of the Dragon Variation with 1.e4 c5 2.♙f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♙xd4 ♙f6 5.♙c3 g6 6.♙e3 ♙g7 7.f3 0-0 8.♖d2 ♙c6 9.♙c4 ♙d7 10.0-0-0 ♞c8 11.♙b3 ♙e5 12.h4 ♙c4 (12...h5!?) 13.♙xc4 ♞xc4 14.h5 etc.

We shall study some such cases in *Technique No. 30*, for the moment here is just one example:

► **15.7 Hübner–Unzicker**

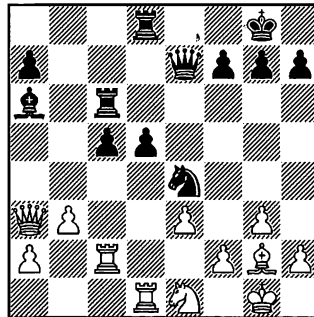
Bad Kissingen 1980



Black still requires two moves ( $\text{...♞f8-c8}$ ,  $\text{...♙b8-d7}$ ), to develop his knight and after a 'normal' course of events, e.g. **14.♙e3 ♞c8 15.♞fe1 ♙d7, the black**

► **15.8 Kasparov–Ulubin**

Cannes (Clock simul) 1988



White is exerting unpleasant pressure on the hanging pawns. However, Ulubin finds an interesting possibility for counterplay.

**23...h5! 24.♖c1**

From here, the queen continues to eye up the  $\triangle c5$ , but gets closer to the kingside and at the same time is ready (after  $\triangle e1-d3$  and the exchange of that knight), to pop up on d1. In addition Black now has to reckon with the idea of b3-b4.

**24...h4! 25.♘d3**

**25.b4** would let White conquer the d4-square, but after **25...c4 26.♘d3** (26.a3  $\text{♞h6}$  with an attack) **26...♞h6 27.♘f4** (27.♙xe4  $\text{♞xe4}$  with an attack) **27...♙b7** ( $\triangle...g7-g5$ ) the black initiative on the kingside looks really dangerous.

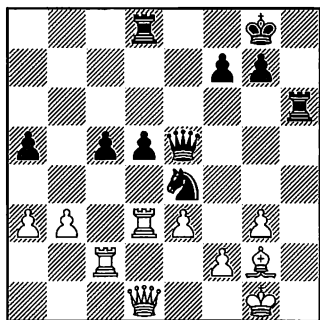
**25...hxg3! 26.hxg3 ♙xd3 27.♞xd3 ♞h6**

$\triangle...♖e5(g5)-h5$ .

**28.♖d1 ♖e5 29.a3**

$\triangle b3-b4$ .

**29...a5**



The black attack on the kingside neutralises White's pressure on the c5- and d5-pawns, so for example  $\text{♙xe4}$  and then  $\text{♞xc5}$  is impossible on account of the mate on h1.

In addition, White must then also take into account the pawn storm  $\dots g7-g5, \dots f7-f5-f4$ .

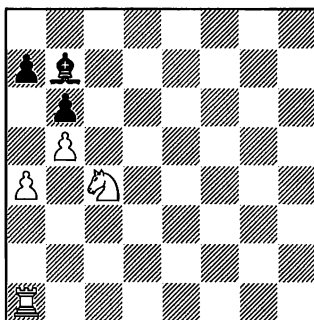
Kasparov is aware of this danger and takes energetic counter-measures, before it would be too late to do so.

**30.f4! ♖e6 31.g4 g5 32.♞c4 ♞d6 33.♞a4 c4**

**33...gxf4 34.♙xe4 dxe4 35.♞xd6 ♖xd6 36.♖xd6 ♞xd6 37.exf4 ♞d3 38.♞xe4 ♞xb3 39.♞a4=.**

**34.bxc4 dxc4 35.♞xd6 ♘xd6 36.♖d4 gxf4 37.♖xf4 ♞g6 38.g5 ♖f5 39.♖xf5 ♘xf5 40.♞xc4 1/2-1/2**

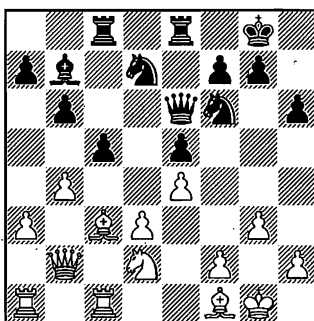
Line opening very often happens in positions of the following type:



The final two examples are on this pattern:

### ► 15.9 Kramnik–P.Nikolic

Monaco (rapid) 1997



**21.b5!**

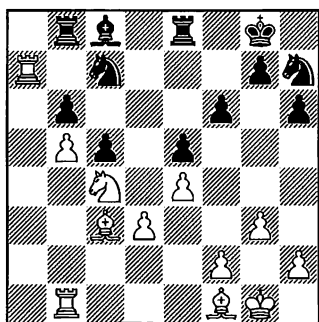
Kramnik wants after  $a3-a4-a5, \triangle d2-c4$  to achieve the same constellation as in the previous diagram, so that he can then by  $a5xb6$  open up the a-file for his

rook and inflict on Black a weak pawn on b6.

**22...♖h7**

Nikolic sets up the f6/e5 barrier against the white ♖/♗ battery (⇒ *Technique No. 3, Technique No. 39*), but in doing so leaves his knight very passive. White carries on untroubled with his plan:

**22.a4! f6 23.♖a2 ♖df8 24.a5! ♖b8  
25.♖xe6+ ♖xe6 26.♗c4 ♗c7 27.  
♖cb1 ♗c8 28.axb6 axb6 29.♖a7**

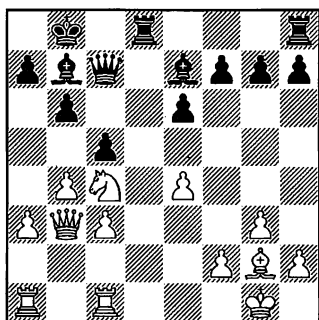


Thanks to his active rook White clearly holds the better cards.

**29...♖e7 30.f4!±**

### ► 15.10 M.D.Tseitlin–Sutovsky

Tel Aviv 1999



We already saw quite a similar position as *Example 14.8* in the section on the 'potential passed pawn' (Sutovsky-Gershon).

There White's plan consisted of b4-b5, a3-a4-a5-a6, and the strength of the ♖a6 brought White the win.

**18.b5!**

♖a3-a4-a5.

**18...h5 19.a4 ♗g5 20.♖e1 h4  
21.a5**

Since the black counterplay on the king-side is in the meantime still harmless, Tseitlin continues with his plan.

**21...hxg3 22.hxg3**

The threat is 23.axb6 and then ♖a3-a7+.

**22...♗c8**

So, as a precaution, the king leaves the b8-square.

**23.axb6**

White decides against the 'potential passed pawn' (a5-a6) and in favour of opening the a-file, because this promises him a direct attack.

**23...axb6 24.♖a7**

This threatens 25.e5. Moreover, 24.♖a3 ♖d7 25.♖a7 ♗d8 26.♖ed1!+- was also very strong.

**24...e5 25.♖ea1 ♖h6 26.♗f3  
♖dh8**

And now the decisive moment:

**27.♖xb7! ♗xb7**

27...♖xb7 28.♗xe5 ♖f8 29.♗c6+-.

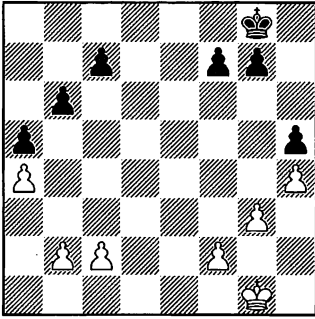
**28.♖a2 ♗c8+-**

(28...♖b8 29.♗xe5!+-), and the quickest win now was 29.♗g4+ ♗d8 30. ♖d1+ ♗e7 31.♖d7+ ♖xd7 32.♗xd7 ♗xd7 33.♗xe5+-.

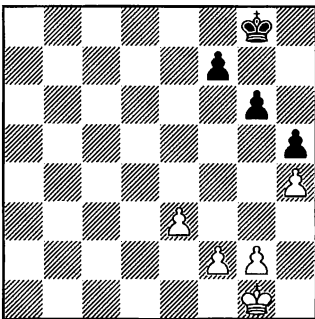
## Technique No. 16

# The wave-breaker is set up

What we are describing as the ‘wave-breaker’ is the pawn formation f2-g3-h4 (or f7-g6-h5) and a4-b3-c2:



The wave-breaker a5-b6-c7, f2-g3-h4



Wave-breaker f7-g6-h5

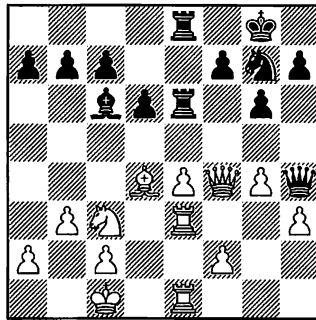
Setting up a ‘wave-breaker’ is an important prophylactic defensive method against the creation of a ‘potential passed pawn’ or an unfavourable line opening. In addition, it also prevents the opponent from gaining space on the fifth rank by an advance of his pawns.

If the attacking side nevertheless manages to break up the formation (e.g. f2-f3, g2-g4), one can at least swap off the h-pawn,

thus simplifying the position and preventing for example the formation of a weak h-pawn (as for instance in *Example 16.5*).

### ► 16.1 Alekhine–Brinckmann

Kecskemet 1927



White plans to start a dangerous attack by means of ♖f4-h2 and then f2-f4-f5.

#### 22...a5

Hoping to achieve counter-chances by ...b7-b5-b4. The immediate 22...b5 would fail to the simple 23.♙xa7, e.g. 23...b4 24.♘d5 ♖a8 25.♙d4 ♙xd5 26. exd5 ♜xe3 27.♙xe3 ♜xa2 28.♖xb4+-.

#### 23.a4!

The wave-breaker c2-b3-a4 is preventing any black activity on the queenside. Now Black has absolutely no counterplay and simply has to await his execution. But he does not have to wait very long:

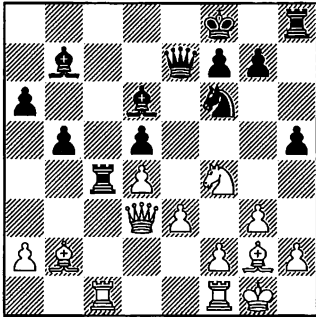
23...b6 24.♙b2 ♜8e7 25.♖h2!  
♙e8 26.f4 ♘f6 27.f5! ♜xe4

27...♘xg4 28.♖f4+-.

28.♘xe4 ♘xe4 29.♖f4 g5  
30.♖f1 d5 31.c4! ♖h6 32.f6 ♜e8  
33.cxd5 ♙xd5 34.♖f5 1-0

► **16.2 Kotov–Botvinnik**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1944



Here White should have set up the wave-breaker with **23.h4!** in order to prevent ...h5-h4. Instead, he played

**23.♖d1?**,

and after

**23...h4! 24.♗f3 ♔g8 25.♞fd1**

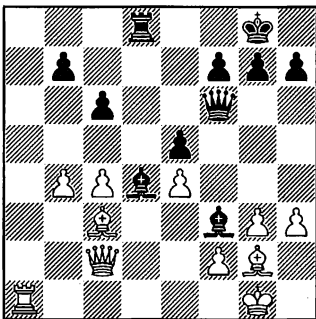
**♜e4 26.♝d3 ♞h6! 27.♚e2 hxg3**

**28.hxg3 ♚g5**

Black obtained a strong attack.

► **16.3 Taimanov–Timman**

Wijk aan Zee 1981



**21...h5!**

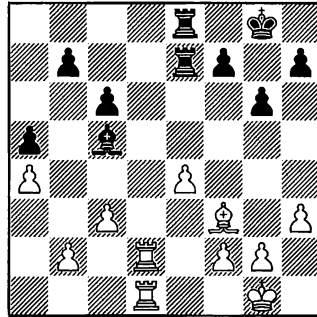
Intending to weaken the opposing kingside by ...h5-h4.

**22.h4!**

But White immediately installs the wave-breaker to prevent it and keeps the position more or less level.

► **16.4 Shereshevsky–Loginov**

USSR 1984



**26...h5! 27.g3?!**

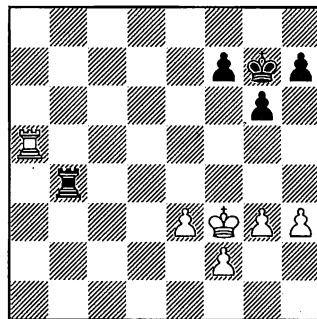
A first inaccuracy – White allows further black expansion on the kingside. The correct move was **27.h4!** (wave-breaker)  $\Delta g2-g3, \textcircled{f}f3-g2, \textcircled{g}g1-f1, f2-f4, e4-e5$  with good chances of success.

**27...g5! 28.♙g2 g4! 29.h4 ♞e5,**

and now converting his extra pawn is actually problematic for White.

► **16.5 Capablanca–Yates**

Hastings 1930/31



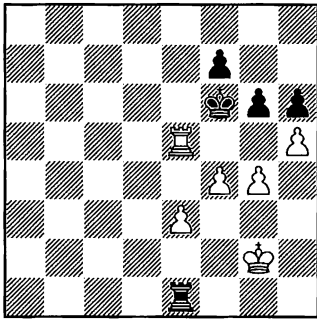
It is sufficiently well-known that Black can hold such a position. Nevertheless, there are things White can try and the more he cramps his opponent on the kingside the greater his prospects of success become. For example, if it were his move White would immediately play

g3-g4, so that he could later extend his advantage in space by f2-f4 and h3-h4.

For that reason it would now be an extremely good idea for Black to set up the wave-breaker with **39...h5!**. Should White then play g3-g4 anyway, it would amount to an exchange of pawns without Black incurring structural weaknesses – another step in the direction of the draw.

Instead of that Yates made an indifferent move:

**39...♖c4?! 40.g4! h6 41.♔g3 ♜c1  
42.♔g2 ♜c4 43.♞d5 ♜a4 44.f4  
♜a2+ 45.♔g3 ♜e2 46.♞e5 ♜e1  
47.♔f2 ♜h1 48.♔g2 ♜e1 49.h4  
♔f6 50.h5**

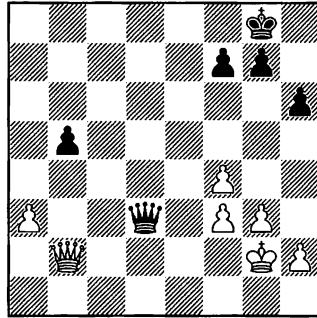


Black's position is now really unpleasant. Although it is still 'theoretically' drawn,

Yates was not up to the difficult defensive task.

## ► 16.6 Smejkal–Timman

Moscow 1981



In the event of **47...h5!** and then ...g7-g6 a draw would be the most probable result.

Instead of that

**47...f6?**

was played and after

**48.g4!**

the construction of the 'wave-breaker' g6-h5 was no longer possible. As the game continued, White restricted his opponent even more with h2-h4, finally got in g4-g5 in favourable circumstances and won the game.

## Chapter V

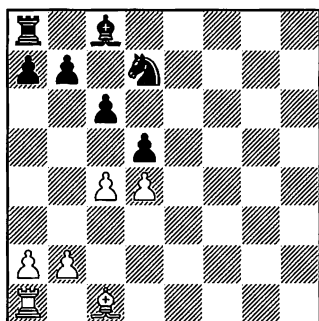
# Techniques in the fight for an open file

### Technique No. 17

## Rubinstein's Exchange: ♖bd7 – the sign for cxd5

In the present section we will be dealing with the occupation of the c-file.

Consider the following schematic diagram:



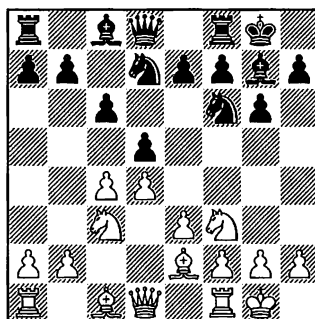
In this sort of constellation White has good prospects of quickly seizing the c-file after the exchange of pawns on d5. If the black knight were still on b8, then in the event of c4xd5 c6xd5 it could go to c6 and thus constitute a barrier on the c-file.

### ► 17.1 Rubinstein–Bogoljubow

Vienna 1922

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.e3 ♘f6 4.♗c3 g6 5.♗f3 ♙g7 6.♙e2 0-0 7.0-0 ♗bd7?!**

Nowadays the most frequent move here is **7... ♙g4**. After **7... ♗bd7?!** White gets a considerable initiative on the queenside:



### 8.cxd5!

The development of the knight to d7 is for Rubinstein the sign to play for the opening and then the conquering of the c-file:

### 8... ♗xd5

For **8...cxd5 9.♖b3** see the next game 17.2.

### 9.♗xd5

There was a good alternative in **9.e4**.

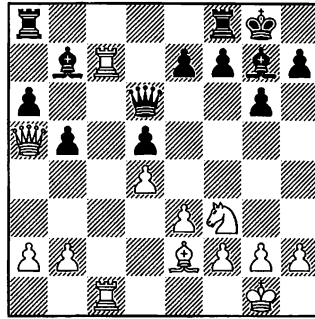
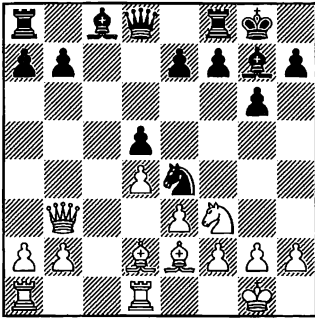
### 9...cxd5 10.♖b3 ♗f6

**10... ♗b8** intending, by means of **11... ♗c6**, to set up a barrier on the c-file, can be met with **11.♗e5!**, e.g. **11... ♗c6 12.♗xc6 bxc6 13.♙d2± Δ♙a(f)c1**.

### 11.♙d2 ♗e4 12.♖fd1

(see diagram next page)

An interesting idea. If Black now exchanges on d2, White recaptures with the rook and thus gains time for the occupation of the c-file (♙a1-c1, ♖d2-c2). If Black leaves the ♙d2 alive, the latter can go to e1 – there it does not disrupt the link



between the rooks and it can later become active again ⇒ *Technique No. 34*. But the more aggressive **12. ♟b4!**? Δ♞fc1, as played in the game Larsen-Blau, Zürich 1959, would be even stronger.

**12...♞xd2**

It was worth considering **12...♟g4!**? intending ...♞d7, ...♞fc8.

**13.♞xd2 ♞d6**

Worth considering was **13...b6 14.♞c1 ♟f5!**?, e.g. **15.♟d3** (15.♟a6 ♞d6±) 15...♟xd3 16.♞xd3 ♞c8 17.♞dc3 ♞d7 18.♞c2 ♞xc3 19.♞xc3 e6 – Black has exchanged his bad bishop, and although White is obviously better, it is questionable whether his advantage is sufficient for a win.

**14.♞c1 b6**

14...♞b8!? Δ...♟d7.

**15.♞dc2 ♟b7 16.♞a4!**

This ties the ♞a8 to the defence of the ♟a7, and at the same time Black must now bear in mind the idea of ♟e2-a6 – after the exchange of bishops on a6 the c8-square would no longer be accessible to the black rooks in the long run.

**16...a6**

Black frees his rook from the obligation of defending the a-pawn, but now new weaknesses appear in his camp.

The alternative **16...a5 17.♟b5 ♞fc8 18.♟c6!±** was unpleasant enough, but nevertheless perhaps the lesser evil.

**17.♞c7 b5 18.♞a5**

**18...♞ab8 19.♞1c5 ♞fd8?**

This loses practically by force.

A more resilient try was **19...♟f6 20.♞c3 e6 21.♞e5!±**.

**20.♞e5!**

This threatens the deadly 21.♞c6.

**20...♟f6**

20...♟xe5 21.dxe5 ♞xe5 22.♞xb7+–.

**21.♞c6 e6**

21...♟xc6 22.♞5xc6 with a winning position.

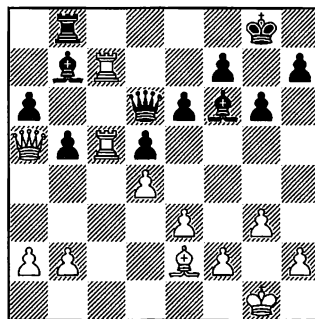
**22.g3**

**22.♞xb8** was also good enough: 22...♞xb8 23.♟xb5! ♟d8 (23...axb5 24.♞xb5+–) 24.♟d3, and White retains an extra pawn with a better position.

**22...♞dc8**

Nor could the bishops of opposite colours after **22...♟xc6 23.♞5xc6 ♞f8 24.♞xa6** save Black – White is threatening both to win the ♟b5 and also to occupy the seventh rank with ♞aa7.

**23.♞xb8 ♞xb8**



24. ♖xb5! ♕d8

24...axb5 25. ♖xb5+-.

25. ♕e8

25. ♕e2 was also good enough.

25... ♖f8

After 25... ♕xc7 26. ♖xc7 (26. ♖xc7 is weaker: 26... ♖xc7 27. ♖xc7 ♖xe8 28. ♖xb7 ♖c8) 26... ♖xe8 27. ♖xb7 Black would also be lost in the long run.

26. ♖xb7! ♕xa5 27. ♖xb8 ♖d6 28. ♖b7 ♕b6 29. ♖c6 ♖b4 30. ♕xf7+ 1-0

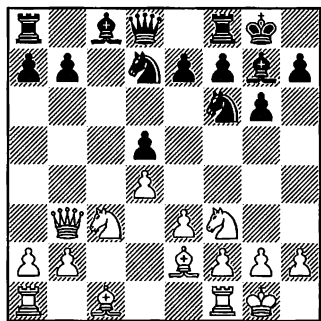
### ► 17.2 A. Terekhin–Shulanov

USSR 1990

1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.e3 ♘f6 4.♗c3 g6 5.♘f3 ♕g7 6.♕e2 0-0 7.0-0 ♘bd7 8.cxd5! cxd5

The difference with the previous example is that here Black immediately recaptures with the pawn.

9. ♖b3



9...e6

After 9... ♘b6 the move 10.a4!? (♗a4-a5) was unpleasant. But here a very typical idea which is worth considering is 9... ♘b8!?, so as to close the c-file with ... ♘c6.

10. ♕d2 ♘e4 11. ♖fd1

White pursues the plan known from the above game. If Black does not now take on d2, there follows ♕e1 and then ♖ac1.

11... ♘xd2 12. ♖xd2

Now White is threatening a quick doubling of his rooks on the c-file.

12... ♘f6?!

12... ♘b8!? ♗... ♘c6 was still worth consideration.

13. ♖c1 ♘e4 14. ♖dc2 b6 15. ♘xe4 dxe4 16. ♘d2 ♕b7 17. ♖c7 ♕d5 18. ♖a3?!

A stronger move was 18. ♖c3! (18... ♕xa2? 19.b3).

18... ♖e8?

After 18...a5 the pressure is maintained by 19. ♕b5 (later b6 could become weak), but 18...e5! promised good counterplay.

19. ♖xa7 ♕f8 20. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 21. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 22.a3±

The bishop pair does not represent quite enough compensation for the missing pawn.

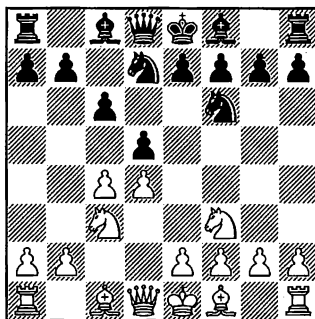
### ► 17.3 Taimanov–Terpugov

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1951

1. ♘f3 d5 2.c4 c6 3.d4 ♘f6 4.♗c3 ♘bd7?!

A dubious decision. If Black does not want to enter the variation 4...dxc4, but is aiming for the set-up with ...e7-e6, ... ♘bd7, he generally plays 4...e6 first and only then ... ♘bd7.

But is this only a transposition of moves? In no way!



**5.cxd5!**

Now there is not the option of ...e6xd5, and Black has to accept the opening of the c-file.

**5...cxd5 6.♖f4 e6 7.e3**

Were Black's queen's knight on c6, we would have a well-known position from the Exchange Slav – 1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.cxd5 cxd5 4.♖f3 ♖f6 5.♗c3 ♗c6 6.♖f4 e6 7.e3 – in which White has at best only a minimal advantage.

But in the present case the knight is not on c6, but on d7, which considerably increases White's chances of successfully dominating the c-file. Compare also with the following *Example 17.4*.

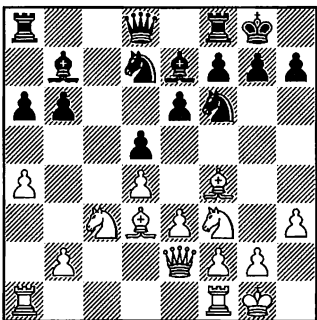
**7...♗e7 8.h3 a6 9.a4**

Directed against ...b7-b5. In the analogous position with the knight on c6 instead of d7, a2-a4 would hardly come into question considering the possibility of ...♗b4.

**9...0-0 10.♗d3 b6**

After 10...♗h5 11.♗h2 f5 12.0-0 ♗hf6 13.♖c2 ♗e4 14.♖fc1 White's pressure down the c-file would be very unpleasant.

**11.0-0 ♗b7 12.♖e2!**



The queen too has its eye on a6. Black must now either leave the ♖a8 where it is, which is a handicap in view of the upcoming battle for the c-file, or play ...a6-a5, which allows his opponent the dangerous option of ♗c3-b5.

**12...♗e4 13.♖fc1 f5 14.♗a2**

14.♗d1!? g5 15.♗c7 ♖e8 16.♗e5 ♗xe5 17.♗xe5 ♗d6 18.♗xd6 ♗xd6 19.a5 with an initiative on the queenside.

**14...g5 15.♗c7 ♖e8 16.♗e5**

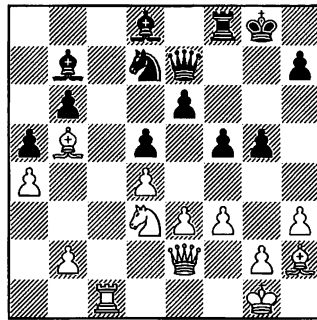
**♗xe5 17.♗xe5 ♗d6?**

The bishop is protecting the invasion square c7, but disrupting the link between the rooks. The correct move was 17...♗d6 18.♗xd6 ♗xd6±.

**18.f3 ♗f6 19.♗b4 a5 20.♗b5**

**♗d7 21.♗d3 ♖e7 22.♗h2 ♖c8**

**23.♖xc8 ♗xc8 24.♖c1 ♗b7**



**25.♗e5 ♗xe5 26.♗xe5± f4?!**

This attempt to obtain some activity just creates new weaknesses in his own camp.

**27.♖d2 fxe3 28.♖xe3 ♖f7 29.♖c3**

**♖b4 30.b3 ♖f5?**

The final error – Black gives up the control of the important invasion square c7.

**31.♗c7 ♗f6 32.♗xb6,**

and White won in a few moves.

As supplementary material we give the following game with brief comments:

► **17.4 Geller–Pfeiffer**

Oberhausen (European Team Ch) 1961

**1.♗f3 d5 2.c4 c6 3.d4 ♗f6 4.♗c3**

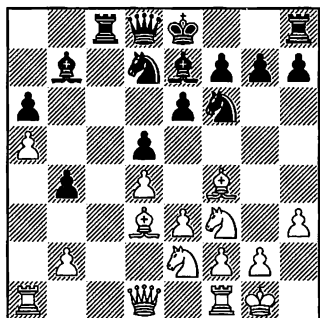
**♗bd7 5.cxd5 cxd5 6.♖f4 e6 7.e3**

So far we are following the previous game.

7...a6 8.♔d3 ♕e7 9.h3

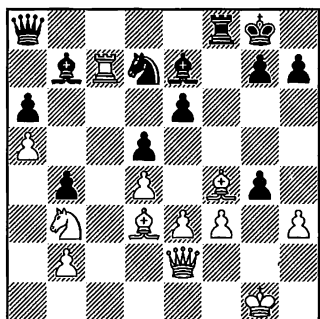
9.a4 (to prevent ...b7-b5) could have led back to the previous game Taimanov–Terpugov.

9...b5 10.0-0 ♕b7 11.a4 b4  
12.♖e2 ♜c8 13.a5!



This fixes the a6-pawn.

13...0-0 14.♖c1 ♖e4 15.♜e2  
♜c6 16.♗b3 ♜a8 17.♗e5 ♗xe5  
18.♕xe5 f6 19.♕f4 f5?! 20.f3  
♗f6 21.g4! ♗d7? 22.♜fc1 ♜xc1+  
23.♜xc1 fxg4 24.♜c7!



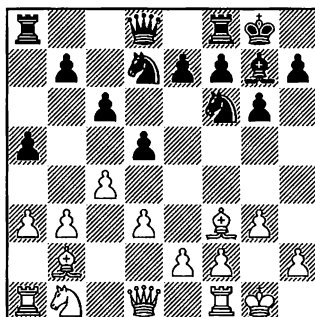
This crowns White's strategy – the appearance of the rook on c7 makes the black position hopeless.

24...gxf3 25.♜xf3 ♕c8 26.♜h5  
♗f6 27.♕xh7+! ♗h8 28.♜h4  
♕d8 29.♜xg7! ♗xg7 30.♜h6+  
♗f7 31.♕d6 ♜g8+ 32.♕xg8+  
♗xg8 33.♜f8+ ♗h7 34.♜xd8

White won after four more moves.

## ► 17.5 Karlsson–Hebert

Thessaloniki (Olympiad) 1984



10...♗bd7 has just been played, and the Rubinstein exchange followed hard on its heels.

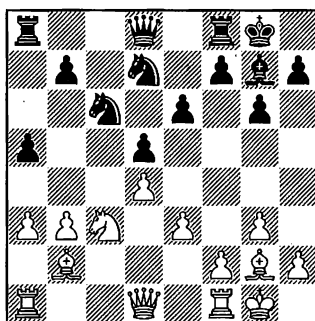
11.cxd5!? cxd5 12.♖c3

White is planning to double rooks on the c-file after ♖b5 (or ♖a4), ♜d1-d2, ♜a(f)1-c1 (in whatever order) and in doing so seize the only open file for himself.

12...♗e5! 13.♕g2 ♖c6!

Hebert finds a way to make his opponent's plan more difficult – the knight goes to c6 and bodily closes the c-file.

14.d4 e6 15.e3 ♗d7



16.♞e1!

In order, by means of ♕g2-f1, to include the king's bishop in the play on the queenside.

16...♞e8 17.♕f1 ♗b6 18.♜c1 ♞e7

18... ♖e7!? and then ... ♜ec8 appears stronger – it would then be very difficult for White to get something tangible.

19. ♘b5 a4

The pawn can become weak here.

20. b4 ♘a7?!

Why does Black voluntarily remove his barrier on the c-file – the ♘c6?

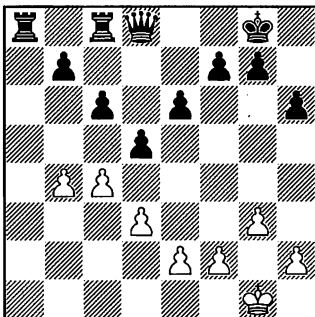
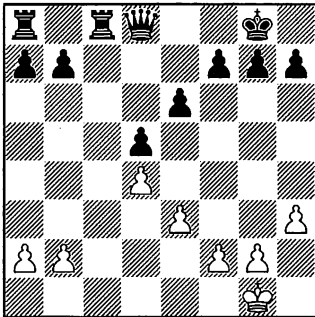
21. ♘xa7 ♜xa7 22. ♙b5 ♜c7  
23. ♜xc7 ♖xc7 24. ♜e2

In view of the subsequent ♜c2, ♖c1 as well as the weakness of the ♘a4 the white initiative on the queenside is very unpleasant. In the further course of the game Black did not manage to neutralise his opponent's activity.

## Technique No. 18

# Queen behind the rooks – Smyslov's formation

This technique is concerned with the fact that in the struggle for an open queenside file the following major piece formation is often very useful:



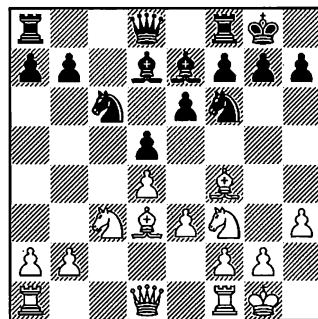
One rook is on the open file, the other two major pieces are protecting it. The

queen is not stopping the linking of the rooks and after the exchange of the first one it supports its colleague which immediately re-occupies the open file.

Knowledge of this technique is valuable both in the struggle for the c-file and also for the a-file. Let us start with a few examples involving the c-file:

### ► 18.1 Botvinnik–Smyslov

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1952



Being the only open file, the c-file is of course of great significance. For that reason 10... ♜c8 seems appropriate. But Smyslov handles this position differently:

10... ♖b6!?

A very interesting positional idea. It is not the ♖a8 but the king's rook which will come to c8 and the queen is clearing the way for that. After that it will return to d8 so as to protect the c8-square one more time (and, in addition, not to block the advance ...b7-b5).

But what advantages has the set-up with ♖a8/♖c8/♚d8 compared to ♖c8/♚d8/♖f8? The following aspects have their part to play here:

- If it comes to an exchange of rooks on the c-file, it is important for Black that his second rook is able to appear on that file straight away, but that is not possible with the ♖c8/♚d8/♖f8 set-up.
- In the event of ♘f3-e5xc6, ...♖c8xc6 or ♘f3-e5, ...♘c6xe5, ♙f4xe5 (or d4xe5) Black wants to be able to double his rooks as quickly as possible on the c-file.
- Black also intends to play ...♙d7-e8 (we shall soon tell you the reasons for that), but with a rook on f8 the bishop would break the communication between the rooks.

An instructive example with 10...♖c8 is the game E.Vladimirov-Kudriashov, Riga 1975. It continued 11.♖c1 ♘a5 12.♚e2 a6 13.♘e5 ♙e8 14.♖c2 b5 15.♖fc1 ♗h8 16.♘b1 ♖xc2 17.♚xc2 ♘c4 18.b3 ♘xe5 19.♙xe5 – White won the c-file and soon won the game.

**11.♚e2 ♖fc8 12.♖c1 ♙e8!**

Cf. also ⇨ *Technique No. 34.*

As a precaution the bishop avoids the attack with ♘f3-e5, but there is more to it than that. It is very important that Black can now play ...♘f6-d7, strengthening his control over the e5-square, after which the idea of ...f7-f6, ...♙e8-f7 and then ...e6-e5 enters the realms of the possible.

Nor should the defensive idea of ...♘d7-f8 be forgotten (from there the knight protects h7, without itself being open to attack) nor the manoeuvre ...♘d7-b6. And finally the bishop is closer to its monarch, which can be important in the event of aggression by the opponent on the kingside.

**13.♖fd1**

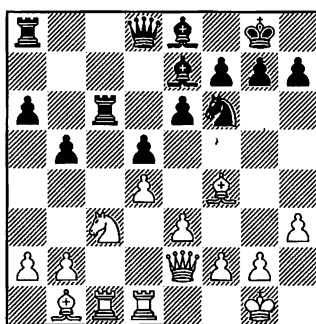
A plausible plan for White is the central advance e3-e4. For that White needs his rook on d1, to overprotect the ♖d4. Consider, e.g., the following game by Smyslov: 13.♙g5 h6 14.♙h4 ♚d8 15.♙b1 ♘d7 16.♙xe7 ♚xe7 17.♘d2 f6 18.f4 ♙f7 19.♘f3 ♘f8 20.♚f2 ♘a5 21.e4 dxe4 22.♘xe4 ♖xc1 23.♖xc1 ♚d8 24.♚d2 ½-½, Antoshin-Smyslov, Moscow 1963.

**13...♚d8! 14.♙b1 a6 15.♘e5 b5**

According to Botvinnik firstly 15...♘a5! and only then ...b7-b5 came into consideration.

**16.♘xc6 ♖xc6**

This threatens 17...b4 18.♘a4 ♖xc1 19.♖xc1 ♙xa4.



Black was the first to occupy the c-file and thus achieve safe equality.

**17.♚e1**

To be able to meet 17...b4 with 18.♘e2.

**17...♖ac8 18.♘e2 ♘e4 19.♖xc6 ♖xc6 20.♘c1=.**

20...♖d6 21.♘d3 ♘c4 22.♚e2 f6  
23.♙g3 ♙g6 24.f3 ♚b6 25.♙f2

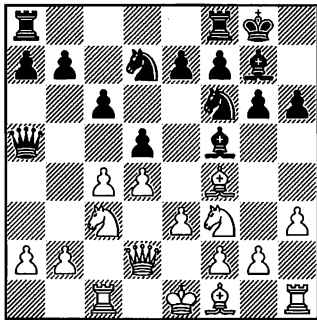
♠26.e4.

25...♙xd3! 26.♙xd3 ♚c7 27.e4  
♘b6

The situation has taken on a somewhat combative complexion but it is still really level. The active black position on the queenside acts as a counterweight to the white bishop pair and advantage in space in the centre.

### ► 18.2 Gligoric–Bertok

Titograd (Yugoslavian Ch) 1965



12.cxd5!?

The Rubinstein exchange, do you remember it?

White hopes that after the opening of the c-file he will develop a dangerous initiative on the queenside.

12...cxd5 13.♙e2 ♜fc8!

The Smyslov set-up helps Black to claim the c-file and to hold in check the white queenside initiative.

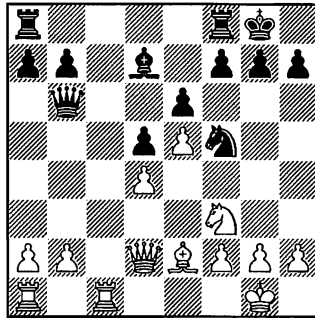
14.0-0 a6 15.a3 ♚d8 16.♜fd1  
♘e4! 17.♘xe4 ♙xe4 18.♚b4 g5  
19.♙g3 ♜xc1 20.♜xc1 ♜c8

Black has managed to swap off all the rooks, after which White has no advantage worthy of the name.

21.♜c3 ♜xc3 22.♚xc3 ♘f6,  
and the game ended in a draw.

### ► 18.3 Antoshin–Averbakh

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955



Thanks to his advantage in space White is slightly more active, but if Black manages to exchange all the rooks on the c-file without that file finishing by falling into the hands of the white queen he will be out of danger.

15...♜fc8! 16.♙d3 ♚d8! 17.♙xf5  
exf5 18.♜xc8 ♜xc8 19.♜c1 h6  
20.♜c5 ♙e6 21.h4 b6 22.♜xc8

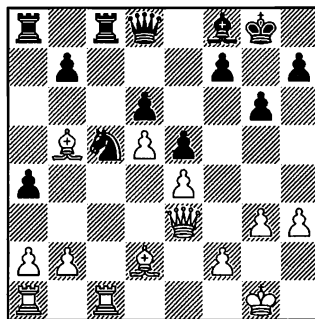
After 22.♜c1 Black can claim by 22...  
♜c7! Δ...♚c8 control of the open file.

22...♚xc8 23.♘e1 ♙d7 24.b3 1/2-1/2

The following example leads by means of the Smyslov formation to the secondary theme ‘the struggle for the a-file’:

### ► 18.4 Glyanets–Tobyas

Prague 1989



Here Black has already completed the Smyslov set-up. Should the game now continue – as it in fact did – b2-b4 followed by an exchange on b3, he is prepared for the battle for the a- as well as for the c-file. Nevertheless, White is better on account of the bishop pair and the passive ♕f8, but the disadvantage is bearable.

**25.b4 axb3 26.axb3 ♖xa1 27. ♖xa1 ♖a8**

Without the Smyslov set-up, this option would not be available to Black.

**28.♖b1?!**

He would have more chances after **28.♖xa8 ♜xa8 29.b4**, e.g. 29...♜a1+ 30.♞h2 ♜b1 31.♙c3 f6 (31...♞xe4? 32.♙d3) 32.♙e2, and White would retain a certain advantage.

**28...f5!?**

28...♖a2!?

**29.exf5 gxf5 30.b4**

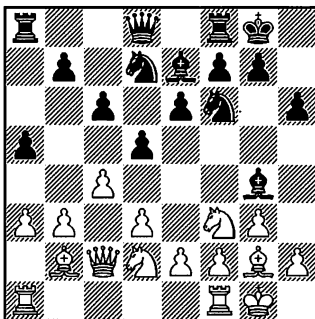
30.♜f3 ♜f6∞.

**30...♞e4 31.♙e1 ♜f6**

A position with chances for both sides. A major role is played by the fact that Black – thanks to the Smyslov set-up! – is in complete control of the a-file.

### ► 18.5 Bilek–Geller

Sousse (Interzonal tournament) 1967



White plans ♙b2-c3 and then b3-b4, so as to force the opening of the a-file after

...axb4 (the moves ...a5-a4 or ...b7-b6 would result in pawn weaknesses) and to go on to take possession of the said file. With the black queen on d8, then ♖xa8 ♜xa8, ♖f1-a1 could be played, whilst with the queen on c7 or b6 doubling with ♖a2 and then ♖fa1 is an option. But Geller finds a way to thwart his opponent's intentions.

**11...♜b6! 12.♙c3 ♜fc8! 13.♖fe1 ♜d8!**

Once again, the Smyslov set-up!

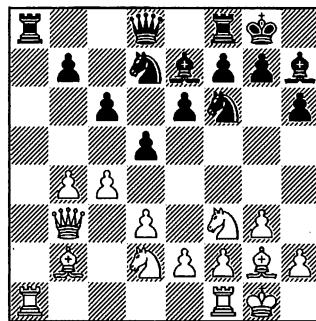
Now Black's idea becomes clear – the rooks are sent into battle for the file whilst the queen remains occupied in the background. Thanks to Geller's wise foresight, White can no longer conquer the a-file after b3-b4: **14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 ♖xa1 16.♖xa1 ♖a8=** and if 17.♖a4, then 17...b5! 18.♖xa8 ♜xa8.

**14.e4 ♜f8= 15.a4 dxe4 16.♞xe4 ♞xe4 17.♖xe4 ♙f5 18.♞e3 ♙f6 19. ♜b2 ♙xc3 20.♜xc3 ♞c5 21.♞e5**

Here a draw was agreed.

### ► 18.6 Panno–Karpov

Madrid 1973



This example is very similar to the previous one. But here the a-file has already been opened and White is hoping to occupy it. Were it his move he would of course exchange on a8 followed by ♖f1-

a1. But here too the Smyslov set-up comes to Black's help.

13... ♖b6! 14. ♖c3 ♜fc8! 15. ♖b2  
♙f8 16. h3 ♗d8=

Now all three of Black's major pieces are taking part in the struggle for the a-file, with the queen behind the rooks. There is nothing much White can do:

17. ♖a5 ♖xa5 18. bxa5 b6 19. axb6  
♗xb6 20. ♖a1 ♗xb2 21. ♙xb2  
♙b4 22. cxd5 cxd5 23. ♜c1 1/2-1/2

Here White makes use of the Smyslov set-up to transpose to a better endgame:

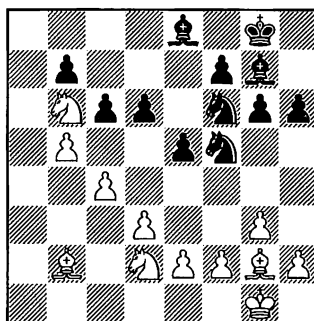
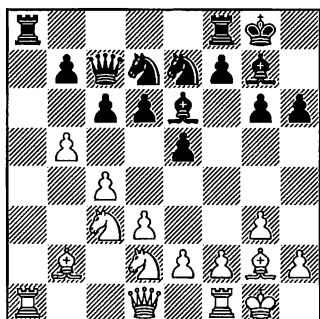
16. ♗c2! ♘f5 17. ♜fc1 ♘f6 18. ♗d1  
♗d7 19. ♖xa8! ♖xa8 20. ♖a1 ♗c8

20... ♖xa1 is of course followed by 21. ♗xa1 with an initiative for White – that is exactly why the queen returned to d1 on move 18.

21. ♖xa8! ♗xa8 22. ♗a4! ♗xa4  
23. ♘xa4 ♙d7 24. ♘b6 ♙e8

### ► 18.7 Andersson–Gulko

Biel (Interzonal tournament) 1976



25. bxc6 ♙xc6

Or 25... bxc6 26. c5!±.

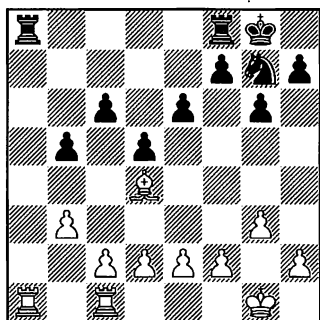
26. ♘b3

△ ♘a5±.

## Technique No. 19

# Karpov's file-blocking

Consider the following position:



The significance of the a-file as the only open file is obvious here:

1. ♙a7!

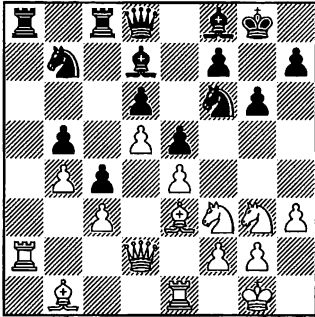
Blocking the file in order to double the rooks behind the bishop. After that the bishop returns.

1... ♘f5 2. ♖a6 ♜fc8 3. ♖ca1 e5  
4. ♙c5±

White has won the a-file.

► **19.1 Karpov–Unzicker**

Nice (Olympiad) 1974



Black's position is rather passive, but he is hoping to be able to win the a-file by means of the *Smyslov formation*. Thus if it were Black to move, he could play for example ...♖a8xa2 followed by ...♜c8-a8.

**24. ♖a7!**

After this it suddenly turns out that the only person who can occupy the a-file is White, and specifically by the regrouping ♖c2, ♜ea1, ♙d1, ♙e3.

**24... ♙e8 25. ♖c2 ♘c7 26. ♜ea1 ♚e7 27. ♙b1 ♙e8 28. ♘e2!**

The ♘c7 is overprotecting the a8-square, which in the event of **28. ♙e3 ♜xa2 29. ♚xa2** would make it possible for Black to play **29... ♜a8**. But, on the other hand, the knight is very passive just like its colleague on b7. For that reason Karpov maintains the tension on the a-file and begins to play actively on the kingside – his idea being f2-f4. His calculation is that Black will be in no position to defend both flanks simultaneously.

**28... ♘d8 29. ♘h2! ♙g7 30. f4! f6**

After **30... exf4 31. ♘xf4±** the d4-square would fall into White's hands, moreover **31... ♙h6?** fails to **32. ♘xg6!**

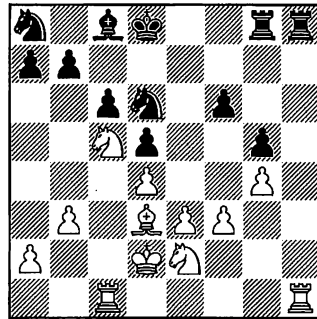
**31. f5 g5 32. ♖c2!**

Karpov is further planning ♘g3 and then ♖c2-d1-h5.

White has a big positional advantage, which the forthcoming world champion convincingly turned into a victory.

► **19.2 Kasparov–Karpov**

Moscow (21st WCh game) 1985



**27. ♙h7!**

Intending to double rooks on the h-file behind the shelter of this bishop.

**27... ♙f8 28. ♜h6 ♘c7 29. ♘g3 ♘f7!**

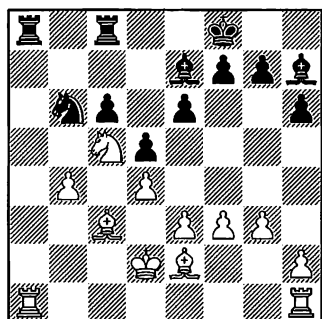
Thanks to this move – the knight protects the h8-square – Black does not lose the struggle for the h-file.

We already saw the same idea in a mirror image (it was about the a-file) in the example Karpov–Unzicker. In the present game Black had more luck and held his position, because here White could not conjure up a dangerous attack on the other wing.

**30. ♜h2 ♘e6 31. ♘d3 ♘g7 32. ♜ch1 ♚e7 33. ♘f2 ♜d8 34. ♙f5 ♜xh2 35. ♜xh2 ♘xf5 36. gxf5 ♜h8 37. ♜xh8 ♘xh8 38. e4 ♘f7**

The slight advantage in space was not enough to give White a win.

► **19.3 Tu Hoang Thong–Komliakov**  
Moscow (Olympiad) 1994



24.♙a6! ♖c7 25.♞a5 ♜c7 26.  
♞ha1 ♚e8 27.♚e2

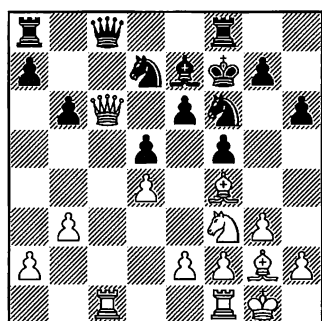
In order to threaten 28.♙b7, the king avoids the knight check ...♞c4+. But 27. ♙b5! was stronger: 27...♞xa5 28.♙xc6+ ♚d8 29.bxa5 ♞c4+ 30.♚e2 ♞a7 31.a6+-.

27...♞b8 28.♙b5!± ♞xa5?

28...♞c7 was required.

29.♙xc6+ ♚d8 30.♞xa5,  
and White won.

► **19.4 A.Terekhin–Shein**  
USSR 1990



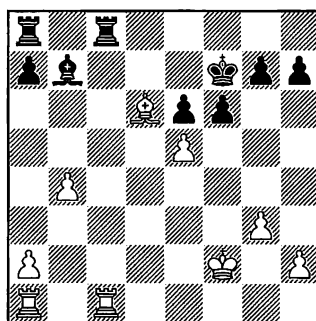
15.♙c7!±

The threat is ♞c2, ♞fc1 followed by the removal of the ♙c7, after which White conquers the c-file.

Now 15...♞e8? fails to 16.♚xd7!+-,  
whilst 15...♚a6 (15...♙d8 16.♙xd8±)

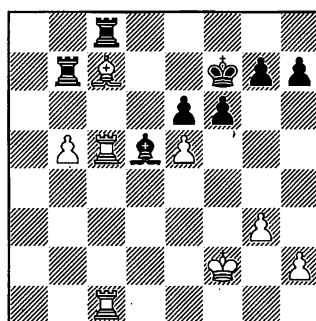
is very strongly met by 16.♞c3 with the threat of 17.♞e3.

► **19.5 Pergericht–Schinis**  
Haifa (European Team Ch) 1989



White intends to create a passed pawn on the queenside, but in view of the bishops of opposite colours this plan can only be dangerous if at least one pair of rooks remains on the board – this means that White must avoid a general exchange on the c-file:

26.♙c7! ♙d5 27.a4 a6 28.♞c5 ♞a7  
29.♞ac1 ♞b7 30.b5 axb5 31.axb5



31...♙g6 32.b6 fxe5 33.♞a1  
♞f8+ 34.♚e2 e4 35.♞a4 ♞f3  
36.♞ca5 ♞c3 37.h3 h5 38.h4 ♙f6  
39.♞a3 ♞xa3 40.♞xa3

On account of the unfortunate position of his rook and White's strong passed pawn Black was unable to save the game.

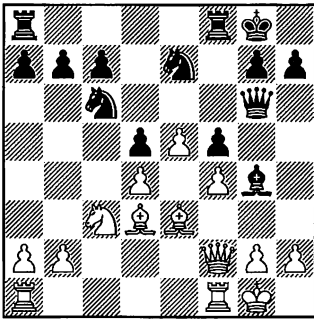
## Technique No. 20

# Brute force: Blackburne's battering ram

Sometimes it makes sense to post all three major pieces on an open (or semi-open) file – thus setting up a sort of 'battering ram'.

### ► 20.1 Blackburne–Rosenthal

Paris 1878



16. ♖a1 a6 17. ♗a4

△ ♗c5.

17...b6

This deprives the opposing knight of the c5-square, but it weakens the position of the ♗c6, the only barrier against White's major pieces on the c-file.

18. ♖c3 ♖e8 19. b3 ♖d7 20. ♖fc1

So as to play 21. ♖c2 to drive away the ♗c6 and to gain access to the ♖c7. But there is yet another threat – 21. ♖f1!

20...♗h5

To overprotect the ♗c6 with ...♗e8.

21. ♖f1 ♖a7

21...b5 22. ♗c5 would be out of the question.

22.a3

22. ♗xa6 ♗b4 23. ♗e2± is simpler – but then the game would not have been so instructive for our purposes.

22...♗b8

Black does not want to offer the ♖a6 again. He is now hoping, after ...♖d8 (to overprotect the ♖b6) and ...c7-c6, to be able to construct a fortress on the queenside.

23. ♖1c2!

Blackburne brings all three major pieces on to the c-file – and the rooks belong in front of the queen.

23...♖d8 24. ♖c1 c6 25. ♗f2!

△ ♗h4.

25...♗c8 26. ♗f1

White starts a further regrouping – he is planning to increase his pressure on c6 by ♗b2-d3-b4.

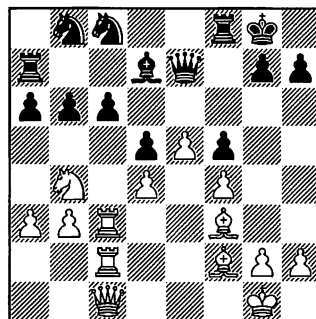
26...♗f7

Now, as on the three previous moves, Black wants to take control of the b4-square by ...a6-a5, after which White would have to abandon his knight manoeuvre and look around for another plan. But perhaps Black believed that, if the knight popped up on b4, he could then still drive it away with ...a6-a5.

27. ♗b2 ♗e6, 28. ♗d3 ♖e8 29. ♗e2 ♖e7

29...a5!?, as on the two previous moves.

30. ♗b4 ♗d7 31. ♗f3



Suddenly it can be seen that thanks to his battering ram White has strong tactical threats on the c-file and that Black therefore has no further opportunity for ...a6-a5, e.g. **31...a5 32.♖xd5!** cxd5 **33.♙xd5+ ♖h8 34.e6 ♙xe6 35.♙xe6 ♖xe6 36.♞xc8+-.**

**31...♖f7 32.♙h4 ♖e7 33.♞e2 ♖e6 33...a5** once more does not work: **34.e6!** ♙xe6 **35.♖xc6 ♖exc6 36.♞xc6 ♖xc6 37.♖xc6 ♞e8 (37...♙d7 38.♖d6+-) 38.♙xd5+-.**

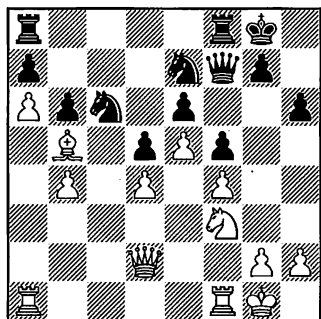
**34.♙xe7! ♖xe7 35.e6! ♙e8 35...♙xe6 36.♖xc6+-.**  
**36.♙xd5 cxd5 37.♖xd5 ♖d6 38.e7 ♖c6**  
**38...♖xd5 39.exf8♖+ ♖xf8 40.♞c8+-.**  
**38...♞f7 39.♞c8+-.**

**39.exf8♖+ ♖xf8 40.♖e3?!**  
**40.♖e3+-** was much stronger here, or **40.♖xb6 ♖xd4+ 41.♖e3+-.**

**40...♖xd4 41.♞d2 ♖xf4 42.♖f1 ♖e5?! 43.♞cd3,**  
 and White won.

## ► 20.2 Alekhine–Nimzowitsch

San Remo 1930



In view of his great advantage in space White is clearly better. Now he starts to conquer the c-file.

**20.♞fc1 ♞fc8 21.♞c2 ♖e8?**

Nimzowitsch tries to keep in place at any cost the ♖c6, which constitutes a barrier on the c-file for the opposing major pieces and for this he even accepts a terrible pin – an unfortunate decision.

**21...♖d8** was more resilient, although even then after **22.♞ac1 ♞xc2 23.♞xc2 ♖g6 (23...♞c8? 24.♞xc8 ♖xc8 25.♖c3 ♖e7 26.♖c7+-) 24.♖e1 (Δ♖d3, ♖c1)** the black position would be very bad.

### **22.♞ac1**

White prepares to set up Blackburne's battering ram (♞c3/♞c2/♖c1). In his notes to this game Alekhine pointed out a quicker way to achieve this – **22.♞a3 Δ♞ac3, ♖d2-c1.** But in comparison to **22.♞a3** the text move has an important advantage – it immediately attacks once more the ♖c6 and in doing so prevents the black queen from getting out of the pin.

### **22...♞ab8 23.♖e3**

Actually unnecessary, but White can play practically any move he wants – Black is condemned to complete passivity.

### **23...♞c7 24.♞c3 ♖d7 25.♞1c2 ♖f8 26.♖c1 ♞bc8 27.♙a4!**

Now the threat is the deadly b4-b5.

### **27...b5**

Black sacrifices this pawn to gain time to transfer his king to d8, from where it will overprotect the ♞c7.

### **28.♙xb5 ♖e8 29.♙a4 ♖d8**

In the event of **30.b5** the ♖c6 could then move away. Of course the white position would also be won, e.g. **30...♖b8 31.b6 ♞xc3 32.♞xc3 ♞xc3 33.♖xc3+- Δ33...♖xa4 34.♖c7+ ♖e8 35.bxa7,** but Alekhine finds a subtle way to end the struggle.

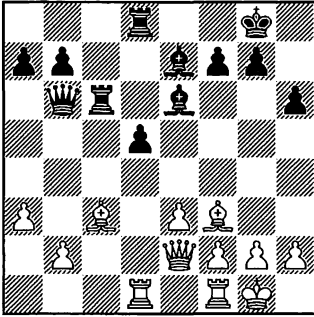
Have you noticed that not a single black piece can move any longer?

### **30.h4! h5 31.♖h2 g6 32.g3 1-0**

Black is in a deadly zugzwang.

► **20.3 Karpov–Spassky**

Montreal 1979



What we have here is a typical IQP position. Karpov demonstrates most instructively how White exploits his advantage.

**22.♖d3! ♜cd6 23.♞fd1 ♜6d7 24.♞1d2 ♜b5 25.♜d1**

Blackburne's battering ram is set up.

**26...b6**

And now, since the black pieces are occupied with the defence of the ♠d5, White starts preparing his attack on the kingside.

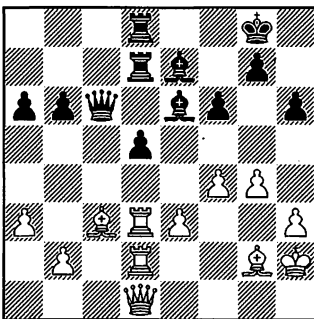
**26.g3! ♕f8 27.♕g2 ♕e7 28.♜h5! a6 29.h3 ♜c6 30.♞h2 ♜b5 31.f4!**

With the threat of 32.f5.

**31...f6 32.♜d1**

Again setting up Blackburne's battering ram.

**32...♜c6 33.g4**



**33...g5?**

This loses the ♠d5 by force, but the black position was in any case unpleasant enough,

so that, e.g., **33...a5** could be met with 34.h4 and further expansion on the kingside.

**34.♞h1**

Before f4-f5 the white king gets off the b8-h2 diagonal as a precautionary measure. There is no good defence against 35.f5 ♕f7 36.e4 winning the ♠d5.

**34...a5**

**34...♞d6 35.♕b4 ♞6d7 36.♕xe7 ♞xe7 37.e4±.**

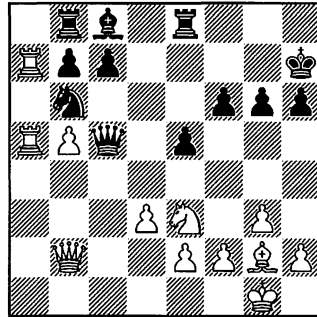
**35.f5 ♕f7 36.e4**

Thanks to his battering ram on the d-file Karpov wins the ♠d5 and soon the game too.

**36...♞g7 37.exd5 ♜c7 38.♞e2 b5 39.♞xe7 ♞xe7 40.d6 ♜c4 41.b3 1-0**

► **20.4 Andersson–Temirbaev**

Erevan (Olympiad) 1996



For the moment, his control of the a-file is not bringing White much. Andersson takes a clever decision – to bring his major pieces on to the semi-open c-file, after which his opponent will have big problems with the defence of the ♠c7.

**32.♞a1! ♞e7 33.♞c1! ♜d6 34.♜a3 ♜d8**

Black avoids the exchange of queens in the hope of counterplay on the kingside.

**35.♞c5! ♞g7 36.♜c1 ♜d6?!**

Temirbaev is building his hopes on an attack after ...f5-f4 and would like to keep

as many pieces on the board as possible for that reason. But it was more advisable to exchange the inactive rook by 36...♖a8.

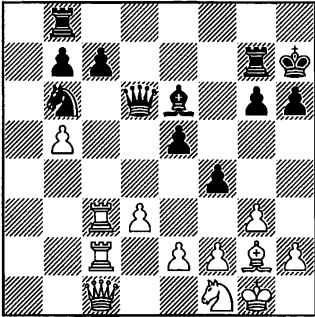
37.♖c2

37.♖a3 ♖a8! Δ38.♖ac3 ♗a4 39.♖a3 ♗b6.

37...f5

Still 37...♖a8!?, though now 38.♗c4 would not be bad after it.

38.♖a3! ♕e6 39.♖ac3! f4 40.♗f1



40...♗d5?!

After 40...♗d5, when one takes into account the protection of the queenside pawns, both the ♖b8 and the ♗a8 would be condemned to immobility, which would naturally also mean the end of all Black's dreams of an attack. After 41.♗d2 Δ♗e4 White would achieve a clear advantage.

But Black does no longer want to worry about the ♖c7 and he sacrifices it, but that soon turns out to be the greater evil.

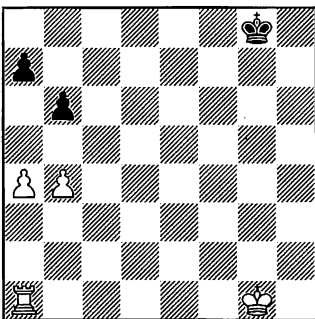
41.♕xd5 ♕xd5 42.♖xc7 ♖bg8  
43.♗d2 h5 44.♗e4 ♕xe4  
45.dxe4 fxg3 46.hxg3 ♖b4  
47.♖2c4 ♖xb5 48.♖7c5 ♖b6  
49.♖xe5 ♖f8 50.♖ec5 ♖gf7 51.f3,

and White won.

## Technique No. 21

# Avoiding the opening of a file – the 'padlock'

A very useful method of preventing the opening of files. Let us take a look at the following schematic diagram.



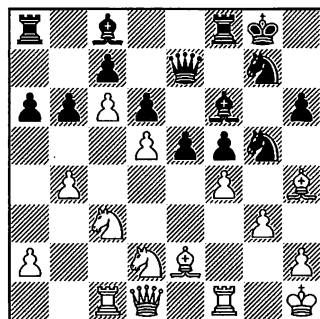
White is planning to open the a-file for his rook by b4-b5 followed by a4-a5. But Black plays ...a7-a6! and in doing so keeps

the files on the queenside closed, because after b4-b5 he has at his disposal ...a6-a5, whereas a4-a5 is met by the reply ...b6-b5.

## ► 21.1 Petrosian–Gligoric

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade

(Candidates' tournament) 1959



Do not let yourself be put off by the apparently hanging position of the ♖g5. Black is playing practically without his ♖a8 and ♗c8. His only hope of activating the ♖a8 consists of ...b6-b5 followed by ...a6-a5. Petrosian could have frustrated this by **21.a4!** – the files on the queenside would then have remained irrevocably closed.

But the game continued

**21.♗c4?!**,

and after

**21...exf4 22.gxf4 b5! 23.♗d2**

(23.♗a5? fails to 23...♗xc3 24.♖xc3 ♗e4+ 25.♗g1 ♗xb4)

**23...♗e4 24.♗xf6 ♖xf6 25.♗f3**

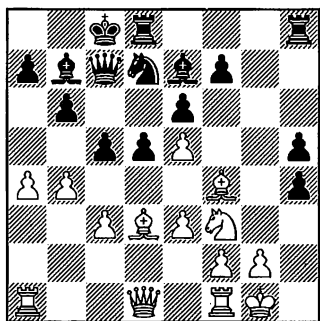
(in the event of 25.♗b3 White has to reckon with 25...♗xc3 26.♖xc3 ♗e4+)

**25...a5**

Gligoric obtained some counterplay.

## ► 21.2 Spassky–Petrosian

Moscow (7th WCh game) 1966



The semi-open g-file promises Black good chances of an attack on the king. In order to get counterplay, White for his part must open files on the queenside. Can Black prevent this?

**17...c4! 18.♗e2 a6!**

With his last two moves Petrosian has destroyed White's hopes. Now the queenside remains closed – a4-a5 is followed

by ...b6-b5, whilst b4-b5 meets the reply ...a6-a5. The fact that in doing so Black conceded to his opponent the d4-square is not of great significance here.

**19.♖h1 ♖dg8 20.♗g1 ♖g4 21.♗d2**

**21.♗h2 ♖g6 22.♗f3 ♖hg8** does not change much.

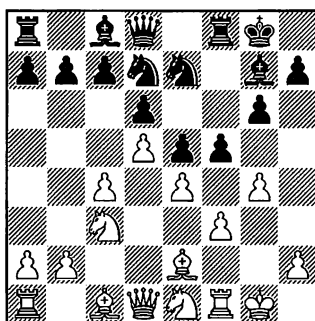
**21...♖hg8 22.a5 b5!±,**

and the black attack on the kingside decided the game.

## ► 21.3 King's Indian Defence

Theoretical variation

**1.d4 ♗f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗f3 0-0 6.♗e2 e5 7.0-0 ♗c6 8.d5 ♗e7 9.♗e1 ♗d7 10.f3 f5 11.g4!?**



**11...f4?**

**11...♗f6** is better, so as to maintain the tension, or also **11...♖h8!?** Δ...♗g8!, so as, if the opportunity arises, to exchange off the bad bishop by ...♗h6.

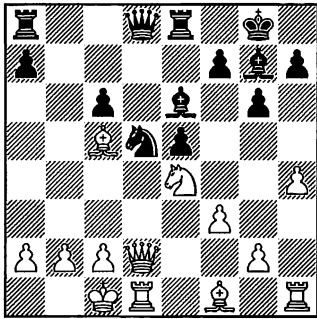
**12.h4!±**

Now Black can say farewell to all his hopes of effective counterplay on the kingside: ...h7-h5 is followed by g4-g5, after ...g6-g5 comes of course h4-h5. And on the other side of the board Black will soon be under extreme pressure.

► **21.4 Sicilian/Dragon Variation**

Theoretical variation

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4  
 5.♗f6 5.♗c3 g6 6.♙e3 ♙g7 7.f3 0-0  
 8.♚d2 ♗c6 9.0-0-0 d5 10.exd5  
 11.♗xc6 bxc6 12.♙d4 e5  
 13.♙c5 ♖e8 14.♗e4 ♙e6 15.h4



15...h6!

The padlock.

16.g4 ♚c7 17.g5

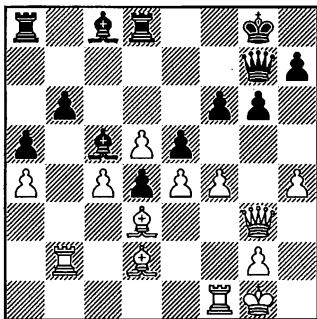
17.h5 g5, and the door is closed.

17...h5

With chances for both sides. White has to switch from the attack to prophylactic measures, e.g. 18.♙c4 ♖ed8 19.♚f2.

► **21.5 Kasparov–Petrosian**

Moscow 1981



The game continued

29...♙d7 30.h5! ♙xa4?

30...gxf3 31.♚h4 ♙g4 32.fxe5 fxe5  
 33. ♙g5 ♖f8 34.♙f6 ♚h6 35.♖bf2  
 ♖ae8= Kasparov.

31.h6!

It is interesting that White does not use the advance h4-h5 for the opening of the h-file by h5xg6, but that he decides on the continuation h5-h6 – it will soon become clear how unpleasant the presence of the pawn on h6 is for the black king.

31...♚c7

31...♚xh6? 32.fxe5+–.

As extensive further analyses showed, Kasparov could now have achieved a winning position with 32.fxe5! fxe5 33.♙g5 ♖f8 34.♙f6, e.g. 34...♖ae8 35.♖bf2 ♙d7, and Jussupow gives 36.♙g7! ♖xf2 (36...♖f4 37.♙xe5+– Kasparov) 37.♚xf2 ♙c8 38.d6! ♙xd6 39.c5+–.

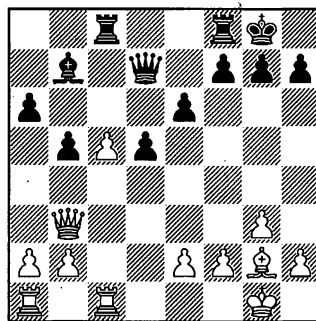
But let us return to the diagram position. As Petrosian himself later pointed out

29...h6!?

(the padlock!) would have been well worth considering, so as to be able to meet h4-h5 with ...g6-g5. The position would then have been more or less level.

► **21.6 Romanishin–Dolmatov**

Moscow 1985



19...a5!

Unless he has the possibility of being able to open files on the queenside,

White's passed pawn is not very dangerous.

**20. ♖d3 ♜fd8 21. b3 b4?**

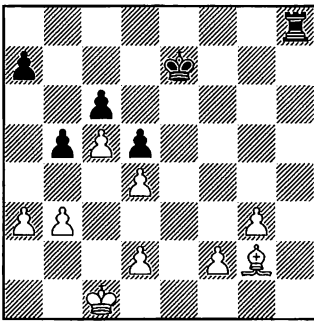
He unnecessarily demolishes his own fortress on the queenside. White can now open lines there and force his way in.

**22. a3! ♙c6 23. axb4± axb4 24. ♖d4 ♜b8 25. ♙a6 ♖c7 26. ♜b6**

White has the initiative.

### ► 21.7 Chekhover (Study)

Parna Ty Bull 1947



In view of the inevitable ...♜h8-h2 the white position appears to be lost. However ...

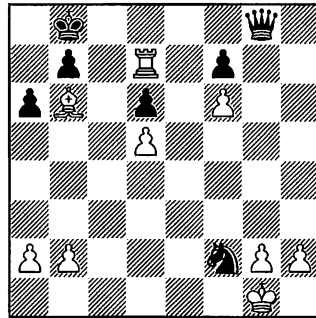
**1. ♙d1!! ♜h2 2. ♙e1! ♜xg2 3. ♙f1 ♜h2 4. ♙g1! ♜h5 5. f3! =**

A wonderful fortress. On the queenside Black cannot open any file on account of the padlock a3-b3, whilst on the kingside the white monarch is personally guarding all the invasion squares: as long as the rook is on the h-file, it goes back and forth between g1 and g2, and as soon as the latter changes to the e-file between f1 and f2. Nor does the idea of a rook sacrifice on e4 lead to success.

The final example appears almost like an endgame study at the finish of a practical game:

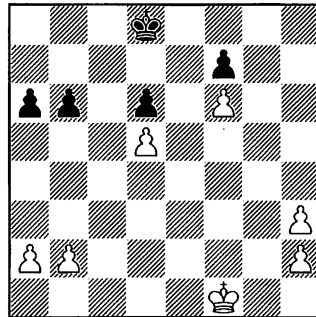
### ► 21.8 Khramov–Roshal

USSR 1970



Black's situation looks to be a sad one. There is no defence against ♜d8+, after which White is left with two extra pawns. Is there any way to save the game?

**46... ♖h3+! 47. ♙f1 ♙c8! 48. ♜d8+ ♖xd8 49. ♙xd8 ♙xd8 50. gxh3 b6! =**



It is perhaps not so easy to believe, but despite his two extra pawns White cannot win. On the queenside and in the centre his king has no squares on which it can invade, and there is no changing that, because Black replies to a4-a5 with ...b6-b5, whilst b4-b5 is naturally followed by ...a6-a5. As for the kingside – it is even enough for the black king to move back and forth between g8 and h8.

There is however one thing which Black must not do: take the ♙f6. Then White could finally penetrate via the f6-square.

## Chapter VI

# Some aspects of piece exchanges

### Technique No. 22

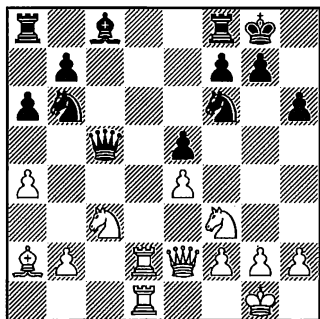
## Botvinnik's prescription: exchange those pieces which are protecting entry squares!

Very often, despite impressive domination – e.g. total control of an open file – it is for the time being impossible to invade the opponent's camp decisively, since the latter has cleverly taken control of the entry squares.

Then the active side must try to swap off or to drive away the pieces which are thwarting his intentions.

### ► 22.1 Botvinnik–Sorokin

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1931



Both of White's rooks are occupying in threatening fashion the d-file, but for the moment the entry square d7 is triple-protected. Botvinnik shows an interesting idea:

**20. ♖e3! ♜xe3**

**20... ♜c7? 21. ♘xe5! ♜xe5 22. ♜xb6,**  
and **22... ♘xe4?** is refuted by **23. ♜e3+-.**

**21. fxe3**

White has accepted a disadvantageous pawn structure, but there is a profound positional reason for this decision.

After the exchange of queens, which from Black's point of view is practically forced, the ♕e5 has become susceptible. And now Black has not only to ward off the more active white rooks, but also to worry about his weak e-pawn.

**21... ♙g4 22. a5!**

Now the ♘b6 must give up the control of the d7-square.

**22... ♘c8**

Black intends ... ♘e7-c6.

As Botvinnik explains in his comments, **22... ♘bd7** would have been weaker on account of 23.h3, e.g. 23... ♙xf3 24.gxf3 ♘c5 (24... ♜fd8 25. ♘d5!+-) 25.b4 ♘e6 26. ♙xe6 fxe6 27. ♘a4 (♘♗c5), and the game is practically decided.

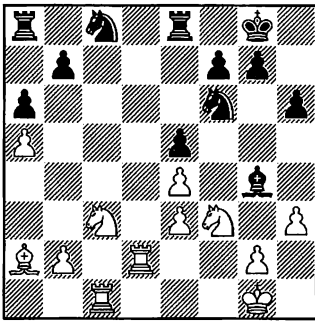
**23. ♜c1**

With this move White restores the threat of ♘xe5, and in addition this rook is now casting an acquisitive eye on the c7-square.

Also worth considering was **23.h3!?**, so as to force the exchange on f3.

**23...♙xf3**

With this move, Black – at least temporarily – frees himself from his concerns about the ♖e5. But on the other hand Black exchanges his bishop which should actually be guarding the d7-square and at the same time improves the white pawn structure. An alternative would be **23...♞e8!?**. Botvinnik does not think very highly of this move on account of **24.h3**. Nevertheless, Black here has two alternatives to the capture on f3:



analysis diagram

a) **24...♙h5**

After this Botvinnik recommends **25.♘h4** intending g2-g4, but after **25...♗e7** (Δ26.g4 ♙g6 27.♘xg6 ♘xg6) there is nothing special in sight for White.

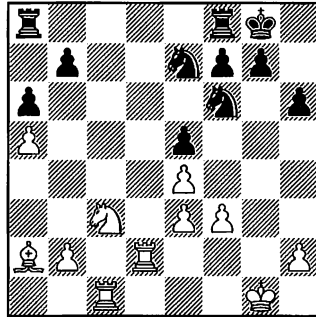
However, a stronger move is **25.♗d5!**, to swap off the final guardian of the d7-square (*Botvinnik's method!*), e.g. **25...♗e7** (25...♗xe4 is followed by 26.♞dc2! with the threats 26.♗c7 or 26.♞xc8 ♞axc8 27.♞xc8 ♞xc8 28.♗e7+) **26.♗xf6+ gxf6 27.♞d7±**.

b) **24...♙e6! 25.♙xe6 ♞xe6 26.♞d8+** Here Botvinnik's analysis finishes with the indication that Black loses the ♖e5. But that is not the end of matters: **26...♞e8** (26...♗e8? or 26...♗h7? is followed by 27.♗d5+-) 27.♞xe8+ ♗xe8 28.♗xe5 ♗cd6 29.♞d1 ♞c8, and in view of White's

compromised pawn structure it would be anything but simple to turn the extra pawn into the full point.

But this reservation does not in the slightest devalue Botvinnik's idea **20.♗e3!** – indeed, after **23...♞e8** all Black has to fight for is survival.

**24.gxf3 ♗e7**



**25.♗d5! ♗c6?**

The decisive mistake – Black allows his opponent to exchange the ♗f6 and to invade on d7 with the rook. Because of its pressure against f7 the ♙a2 is a powerful aid to White's activity on the seventh rank.

In the event of **25...♗fxd5** Botvinnik did not want to continue with **26.exd5 ♗f5 27.e4 ♗d6** (with a blockade of the ♖d5), but with **26.♙xd5 ♗xd5 27.♞xd5**, after which 'material gains would be assured'. But if we continue this variation with **27...♞ac8!** 28.♞xc8 (28.♞dc5!±) 28...♞xc8 29.♞xe5 ♞c1+ 30.♗f2 ♞c2+ 31.♗g3 ♞xb2, it becomes clear that this evaluation was too optimistic.

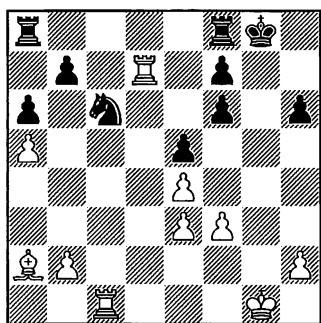
But let us return to the option rejected by Botvinnik: **26.exd5 ♗f5**, and then play not 27.e4, but **27.d6!**, after which White has a really big advantage, e.g. **27...♞fd8** (27...♗xe3 28.♞e1 ♗f5 29.♞xe5±, 27...♞ad8 28.d7 ♗xe3 29.♞e1 ♗f5 30.♞xe5±) **28.d7 ♗xe3 29.♞e1** (29.♙b1!? f5 30.♞c5) 29...♗f5 30.♞xe5±.

But Black can also strengthen his play: **26...♖ac8!** (instead of 26...♗f5) promises him considerable chances of a draw, e.g. **27.♙xc8** (27.♙dc2 ♗xc2 28.♙xc2 ♖c8) **27...♙xc8** 28.d6 ♗c6 29.♙d5 ♙d8.

A more thorough analysis would go well beyond the bounds of this book. Consequently we note that in any case Black has not taken advantage of all his defensive resources.

After the text move 25...♗c6? Botvinnik smoothly carries out his main intention – the penetration on d7:

**26.♗xf6+ gxf6 27.♙d7**



**27...♙ab8**

27...♗xa5 28.♙cc7+–.

**28.♗f2!**

The threat is ♗g1+, but after Black now does take on a5, White does not need to bother with this possibility.

**28...♗xa5 29.♙cc7 ♙bc8 30.♙xf7**

**♙xc7 31.♙xc7+ ♗h8 32.♙d5 b5**

32...♙b8 33.♙f7+–.

**33.b3**

×♗a5; 33.♙a7!? ♗c4 34.b3+–.

**33...♙d8 34.♗g3**

34.♙f7!? ♗d6 35.♗g3 ♗c6 36.♗g4+–.

**34...f5 35.♗h4 fxe4 36.fxe4 ♙d6**

**37.♗h5 ♙f6 38.h3 ♙d6 39.h4**

**♙b6 40.♗g4 ♙f6 41.♙a7 ♙b6**

**42.♙e7 ♙d6 43.♙c7 ♙b6 44.♗h5**

**♙d6 45.♙f7! ♙f6**

45...♗g7 46.b4 ♗c6 47.♙d5+–.

**46.♙g6 ♗xb3 47.♗xh6 ♙f8 48.**

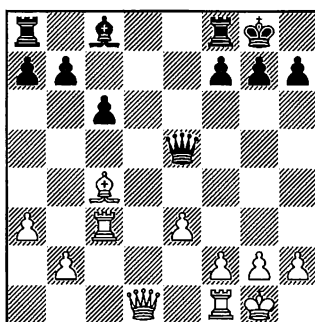
**♙h7+ ♗g8 49.♙g7+ ♗h8 50.♙f7**

Black resigned.

In the next game Black himself offers the exchange of his defending bishop. Although apparently passive, he really should have kept the ♙c8 on the board:

## ▶ 22.2 Capablanca–Alekhine

Buenos Aires (5th WCh game) 1927



**15...♙e6?!**

A dubious decision, after which the first player obtains the initiative. White is glad to exchange this bishop, because afterwards – after doubling rooks on the d-file – the d7-square becomes accessible to him.

The move given by Alekhine is stronger:

**15...♙f5** with complete equality.

**16.♙xe6! ♗xe6 17.♙d3 ♗f6**

**18.♗b3 ♗e7 19.♙fd1 ♙ad8**

19...♙fd8? 20.♗xb7!+–.

**20.h3**

Now there is a threat of a general exchange on d8, followed by ♗xb7.

**20...♙xd3**

20...b6 21.♗a4! ♙xd3 22.♙xd3 ♗c7

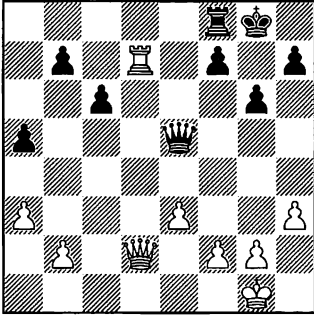
23.♗d1± ♗d7.

**21.♙xd3 g6 22.♗d1± ♗e5 23.**

**♗d2 a5**

23...♖e8 24.♗d7 ♖e7 does not solve the difficulties: 25.♗d8+ ♕g7 26.♖a8, since 25...♗e8? 26.♗d4! already costs a pawn.

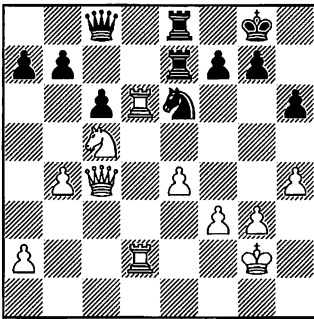
**24.♗d7**



White has firm control of the d-file and this gives him the initiative till further notice.

### ► 22.3 Simagin–Kotov

Moscow 1945



The white rooks on the d-file are impressively posted, but how to make progress?

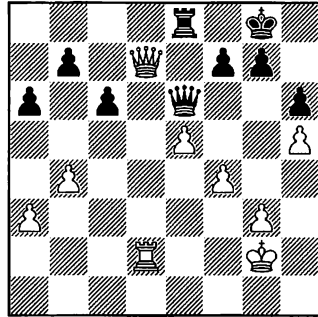
**30.♖xe6! ♖xe6 31.♖xe6! ♖xe6**

31...♗xe6 would be quite bad: 32.♗xe6 fxe6 (32...♖xe6 33.♗d8+ ♕h7 34.♗d7+-) 33.♗d7 ♖b8 34.f4+-.

**32.♗d4**

This endgame is clearly better for White – he has uncontested control of the d-file and can further strengthen his position with a pawn advance in the centre and on the kingside, whilst Black has no counterplay.

**32...♗f8 33.f4 ♖e8 34.e5 ♗e7  
35.a3 a6 36.h5 ♗e6 37.♗d7**



With his previous moves (f3-f4, e4-e5, h4-h5) White has gained even more space and is now ready to exchange queens – in the resulting rook ending the advantage in space and the difference in the activity of the pieces will make itself felt most clearly. One might perhaps argue whether this position can be won against the strongest defence, but in any case Black clearly has the worse cards. In what followed Kotov did not manage to save the game.

**37...♖e7 38.♗xe6 fxe6**

38...♖xe6 39.♗d8+ ♕h7 40.♗d7+-.

**39.♕f3 ♖c7 40.♕e4 ♕f7**

Or **40...c5** 41.bxc5 ♖xc5 42.♗d8+ ♕h7 43.♗d6 ♖c4+ 44.♕d3 ♖a4 45.♖xe6 ♖xa3+ 46.♕e4 ♖xg3 (46...b5 47.♖b6 ♖xg3 48.e6+-) 47.♖b6, and White wins.

**41.♗d6**

41.g4!? Δf4-f5.

**41...♕e7 42.f5**

**42.g4!?**, without fear of the pawn ending: 42...♗d7? 43.♖xd7+ ♕xd7 44.♕d4 b6 45.a4 ♕c7 46.a5 c5+ (otherwise White invades via the c5-square) 47.bxc5 bxa5 48.f5+-.

**42...exf5+ 43.♕xf5 c5**

The final chance of counterplay lay in **43...a5!?** Δ44.bxa5 c5.

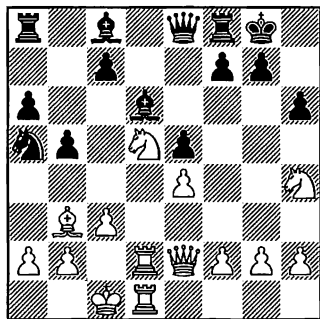
**44.bxc5 ♖xc5 45.♖b6 ♖c7 46.g4 ♕f7 47.a4 ♕e7 48.a5 ♕f7 49.**

♖e4 ♖e7 50.♘d5 ♗d7+ 51.♗d6  
 ♜c7 52.e6 ♖e8 53.♞b6 ♖e7 54.  
 ♞b1 ♖e8 55.♞b4 ♜c1 56.♞xb7,

and White won.

### ► 22.4 Kholmov–M.S.Tseitlin

Voskresensk 1990



18.♘b6!

This forces the exchange of the ♗d6, which is blocking the d-file.

18...♘xb3+ 19.axb3 cxb6 20.  
 ♞xd6 ♖e7

White's next task is to force the exchange of the remaining black bishop so as to obtain access to the d7-square.

21.♖h5! ♗e6 22.♘f5!

22.♞xb6? would fail to 22...♖c5± but now there is a real threat of ♞xb6.

22...♗xf5

22...♖c7? loses on account of 23.♘g7!.

23.♖xf5 ♗ad8 24.♗d7

Of course not 24.♞xb6?? ♞xd1+ 25. ♘xd1 ♖d8+.

24...♞xd7 25.♞xd7 ♖h4 26.h3±

## Technique No. 23

# Exchanging bishops in order to weaken a complex of squares

Whenever during a game it comes about that the pawns (on one wing or in the centre) are almost exclusively on the squares of a single colour, then the squares of the opposite colour tend to weakness. But as long as the defending side has at its disposal sufficient pieces to cover this Achilles heel, the square weakness is not usually decisive.

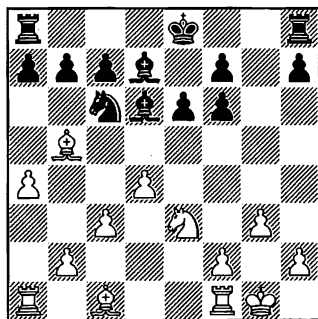
The weakness of the squares does not become significant until the attacking side manages to eliminate by means of exchanges the defending pieces.

The following classical example – which has been discussed in too one-sided a way in too many manuals – also shows, last but not least, the tactical resources

(note for example the motif d4-d5!) with which the defender can avoid being 'fixed' on the weak squares:

### ► 23.1 Mieses–Alekhine

Baden-Baden 1925



Almost all of White's pawns are on dark squares. With his next move Alekhine offers the exchange of light-squared bishops in the hope that after that the light squares will turn out to be weak.

**14...♗a5!? 15.♙xd7+ ♖xd7 16.b4 ♘c6**

An interesting try was **16...♘b3!?** 17.♞b1 ♘xc1 18.♞fxc1 h5 19.c4 ♞ag8 and if 20.c5, then 20...♙f4.

In the position after 16...♘c6 Black has two basic plans:

- Activity on the kingside with ...h7-h5-h4 or ...f6-f5-f4.
- ...a7-a6 and then ...b7-b5, so as to fix the white queenside pawns on the dark squares.

As he continues, White must bear in mind these two possibilities for his opponent.

**17.♞d1**

This move is only OK insofar as White links it to the correct plan. One alternative consisted of **17.b5!?** (gains space on the queenside and prevents the aforementioned ...a7-a6, ...b7-b5) 17...♗a5!? 18.♞b1 a6 19.c4 axb5 20.c5 ♙e7 21.axb5 f5∞.

A further option was the immediate **17.d5!?** ♗e7 (17...♗e5?! 18.f4 with the initiative) 18.dxe6+ (18.♞d1 ⇒ 17.♞d1 ♗e7) 18...fxe6 19.♙b2 e5∞.

**17...a6?!**

We already know the idea behind this move – namely to get in ...b7-b5. But here Mieses could by **18.d5!** thwart his opponent's plans and obtain a strong initiative, e.g. **18...♗e7** (18...♗e5 19.f4 ♘g6 20.dxe6+ fxe6 21.c4±) **19.dxe6+ fxe6** 20.c4 with a big advantage for White.

**17...♗e7** was stronger, e.g. **18.d5 e5** (18...♞hg8 19.dxe6+ fxe6 20.c4 with the initiative) **19.♘g4 ♘g8** 20.♙d2 h5 (20...f5!? 21.♗e3 f4 22.gxf4 ♗f6∞) 21.♗e3 ♗e7 22.c4 e4∞.

**18.♞b1?!**

As pointed out, 18.d5! was better.

**18...b5!**

The scheduled follow-up to ...a7-a6.

**18...♗e7** was no longer advisable, moreover, on account of 19.c4!.

**19.a5?!**

Mieses voluntarily weakens his light squares on the queenside. Why not **19.d5!** ♗e7 20.dxe6+ fxe6 21.c4 (or first 21.♙b2!?) 21...bxc4 22.♗xc4 with a slightly better position?

**19...♗e7 20.♞b2?!**

Did White really believe that his pawns would feel most at home on the dark squares? **20.d5!∞** was still the best continuation.

**20...♖c6**

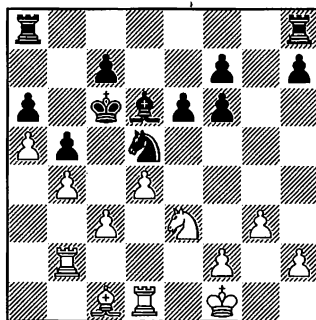
Objectively speaking, **20...c6!** was stronger. But probably Alekhine sensed that his opponent was not ready to play d4-d5.

**21.♖f1?**

White here misses his final chance to advance the d-pawn: **21.d5+!** ♖b7 (or 21...♗xd5 22.♗xd5 exd5 23.♞bd2∞) 22.dxe6 fxe6 23.c4!∞.

**21...♗d5**

Now the weakness of White's light squared complex has finally been established.



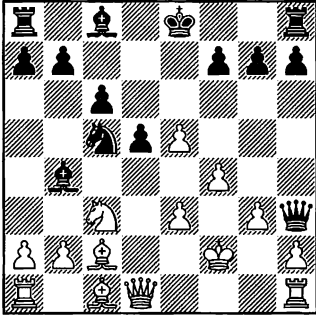
**22.♖e1 h5!**

Now Alekhine begins his expansion on the kingside.

We already studied the further course of the game under *Technique No. 15*, 'File opening with the rook pawn' (*Example 15.2*).

► **23.2 Makogonov–Botvinnik**

Sverdlovsk 1943

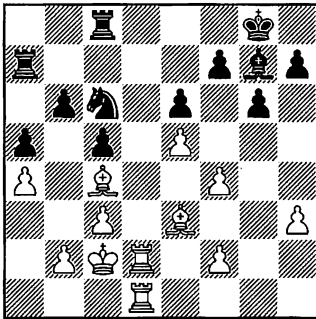


All the white pawns – with the exception of the ♖a2 – are on dark squares, but for the moment the ♘c3 and the ♗c2 are still to some extent controlling the holes on the light squares. So:

**13...♗xc3! 14.bxc3 ♗f5! 15.♗xf5 ♖xf5±**

► **23.3 Andersson–Tempone**

Buenos Aires 1979



The light squares on the black queenside are weak. How can this be exploited? (For the pre-history of this position see also ⇒ *Example 3.7!*)

**20.♖b3**

The immediate **20.♗b5!** seems to be more accurate – then White, in the event of 20...♗e7, has at his disposal 21.♗d8+ ♗xd8 22.♗xd8+ ♗f8 23.♗b8 ♗d5 24.♗c4 ♗xe3+ 25.fxg3 winning the ♖b6. Just like in the future course of the game the bishops of opposite colours are not a great worry here, since the ♗f8 remains passive – here too White will bring his king to b5.

**20...♗f8 21.♗b5 ♗cc7?!**

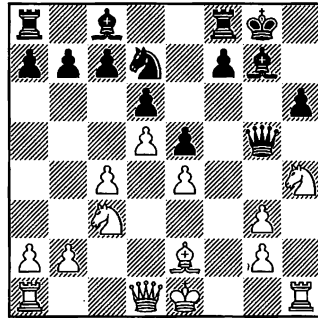
21...♗e7 was more resilient: 22.♗e2 ♗ac7 23.♖c4 ♗f5 24.♖b5 ♗b7±.

**22.♗xc6! ♗xc6 23.♖c4 ♗e7 24.♗d7 ♗cc7 25.♗xc7 ♗xc7 26.♖b5 ♗c8**

**26...♗b7 27.♖c6 ♗b8 28.♖c7 ♗a8 29.♗d7+-. 27.♗d7 ♖f8 28.♖xb6 ♖e8 29.♗b7 ♗d8+ 30.♖b5 c4 31.♗c5 1-0**

► **23.4 Balashov–Penrose**

Hastings 1966/67

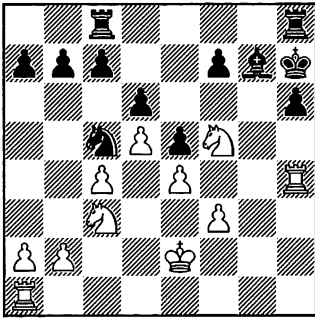


The ♗h4 is dreaming of dominating the f5-square, but the immediate 14.♗f5 runs into 14...♗f6, and the ♗f5 cannot be maintained there. But there is a far better option.

**14.♗g4!**

White sacrifices a pawn, so as to swap off the ♗c8 and to secure the f5-square for his knight.

**14...♗c5 15.♗xc8! ♖xg3+ 16.♖f1 ♗axc8 17.♗f5 ♖f4+ 18.♖f3 ♖h7 19.♖e2 ♗h8 20.♗h4 ♖xf3+ 21.gxf3±**



White has all the positional advantages he could wish for – and the extra pawn is no consolation for Black either.

Next came:

**21...♖cg8 22.♞ah1 ♞a8 23.♘d1  
♘d7 24.♘de3 ♔g8 25.♗g1 ♞h7  
26.♞hg4**

And Black resigned.

## Technique No. 24

# The bishop zigzag: neutralising the good bishop

From time to time this is a useful technique for neutralising a strong opposing bishop:

Your own less effective bishop carries out a 'zigzag manoeuvre' in order to get on to the same diagonal as the opposing bishop and force the latter into an exchange.

It is going via h5 to g6, so as to exchange off the opposing bishop.

**22.♘d2**

This plans ♘b3-c5.

**22...♞c7**

Black intends to meet the imminent ♘b3-c5 with ...♘d7xc5, so (in case White then recaptures with bxc5) as a precaution he protects the ♖b7.

**23.♘b3 ♖h5 24.♘c5 ♘xc5 25.  
♗xc5**

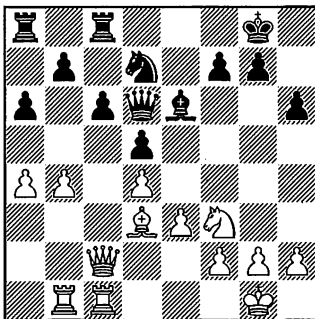
After 25.bxc5 ♗f6 26.♞b3 ♖g6 27.♖xg6 fxg6! (⇒ *Technique No. 29!*) 28.♞cb1 ♞e8 29.h3 (29.♞xb7 ♞xb7 30.♞xb7 ♗xd4! with counterplay) 29...♞ee7 Black has justified prospects of holding the position. An important reason for this is that the queens have remained on the board, which leaves a white plan with e3-e4 looking unrealistic.

**25...♗f6!**

The correct decision. In the event of 25...♗xc5 26.bxc5 ♞e8 27.♞b3 ♖g6 28.♖xg6 fxg6 29.♞cb1 ♞ee7 almost the same position would arise as in the

### ► 24.1 Capablanca–Alekhine

Buenos Aires (25th WCh game) 1927



The ♖d3 is clearly more active than its black counterpart. Can Black do something about this state of affairs?

**21...♖g4**

previous note – except this time without the queens. White would clearly have better chances of playing e3-e4 under favourable conditions, and thus certain prospects of success.

**26.b5**

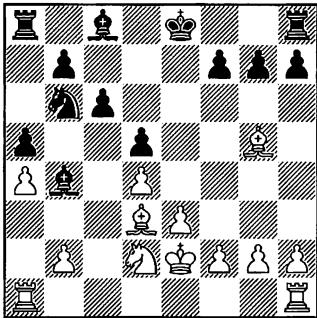
A better impression was created by 26.♖a1!? ♖g6 27.♗f1 (Hübner), in order to avoid the exchange of bishops. After the text move the idea ...♗g4-h5-g6 turns out to be completely justified.

**26...axb5 27.axb5 ♗g6 28.♗xg6 ♖xg6**

Playing against the weakness on c6 was not enough to win the game in this major piece endgame. The intense struggle finally ended in a draw.

► **24.2 Karpov–Kasparov**

Moscow (47th WCh game) 1984/85



Here too the ♗d3 is more effective than its counterpart.

**13...♗g4+! 14.f3 ♗h5!**

Just like in Capablanca-Alekhine Black makes use of the manoeuvre ...♗g4-h5-g6 to exchange his ‘bad’ bishop for White’s ‘good’ one.

So never be led into thinking that the classical games are ‘too old’ to bother yourself with – such an attitude would mean doing without highly valuable

learning material and would clearly limit your own knowledge and abilities.

**15.h4 0-0 16.g4**

Or 16.b3 f5! and then ...♖ae8 with an initiative for Black.

**16...♗g6 17.b3 ♗xd3+ 18.♔xd3 ♖fe8 19.♖ac1 c5! 20.♗f4 ♖ac8 21.dxc5 ♖d7**

Black has the initiative and went on to win this penultimate game of the World Championship which would be abandoned soon after it.

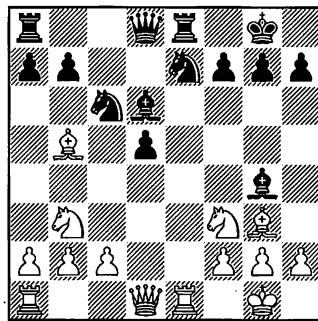
► **24.3 French Defence**

Theoretical variation

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♗d2 c5 4.exd5 exd5 5.♗gf3 ♖c6 6.♗b5 ♗d6 7.dxc5 ♗xc5 8.0-0 ♗ge7 9.♗b3 ♗d6 10.♖e1 0-0 11.♗g5**

Apparently an active move – but the pin on the ♗e7 does not promise much. The true intentions of the bishop soon become apparent:

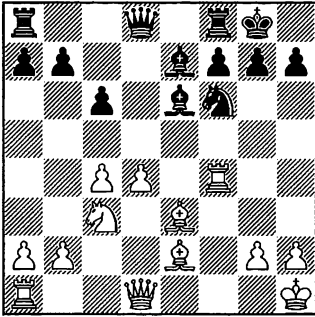
**11...♗g4 12.♗h4! ♖e8 13.♗g3**



White forces the exchange of the ♗d6. In such an IQP position, basically every exchange of minor pieces is to White’s advantage and especially the exchange of the ‘good’ ♗d6 considerably lessens Black’s dynamic options. So White has the slightly better chances.

► **24.4 Botvinnik–Flohr**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1944



White is intending  $\text{♕e2-d3}$ , after which the bishop would be aiming threaten-

ingly at h7. But Flohr finds a way to neutralise this danger.

**14...♖d7!**

Preparing ... $\text{♕f5}$  or (after 15. $\text{♕d3}$ ) ... $\text{♕g4-h5-g6}$ .

**15.♕d3 ♕g4! 16.♖d2 ♕h5 17. ♕f5 ♖c7 18.♞af1 ♕g6 19.♞h4 ♞fe8 20.♕f4 ♖d8 21.♕xg6 fxg6**

21... $\text{hxg6}$  would have been too risky in view of the opening of the h-file.

**22.♞h3 ♖d7 23.a3 ♞ad8**

The pressure on the white d-pawn and the better coordination of his pieces compensate Black for his inferior pawn structure – the position is more or less level.

**Technique No. 25**

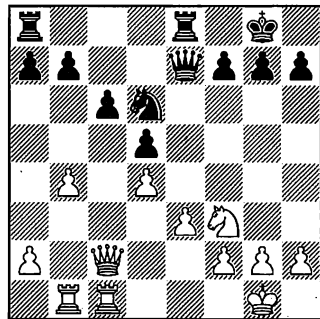
**Capablanca’s set-up in the Karlsbad structure**

In specific structures – here for example the Karlsbad Structure after  $\text{c4xd5 e6xd5}$  in the Queen’s Gambit – specific constellations of material and piece arrangements have shown themselves to be particularly effective.

Unfortunately so far too little has been written about this aspect of the subject of exchanging pieces, namely the question ‘which typical positions are screaming out for which typical piece set-ups?’ and what has been written has mostly been in connection with the subjects of an advantage in space or the IQP. A differentiated examination of other typical structures remains a subject for the future.

We turn our attention, as was said, to the Karlsbad structure, in which a popular plan consists of the so-called minority

attack b4-b5, when lines are meant to be opened on the queenside and weaknesses in Black’s position to be exposed.

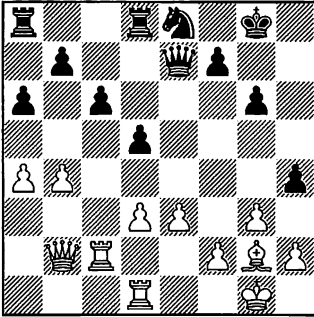


To anticipate the menacing danger on the queenside and obtain counter-chances, it makes sense for Black to strive for the piece distribution in the diagram above (♖, ♞, ♕), with the d6-square generally being a very comfortable post for the black knight.

There follows a history of ideas presented like a time lapse film in order to cast some light on what has been said:

### ► 25.1 Réti–Capablanca

Moscow 1925



Réti had just played 23.a4. At the latest after d3-d4 (to avoid the reply ...c6-c5), Black would have to reckon with the minority attack b4-b5.

#### 23...♞d6!

An ideal square for the knight. From there it makes more difficult (or prevents) the advance b4-b5 and is in addition prepared, in the event of d3-d4, to go to c4 or e4.

Note how the black piece set-up ♖+♚♞+♞d6 is the best suited to the struggle against the classical minority attack (with the white pawn on d4). As was mentioned, the ♞d6 is well-posted for both defensive and attacking duties; and as things go on Black can send his queen to g5, bring a rook on to the e-file (both for the purpose of setting up threats against e3) and then start a pawn storm on the kingside – we shall later see some excellent examples of play going just like that.

If White's only minor piece should head to the queenside to support the minority attack, then Black's chances of an initiative on the kingside are increased. But White

can make absolutely no progress with his minority attack without the support of a minor piece, since Black too often is in control of b5 (with ♞d6, ♠a6, ♠c6). In the game Réti did not play 24.d4 and decided on another plan:

#### 24.e4 dxe4 25.dxe4 ♞e8

Now there is no minority attack, and the knight returns to the kingside.

#### 26.♞cd2 hxg3 27.hxg3 ♞xd2

27...♞f6!?

#### 28.♖xd2 ♞f6 29.♖d4

29.♖d6!?

#### 29...♞e8 30.♖b6 ♞g7 31.e5

#### ♖xe5 32.♖xb7 ♞g4 33.♖b6

33.♖xa6? ♞xf2! 34.♞xf2? ♖e3+ 35.♞f1 ♞e6-+.

#### 33...♖h5

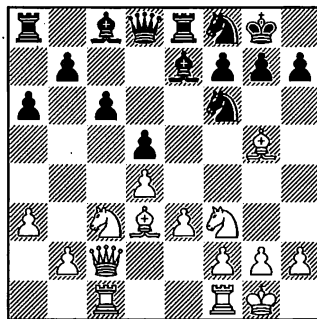
In this double-edged position a draw was agreed.

On account of the fact that in this game White did without d3-d4, the significance of Capablanca's piece formation as a weapon against the minority attack structure was not realised for a long time.

More than 20 years later V. Pirc was close to making good use of the advantages of Capablanca's piece set-up:

### ► 25.2 Trifunovic–Pirc

Saltsjöbaden (Interzonal tournament) 1948



**12...g6!**

△...♟f8-e6-g7, ...♞f5.

**13.♞a4 ♞e6! 14.♞h4 ♞g7! 15. ♞c5 ♞d7 16.♞xe7 ♞xe7 17.b4 ♞b6 18.a4 ♞f5 19.♞d2 ♞xd3 20.♞xd3 ♞f5** 1/2-1/2

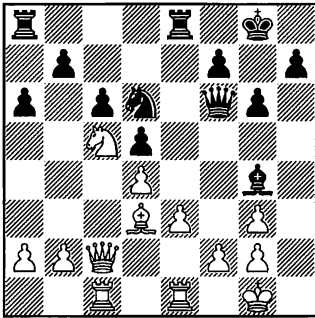
All Black would have to do now is to exchange one of his knights – for example by means ...♞d6 and then ...♞bc4 – and he would have Capablanca’s formation on the board.

21.b5 could, moreover, be well parried by 21...cxb5 22.axb5 a5.

Unfortunately peace was declared after 20...♞f5, so that Capablanca’s piece set-up no longer appeared on the board in this game.

► **25.3 Pachman–Podgorny**

CSSR 1950



If it were Black’s move here he could by ...♞g4-f5 exchange White’s good bishop for his own bad one and thus obtain the Capablanca formation.

**20.♞b3**

Now **20...♞f5?** fails to 21.♞xf5 ♞xf5 22.♞xb7±, and 22...♞ab8? is parried with 23.♞xd6!+-.

But Black could play **20...♞e7!**, so as to still get in ...♞g4-f5. If then the bishops

were actually exchanged (otherwise White would have to retreat his ♞d3 to a passive square), Black would obtain the desired Capablanca formation.

Instead

**20...b5?**

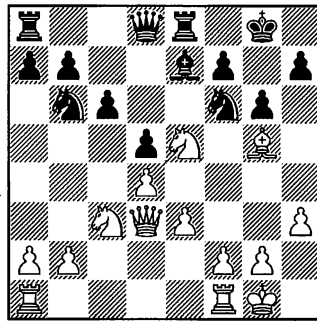
was played and Black went on to lose this game.

A few more words about the move ...b7-b5: In positions with a white pawn on b4 this is often a good idea with a view to ...♞b6-c4. But here this just unnecessarily weakens the ♞c6, whilst on account of b2-b3 the knight cannot find a lasting dwelling place on c4.

Then at last there came the time of Tigran Petrosian, who knew Capablanca’s games and ideas better than anyone.

► **25.4 Bobotsov–Petrosian**

Lugano (Olympiad) 1968

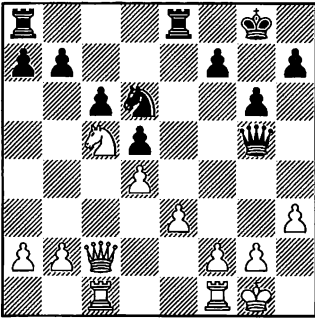


**16...♞e4! 17.♞xe7 ♞xe7 18.♞c2 18.♞xe4 dxe4 △ 19.♞xe4?? f6.**

**18...♞d6! 19.♞a4 ♞bc4 20.♞xc4 ♞xc4 21.♞c5 ♞d6**

Petrosian has adopted the Capablanca formation!

**22.♞ac1 ♞g5!**



The start of active operations on the kingside.

It is worth noting that White can develop absolutely no initiative on the other half of the board. Consequently Bobotsov turns to a waiting policy.

**23. ♖d1 h5 24. ♔h1 ♜e7!**

Here the rook overprotects the ♖b7 and can (after ...f7-f6 or ...f7-f5) also be transferred to the kingside.

**25. ♘d3 ♘e4 26. ♘c5 ♘d6  
27. ♘d3 ♜f5 28. ♘e5 f6 29. ♘f3**

White senses that the situation on the kingside is becoming more and more threatening and sends his knight there to help.

But what else can you expect in such a passive position!

**29... ♖g7! 30. ♘h2 ♜e8 31.  
♔g1 ♘e4 32. ♜f3 ♜e6 33. ♜fd1  
g5!**

This threatens 34...g4.

**34. ♜xh5 f5!**

Once again with the idea of ...g5-g4.

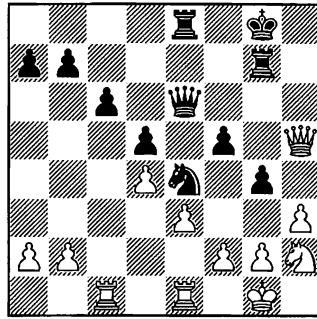
**35. ♜e1**

This overprotects the ♖e3.

The alternative 35. ♜e2 would fail to 35...g4 36.hxg4 fxg4 37.g3 ♜f8 38. ♜f1 ♘g5-+.

But the text move does not bring any relief either.

**35...g4!**

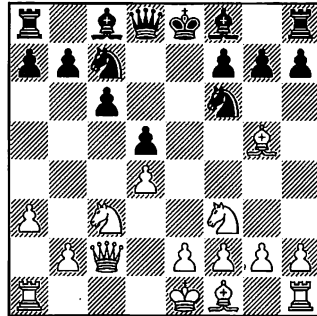


**36.hxg4 fxg4 37.f3 gxf3 38. ♘xf3  
♜h7 39. ♜e5 ♜c8 40. ♜f4 ♜f8  
41. ♜e5 ♜f5 0-1**

Now the baton was passed to Kasparov, who included Petrosian's plan in his arsenal:

### ► 25.5 Portisch–Kasparov

Skelleftea 1989



**8...g6! 9.e3 ♘f5 10. ♘d3 ♘xd3  
11. ♜xd3 ♘e7 12.0-0 0-0 13.b4  
♘e4! 14. ♘f4 ♘xc3 15. ♜xc3?!**

As Kasparov points out in his comments on the game, here 15. ♘xc7! ♜xc7 16. ♜xc3 with approximate equality was stronger – Black would then have a good (though not particularly effective) bishop, but not Capablanca's piece set-up!

**15... ♘d6! 16. ♘xd6 ♘b5! 17. ♜b3  
♘xd6**

Now we can see the twin of the previous example!

**18.a4 a6 19.♘e5**

Kasparov considered this move dubious and recommends **19.g3** with the idea of ♘h4-g2.

That may in fact look more solid, but nevertheless it is pretty questionable whether such a passive position could really be held in the long term.

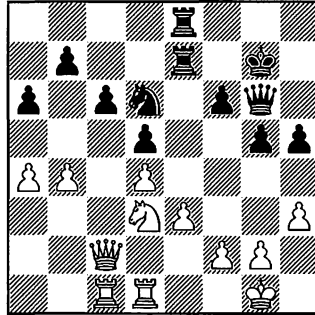
**19...♞e8 20.♞fe1 ♖g5 21.h3  
♜g7 22.♚c2 ♞e6 23.♞ac1 ♞ae8  
24.♚b1 ♚h5 25.♚b3**

Just as in the game Bobotsov-Petrosian White cannot find an active plan, whereas the black initiative on the kingside becomes more and more threatening.

**25...f6! 26.♘d3**

According to Kasparov **26.♘f3 g5 27. ♘h2** would have been stronger. Nevertheless, after **27...f5** dark clouds would be gathering over White's position.

**26...g5 27.♚d1 ♚g6 28.♚c2  
♞e7 29.♞ed1 h5**



**30.♚b1 h4 31.♚c2 g4**

Black has a strong attack.

## Technique No. 26

# Leave the opponent with his superfluous pieces

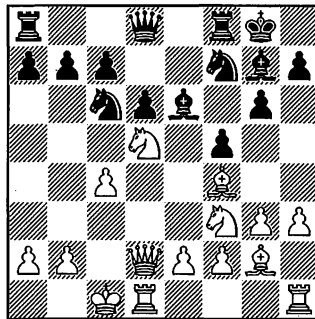
From time to time two (sometimes even three) pieces are aiming at a single, usually central, square. In that case a piece – let us call it the ‘main piece’ – then occupies the outpost, whilst the ‘reserve piece’ protects the main piece and for its part is prepared to take its place in the event of an exchange.

As Dvoretzky discovered, in such cases it often makes sense to avoid an exchange so as to leave the opponent stuck with one (or even two) ‘superfluous’ piece(s).

Here are a few examples of this:

### ► 26.1 Alekhine–Morrison

Leeds (Simultaneous) 1923



3(!) black pieces can lay claim to the e5-square. Play continued

**13...♘ce5,**

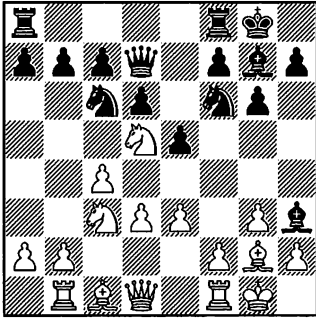
and with

**14. ♖d4!**

Alekhine left his opponent with two 'superfluous' pieces: the ♙g7 and the ♜f7.

► **26.2 Ubilava–Dvoretzky**

USSR 1969



**11... ♙xg2 12. ♖xg2**

According to Dvoretzky White absolutely has to insert **12. ♖xf6+!** here.

**12... ♜h5!**

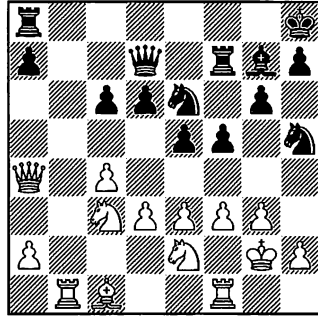
Black can make good use of this knight on the kingside. Its two white counterparts are laying claim to the d5-square. But two knights for a single square – is that not a little bit too much?! It is no surprise that the ♜c3 feels a bit superfluous.

**13.b4 f5 14.b5 ♜d8!**

The threat now is 15...c6 and then 16...f4 (⇒ *Technique No. 12, Attacking the pawn triangle*). Now a further disadvantage of the positioning of White's knights becomes clear – if the ♜c3 is to remain on its place, the ♜d5 must, after ...c7-c6, land up on b4, where it will block the b-file for its rook.

**15. ♜e2 c6 16.bxc6 bxc6 17. ♖a4 17. ♜dc3 ♜e6** with an initiative for Black.

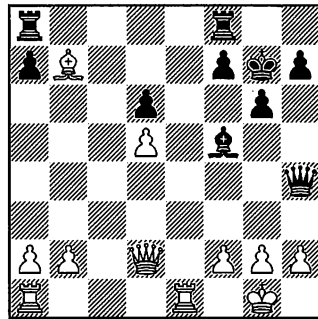
**17... ♜h8 18.f3 ♜e6 19. ♜dc3 ♜f7**



Black has considerable chances on the kingside, whereas on the other side of the board his opponent has not yet achieved anything tangible – which is not surprising considering the time he has wasted on ♜c3-d5, ♜e2-c3, ♜c3-e2, ♜d5-c3.

► **26.3 Nei–Dvoretzky**

USSR 1967



The ♖a8 is under attack. Where should it go to?

**29... ♖ae8!**

As Dvoretzky writes, after **29... ♖ab8 30. ♙c6** the ♖f8 would have become 'superfluous' – it cannot fight for the open e-file since the e8-square is inaccessible to it, and also it cannot find employment on the b-file because the other rook is already on b8.

On the other hand, if – after **29... ♖ab8 30. ♙c6** – we look at the white rooks,

we see that the first player requires both of them in order to threaten to penetrate on e7 – so after 29...♖ab8 neither of his rooks would be ‘superfluous’.

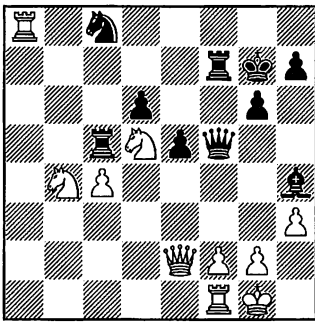
**30.♙c6 ♖xe1+ 31.♖xe1 ♖b8!**

Thanks to the idea of the rook lift ...♖b8-b4, after which the rook is very active on the fourth rank, Black does have a certain amount of compensation for the missing pawn.

The game ended in a draw.

### ► 26.4 Karpov–Dolmatov

Amsterdam 1980



**34...♘e7?**

As Mark Dvoretzky noted, this move is a mistake – both of White’s knights want to be on just one square, namely d5. That means that one of them is superfluous. A powerful argument against the exchange which Dolmatov is offering with 34...♘e7.

According to Dvoretzky Black could instead have achieved counterplay by means of 34...e4! Δ...♙e5-d4.

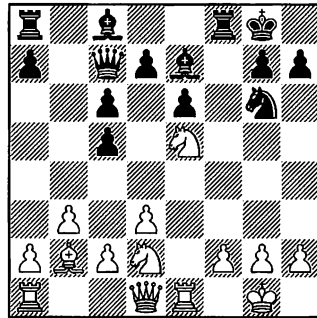
**35.♖a6 ♗d7 36.♙e4 ♘xd5 37. ♘xd5 ♙e7 38.♖fa1±**

Black now has no counterplay at all and was finally outmanoeuvred in Karpov’s inimitable fashion.

And now an astonishing example:

### ► 26.5 Wach–Glek

Linz 1997



White will not be able to hold e5 and at c4 or f3 the knights simply get into each other’s way. So:

**12...♘h8!!**

You may ask yourself why 12...♘f4 was not played with the same purpose. But after 13.♙f3! then, ...d7-d6 would be prevented for the time being.

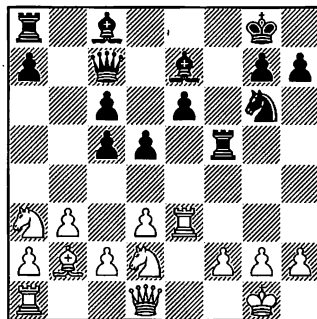
**13.♙h5 d6 14.♘ec4 ♘g6**

The scheduled return of the knight.

**15.♖e3**

The ‘superfluous’ knight can now no longer even go to f3: 15.♘f3?? ♘f4 16.♙g4 e5 17.♙g3 ♘h5 trapping the queen.

**15...♖f5 16.♙d1 d5 17.♘a3**



See what has become of the white knights! Black is dominating the centre and will soon be able to start a dangerous attack.

**17...♙d6 18.♘f1 e5 19.c4 ♙f7**

20. ♖e1 ♘d7 21. ♗g3 ♜f4 22. ♜c1  
 ♜f8 23. ♜c2 e4!

After this pawn sacrifice the black knight obtains the lovely e5-square which at the start was still occupied by White.

The latter's position can no longer be held.

24. dxe4

24. cxd5 exd3 25. ♜xd3 cxd5 ♜f7.

24...d4! 25. ♜d3 ♗e5 26. ♜dd2 ♖g6  
 27. ♘c1 h5! 28. ♜d1 h4 29. ♘xf4  
 ♜xf4 30. ♖a5

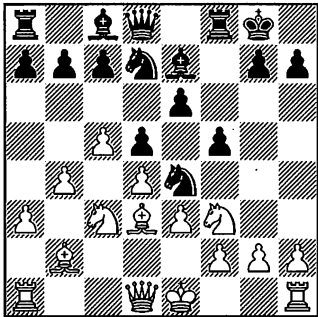
30. ♗e2 ♗f3+ winning.

30...hxg3 31. hxg3 ♜f8 32. ♜e1  
 ♗g4! 33. ♖xa7 ♖h5 34. ♖xd7  
 ♖h2+ 35. ♗f1 d3 0-1

There is another related reason for avoiding the exchange of pieces and preferring to retreat a piece, namely whenever the cooperation between opposing pieces is disrupted by lack of space. Then too your opponent should be left to the 'suffering' caused by his superfluous pieces.

## ► 26.6 Petrosian–Fischer

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade  
 (Candidates' tournament) 1959



Black has a cramped position – but does not the nice central position of the ♗e4 compensate for that, at least up to a certain point?

11. ♗e2!

Why does White absolutely want to avoid the exchange of Black's beautiful knight? The answer is simple: after the inevitable ♗f3-e5 and then f2-f3 that knight cannot hang on to its proud position. And if White manages to do this, then it makes more sense to prevent the exchange on c3 and to force the retreat of the ♗e4, thus leaving his opponent, who is suffering from a lack of space, with as many pieces as possible.

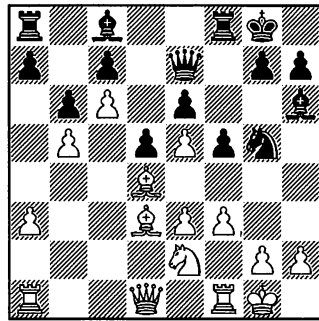
11...♗f6 12. 0-0 ♖e7 13. ♗e5  
 ♗xe5 14. dxe5± ♘g5 15. ♘d4

Now 16.f3 is being threatened and the ♘g5 must take a step backwards so as to leave the g5-square to its knight, all of which, however, leads to a position which is lacking in harmony. You can see how on account of the lack of space the black pieces get in each other's way.

15...♘h6 16. f3 ♗g5 17. c6! b6

Or 17...bxc6 18. ♘c5.

18. b5



Now the ♘c8 is also shut in forever. The ♜a8 can only escape this fate by an exchange.

18...a6 19. a4 axb5 20. axb5 ♜xa1  
 21. ♖xa1

Black may have swapped off his passive rook, but in return White now dominates the just opened a-file.

21...♗f7 22. ♖c3 ♖h4 23. ♜a1 ♗g5  
 24. ♖e1 ♖h5 25. ♜a7 ♖g6 26. ♗h1

And White soon won.

## Chapter VII

# Working with the king

In this chapter we shall deal with various aspects of the safety of the king:

- How to get the king into the corner 'on foot' as it were.
- How to evacuate it from endangered zones by even longer route marches.
- How to strengthen the pawn shield of the king with the right recapture on g3/g6.
- And in *Technique No. 30* we shall finally see just how dangerous an attack on the h-file can be.

### Technique No. 27

## Artificial castling

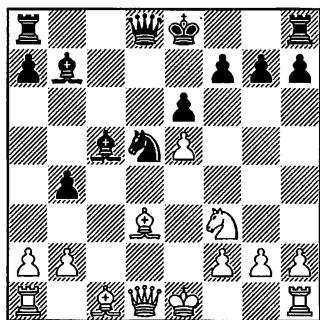
Sometimes 'normal' castling is not or not easily possible, or the opponent has prevented it by a check. Then artificial castling can be the only way to get the king to safety – by it walking across to the kingside and with the rook coming into play only later.

In various opening variations artificial castling is the order of the day.

We shall first consider variations involving a type of position from the Meran Variation and then take a short look at a main line from the Volga-Benkö Gambit.

### ► 27.1 Uhlmann–Larsen

Las Palmas 1971



This is a typical position from the Meran Variation after 1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.♘c3 e6 5.e3 ♘bd7 6.♙d3 dxc4 7.♙xc4 b5 8.♙d3 ♙b7 9.e4 b4 10.♘a4 c5 etc.

**14.♙b5+**

With this move White prevents Black from castling kingside.

At first glance this looks unpleasant for the second player, but in reality nothing bad has happened!

**14...♙e7**

Larsen plans to develop his queen and to bring the ♖h8 to d8 after which the king can wander via f8 to g8 – this idea was carried out with no problem in the game.

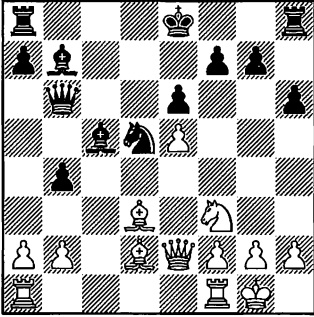
An alternative to it was 14...♙f8 intending ...h7-h6, ...g7-g6, ...♙g7.

**15.0-0 ♖b6 16.♙d3 h6 17.♗e2 ♗hd8 18.♙d2 ♙f8 19.♞ac1 ♞ac8 20.♞c2 a5 21.♞fc1 ♙g8 22.h3 ♘e7**

Black has a very comfortable game. He was going to win after 14 more moves.

► 27.2 Utemov–Dreev

Gorki 1989



16...0-0 would run into 17.♖e4 ♘f6  
18.♗h4± with strong attacking threats.  
But how can Black get his king to safety?

**16...♗f8!**

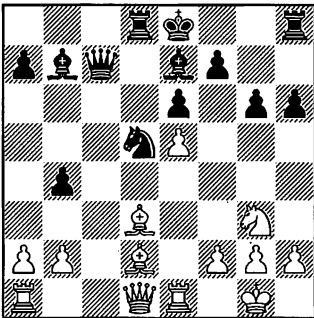
Intending ...g7-g6 and then ...♗f8-g7.

**17.h4 g6 18.♘h2 ♙d4 19.♞ab1  
♞d8 20.♘f3 ♙c5 21.♞bc1 ♖g7  
22.♞c2 ♘e7 23.h5 ♘f5 24.♙f4 g5,**

and Black seized the initiative.

► 27.3 Epishin–Dreev

Tilburg 1994



This situation is very similar to the one  
in the previous example. Black cannot

castle, because that would leave the ♖h6  
unprotected. So:

**19...♗f8! 20.♞c1 ♗b6 21.♗e2  
♘g7 22.♙c4 ♗d4 23.♙b3 h5  
24.♞ed1 ♗b6**

With chances for both sides.

► 27.4 Volga–Benkő Gambit

Theoretical variation

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 c5 3.d5 b5 4.cxb5  
a6 5.bxa6 ♙xa6 6.♘c3 d6 7.♘f3  
g6 8.e4!**

The most straightforward! After **8.g3**  
♙g7 9.♙g2 0-0 10.0-0 ♘bd7 11.♗c2  
♗a5 the ♙g2 would remain ineffective.

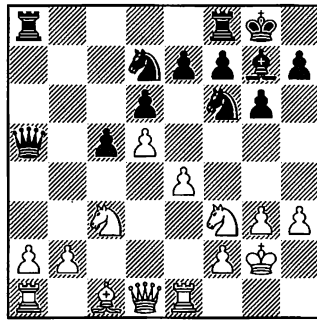
**8...♙xf1 9.♗xf1 ♙g7 10.g3**

Or even the longer way with **10.h3** 0-0  
11.♗g1 ♘bd7 12.♗h2 ♗a5 13.♞e1.

**10...0-0 11.♗g2 ♘bd7 12.h3**

After **12.♞e1** the move **12...♘g4** gives  
counterplay.

**12...♗a5 13.♞e1**



The white king position is secured in  
exemplary fashion. Of course after  
**13...♞fb8** Black retains play on the  
queenside in return for his pawn.

## Technique No. 28

# The precautionary evacuation of the king

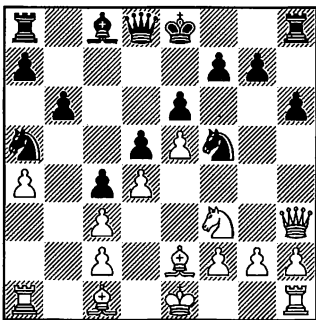
In this section we shall deal with examples in which the king sets off on a journey to the opposite wing. This can be for purely defensive purposes, namely should it appear that otherwise a flank attack by the opponent cannot be warded off. Or there can often be aggressive ulterior motives. One is planning an attack oneself but, however, one would first like to get one's own king to safety.

The subject is much more diverse than 'artificial castling' (to some extent a special case of the king's journey!); consequently this section is noticeably longer.

We would like to exclude purely tactical king hunts, which, e.g., result from provocative opening variations (for example, 1.e4 ♟f6 2.e5 ♟d5 3.d4 d6 4.♟f3 dxе5 5.♟xe5 ♟d7!? with the invitation to 6.♟xf7 ♟xf7 7.♞h5+ ♟e6) – as always in this book the principal concern is planning and strategy!

### ► 28.1 Becker–Nimzowitsch

Breslau 1925



The threat is 14.g4 ♟e7 15.g5 h5 16.g6! ♟xg6 17.♟g5 and then 18.♞g1, after

which dangerous threats rear their head on the kingside.

What counter-measures can Black take?

**13...♟d7!**

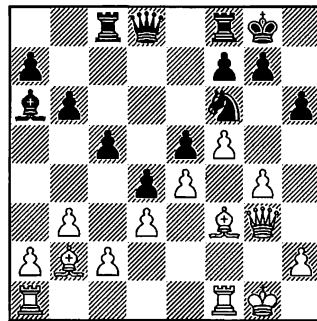
The king heads to the queenside, where it will feel much safer. Moreover, this move anticipates g4-g5 – the ♞h8 is now protected and ...hxg5 is possible.

**14.g4 ♟e7 15.♟d2 ♞e8!? 16.♞a3 ♟c7**

With the king's journey to c7 Black has defused the white threats on the kingside. In addition he has cleared the e8-square for the queen, from where the latter is attacking the ♖a4. Nimzowitsch won this game after a complicated struggle.

### ► 28.2 Nimzowitsch–Buerger

London 1927



**19...♞e8?**

According to Nimzowitsch Black should immediately commence measures for the evacuation of his king: 19...♟d7 20.h4 f6 21.♞c1 ♟f7 22.g5 hxg5 23.hxg5 ♞h8 followed by ...♟f7-e7-d6-c7-b8. 'Later one could consider ...b6-b5 and then ...c5-c4.' (Nimzowitsch)

**20.h4 ♖h7**

20...♗d7 21.g5 with a strong attack.

**21.♙c1 f6 22.♞f2 ♞c7**

Unfortunately the escape plan no longer works: 22...♖f7 23.g5 hxg5 24.hxg5 ♗e7 25.gxf6+ +–.

Later too the black king will no longer have a chance to take to its heels – its previous indecisiveness will have cost it its life.

**23.♞g2 ♖e7**

23...♖f7 24.g5+–.

**24.♖h3 ♞c6**

23...♖f7 24.g5+–.

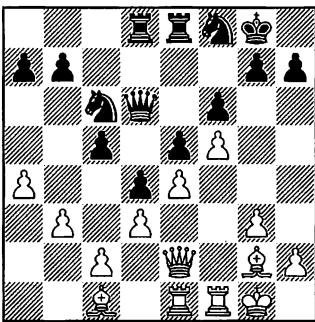
**25.♙d2 ♞d8 26.♖h1 ♞dd6 27.a4 ♙c8 28.♞ag1 a6 29.♞h2 ♖h8**

Once more 29...♖f7 or 29...♖f8 would be the signal for 30.g5+–.

**30.g5 fxg5 31.hxg5 b5 32.axb5 axb5 33.♖h4 c4 34.gxh6 ♖xh4 35.hxg7+ 1-0**

► **28.3 Romanovsky–Vilner**

Moscow 1927



White is hoping to mount a highly dangerous attack on the king by g3-g4-g5 (with or without h2-h4). Can his opponent avoid this fate?

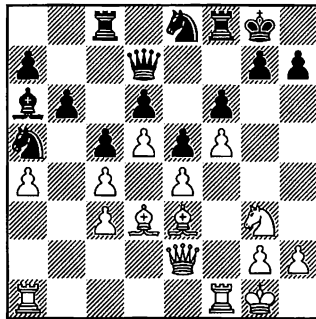
**26...♖f7! 27.g5 ♖e7 28.♞f3 ♖d7 29.♞g3 ♖c8 30.gxf6 gxf6 31.♙f3 ♗d7 32.♖g2 a5 33.♙h5 ♞e7**

**34.♞g8 ♗b6 35.♙h6 ♞c7 36.♞d1 ♗b4 37.♞d2 ♖b8±**

White may still have the initiative, but the black king is now out of danger.

► **28.4 R.Byrne–Kotov**

New York 1954



White ties his hopes quite clearly to the plan g2-g4-g5. For the opposing king there is only one sensible decision – flight.

**17...♖f7! 18.♞f3**

18.♖h5+ ♖e7 19.♖xh7 ♙xc4∞.

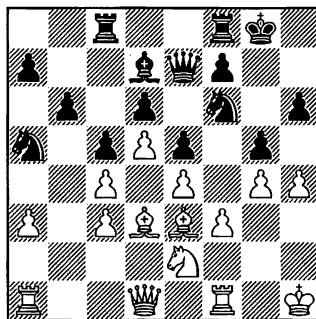
**18...♖e7 19.♗f1 ♖d8 20.♞h3 ♞h8 21.g4 ♖c7 22.♗g3 ♖b8**

The black king is out of danger, and the game later ended in a draw.

In the following example the escape route via f7 must first be dug out:

► **28.5 Kotov–Plater**

Moscow 1947





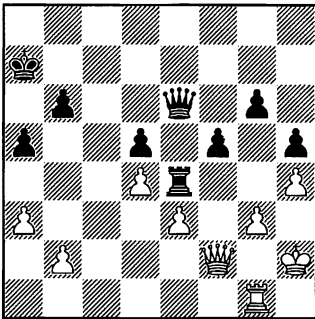
kingside. But if he starts doing so immediately, his own king will be in danger. The solution is to first bring his own monarch to safety, and specifically to a7!

**63...a5! 64.h4 ♖g6 65.♔h2 h5  
66.♖g2 ♖h6 67.♜f2 g6 68.♜f1  
♖g7 69.♜f2 ♖f7 70.♔h2 ♖e7  
71.♞e2 ♖c1 72.♚f2 ♖d7 73.♞e1  
♖c6 74.♖g2 ♜g4 75.♜f1  
75.♞e2 ♞e4 76.♔h2 ♖c1 77.♖g2 ♖d1  
78.♔h2 ♖d3 and then ...♔c7-b7-a7.**

**75...♖c7 76.♚f3 ♖c8 77.♚f2  
♖b8 78.♔h3 ♖a7**

The evacuation has been completed and the breakthrough ...g6-g5 is on the cards.

**79.♜g1 ♖d7 80.♔h2 ♖d6 81.♔h3  
♖c6 82.♞e1 ♖e6 83.♔h2 ♖e4  
84.♔h3 ♖e6 85.♔h2 ♖e7 86.♔h3  
♖e4 87.♜g1 ♖e6 88.♔h2 ♞e4**



**89.♞c1**

As Cohn feared after the natural 89.♞e1 the typical move 89...g5!, e.g. 90.hxg5 h4 91.gxh4 f4 92.g6 f3. Let us look a bit further into that variation: 93.g7 ♖d6+ 94.♖g1 ♜g4+ 95.♔f1 ♞xg7 96.♚xf3 ♖h2-+ or 93.♚g3 ♜g4 94.♚xf3 ♞xh4+ 95.♖g2 ♚xg6+ 96.♔f1 ♞h7-+ – in fact White has no chances of survival.

But after the text move too, the struggle did not go on for long.

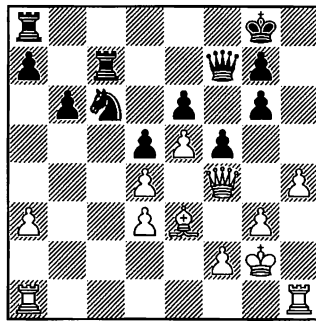
**89...♞xe3 90.♚f4 ♞e2+ 91.♔h3  
♖a6 92.b4 axb4 93.axb4 ♖b5 94.**

**♞c7 ♖e4 95.♚xe4 ♞xe4 96.♜g7  
♞e6 97.♞d7 ♖c4 98.♖g2 ♖xd4  
99.♖f3 ♖c4 100.b5 d4 0-1**

We have seen some examples from Nimzowitsch. It is known that Petrosian, world champion from 1963-69, made a particularly intensive study of his games and he shows himself to be a worthy successor:

► **28.8 Diez del Corral–Petrosian**

Palma de Mallorca 1969

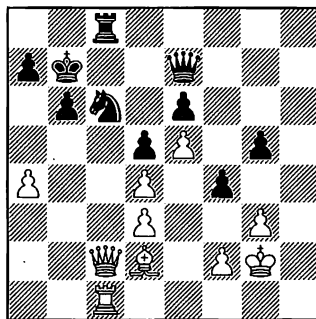


White wants to get in h4-h5, which can have unpleasant consequences for Black's king.

**22...♖f8! 23.♚g5 ♖e8 24.♞ac1  
♖d7 25.h5 gxh5 26.♞xh5 ♜g8  
27.♞h7 ♖c8 28.♚h4 ♚g6 29.  
♞h8 ♞xh8 30.♚xh8+ ♖b7**

But here the black king feels better.

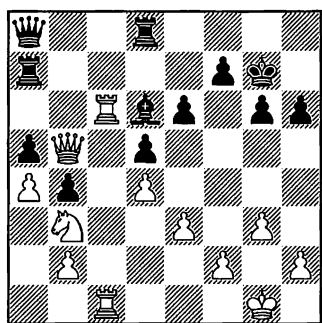
**31.♚f8 ♞c8 32.♚d6 ♖e8 33.a4  
♞d8 34.♚a3 ♖e7 35.♚c3 ♞c8  
36.♞d2 g5 37.♚c2 f4**



Finally the aggressive element in the flight of the king: now it is the white monarch which has to be worried.

► **28.9 Petrosian–Unzicker**

Hamburg 1960



Black has protected everything on the queenside and without a pawn storm on the other part of the board it will not be easy for White to exploit his positional advantage (the principle of the two weaknesses!).

But an immediate pawn attack would also put his own king in danger, so there followed:

**29.♔f1! ♚g8 30.h4 h5 31.♖c2!**

In order to clear the c1-square for the king.

**31...♚h7 32.♚e1! ♚g8 33.♚d1!**

**♚h7 34.♚c1! ♚g8 35.♚b1!**

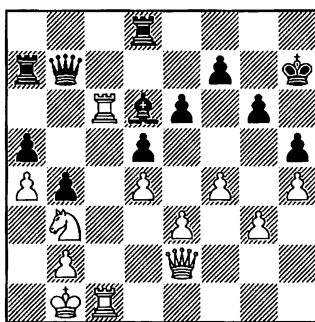
The stroll is over and now White can concentrate on the preparation of the pawn storm on the kingside.

**35...♚h7 36.♚e2 ♚b7 37.♖c1**

**♚g7 38.♚b5! ♚a8**

Hopeless would be **38...♚xb5 39.axb5 a4 40.b6 ♖ad7 (40...♖aa8 41.b7 ♖ab8 42.♗a5)** 41.♗a5 ♖a8 42.♖xd6! ♖xd6 43.b7 ♖b8 44.♖c8 ♖d8 45.♖xd8 ♖xd8 46.♗c6+-.

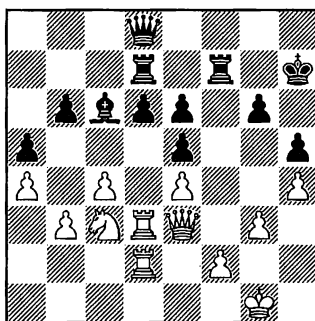
**39.f4 ♚h7 40.♚e2 ♚b7**



**41.g4! hxg4 42.♚xg4 ♚e7 43.h5,**  
and 1-0 after another twelve moves.

► **28.10 Petrosian–Ljubojevic**

Manila 1974



For the time being the weak ♖d6 is sufficiently protected. If White brings his queen to d1, there follows ...♚d8-f6, and on account of the counter-attack on f2 the ♖d6 still cannot be taken.

For that reason Petrosian plans to open a second front on the kingside by g3-g4 – after that it will be difficult for the black pieces to protect their king and at the same time to take care of the ♖d6. But first:

**50.♚f1!**

The king heads for the queenside where, after a future g3-g4, it will not disrupt the coordination of its own pieces and where it will itself be out of all danger.

**50...♖f8 51.♚e1! ♚c7 52.♚d1!**  
**♖f6 53.♚c2! ♚d8 54.f3!**

Now the preparation of g3-g4 can start.

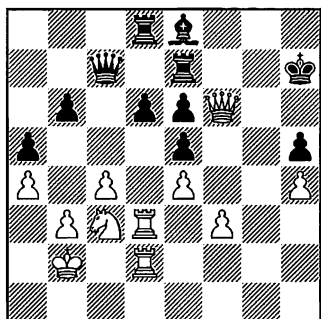
**54...♖ff7 55.♖g1! ♖c7 56.♗b2!**

Extra security can do no harm. With his king on c2, there are some lines in which White would have to reckon with ...d6-d5.

**56...♗d8 57.♖d1 ♖fd7 58.g4!**

The time is ripe!

**58...♗h8 59.♖g1 ♗g7 60.♖e3 ♗h7 61. ♖g5 ♗e8 62.♖f6 ♗e7 63.gxh5 gxh5**

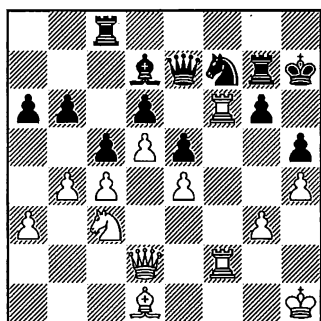


**64.♗g2 ♖dd7 65.♗b5 ♖c5 66. ♖xd6!+-**

Things turn out as they were always going to – the double task of protecting his king while still keeping an eye on the ♗d6 turned out to be impossible for Black to fulfil. But do not forget: White did not start his attack on the king until he had evacuated his own monarch!

### ► 28.11 F.Olafsson–Gligoric

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade  
(Candidates' tournament) 1959



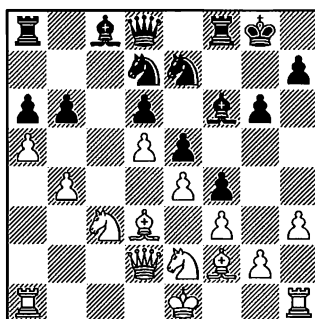
Before White becomes more active on the kingside (e.g. he can try to prepare the breakthrough g3-g4), he closes off the queenside in order to bring his king to safety here – in addition there it will not get in the way of its own pieces.

**31.b5! a5 32.♗e2 ♖b8 33.♖d1 ♗g8 34.♖d2 ♖b7 35.♗g1 ♗c8 36.♗h2 ♖d8 37.♗g1 ♗e7 38. ♗f1 ♗h3+ 39.♗e1 ♗h7 40.♗d1 ♗h6 41.♗c2±**

Now White can continue the development of his initiative on the kingside with a clear conscience.

### ► 28.12 Botvinnik–Ostojic

Belgrade 1969



This type of position is characteristic of the King's Indian Defence. In this sort of pawn structure White normally develops his initiative on the queenside, whilst Black's counter-chances are generally linked to the pawn storm ...g6-g5, ...h7-h5; ...g5-g4 on the kingside.

**17.♖a2!**

A useful move – now Black has to reckon with the doubling of the white rooks either on the a- or on the c-file. Botvinnik does not hurry either to castle kingside or to exchange on b6 – and in doing so sets a positional trap.

**17...b5?!**

Black's desire to avoid the opening of another file on the queenside (a5xb6) is perfectly understandable. He was probably considering that White can now castle kingside, double rooks on the c-file and will when appropriate sacrifice a piece on b5. In such a case the plan ...g6-g5, ...h7-h5, ...g5-g4 would in fact represent a strong 'counter-trump'.

**18.♔d1!!**

It becomes clear why White did not want to castle on the previous move. After ...b6-b5 the queenside is practically closed and the white king can find a quiet place there. Now it is suddenly not Black but White who is aiming to open files on the kingside.

**18...♖f7 19.♔c1! ♖c7 20.♔b1! ♖b7 21.♖c1**

But first Botvinnik tries to cash in on the open c-file.

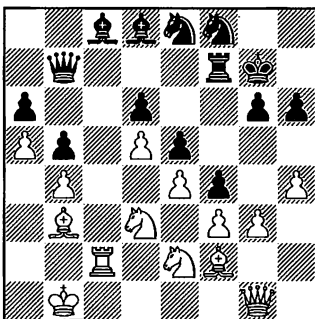
**21...♗f8 22.♙c2 ♙d7 23.♙b3 ♔g7 24.♖ac2 ♗g8 25.♗d1 ♙d8 26.♗b2 ♗f6 27.♗d3**

The ideal square for the knight – now at any moment Black has to reckon with both ♗d(e)xf4 and ♗d3-c5.

**27...♗e8**

Black has covered all his weaknesses on the queenside, but now comes the most threatening part of White's plan – the attack on the kingside.

**28.h4! h6 29.♖d1! ♖c8 30.♖g1! ♖xc2 31.♖xc2 ♙c8 32.g3!**



**32...fxg3 33.♖xg3 ♗f6 34.♖g2 ♗h5 35.♗g3 ♗xg3**

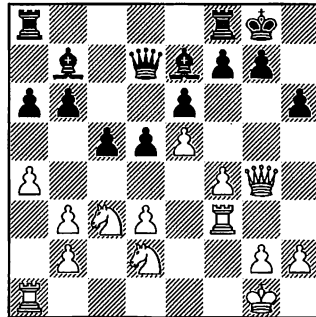
**35...♗f4** was bad on account of **36.♗xf4 exf4 37.♗e2 ♗d7 38.♗d4 ♗e5 39.♗e6+ ♙xe6 40.dxe6 ♖c7 41.h5** (Botvinnik).

**36.♖xg3 ♖c7 37.f4! ♖xc2 38.♙xc2 exf4 39.♙d4+ ♔h7 40.♖xf4 ♖e7 41.e5 dxe5 42.♙xe5 ♗d7 43.♙b2 ♖f8 44.h5 ♖xf4 45.♗xf4 ♔g8 46.hxg6 1-0**

In the following example we see for the first time the motif in which Black finally becomes active on the wing to which he has evacuated his king:

► **28.13 Vshivkov–S.Terekhin**

USSR 1989



White's pawn structure is compromised, but his attacking chances on the kingside should really not be under-estimated. Would it not be wonderful for Black, if his king were on the queenside? An apparent unrealisable dream, isn't it?

**18...g6!**

This may look like prophylaxis against a threat of mate on g7, but the point of the move is much more profound – Black frees his king from the necessity of defending the g-pawn.

**19.♖h3**

Both after 19.h4?! h5 and also in the event of 19.♖g3?! ♔g7 20.h4 h5! 21.♗xh5 ♖h8 22.♗f3 ♖xh4 the white activity would be extinguished.

19...♔g7 20.♖f1

The knight rushes up in support (♖f1-g3-h5).

20...♖h8!

Now the ♖h6 is protected one more time ...

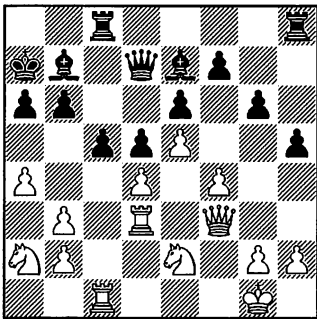
21.♖g3 ♔f8!

... and the king may flee, in order to realise his dream of a peaceful life on the queenside!

22.♖f1?!

Losing a tempo, but perhaps White has not yet worked out Black's plan. 22.♖c1 was stronger.

22...♔e8! 23.♖ge2 ♔d8! 24.d4 ♔c7 25.♖c1 ♔b8 26.♖d3 h5 27.♗f3 ♔a7 28.♖a2?! ♖ac8!



Now the king is in safety and Black may consider active play.

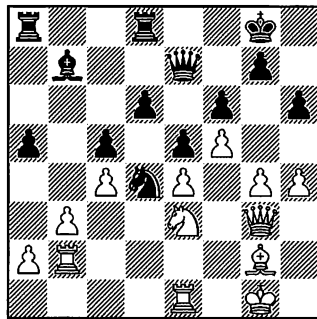
29.♖dc3 c4!? 30.bxc4?! dxc4

Unlike for example Nos. 28.2 to 28.5, one cannot actually state in the next example that Black is fighting for survival – White's plan with g4-g5 which is in the offing may, however, represent a natural counterweight to the black trump cards (the strong ♖d4, the idea of ...a5-a4).

But over and above that, should one consider Portisch's flight with ...♔f8-e8-d8 as a hint of attacking ambitions of his own on the kingside? Yanofsky thinks, 'yes, probably' – and decides to close it with h4-h5. After that the black king doubles back and Portisch can in this famous manoeuvring game lay his other trumps on the table unmolested:

### ► 28.14 Yanofsky–Portisch

Stockholm (Interzonal tournament) 1962



Black's trumps should not be underestimated. There are two things in his favour: the giant on d4, which White cannot so easily exchange against his own knight (after ♖c2xd4 e5xd4 Black would obtain a passed pawn, whilst at the same time the ♖e4 becomes very weak) as well as the opportunity for active play on the queenside with ...a5-a4.

White is hoping that his bastions on the queenside will stand firm, whilst at the same time the possibility of counterplay with g4-g5 should worry the second player.

30...♔f8

The king takes a step in the direction of the queenside – if things become too hot for it on the kingside, it will continue.

30...a4 would still be premature: after 31.bxa4 ♖xa4 32.♗f2 ♖da8 33.♖eb1

the a-pawn is protected and the b-file for White.

**31.♖h2 ♘c6 32.♞d5 ♘xd5!**

That is the difference between the two knights – the white one can be exchanged without Black having to reckon with any positional disadvantages as a result.

**33.cxd5 ♞db8**

With the threats ...a5-a4 or ...c5-c4.

**34.♞eb1 ♞b7**

Planning to renew with ...♞ab8 the threats of ...a5-a4 or ...c5-c4. White takes a decision regarding his pawn structure on the queenside:

**35.a4 ♞ab8**

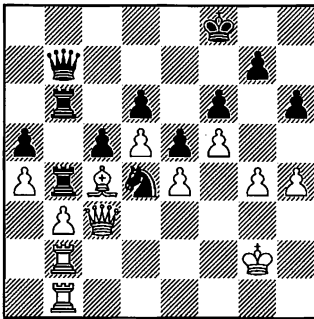
This threatens, as was mentioned, ...c5-c4, so White takes control of that square.

**36.♙f1 ♞b4 37.♙c4 ♞8b6 38.♙g2 ♞b7**

Threatening ...♞xc4.

**39.♞c3**

White has apparently set up an impregnable fortress. Of course the ♖b3 requires protection, but it seems to be sufficiently covered and White does not have any other weakness. Have you any idea how Black can cash in on his positional advantage?



**39...♙e8!!**

The 'principle of the two weaknesses' (⇒ *Technique No. 45*): if possible Black wants to open the play on the kingside

with ...h6-h5 or ...g7-g6, so that he can also become active there. Then it becomes much more difficult for White to devote enough attention not only to the ♖b3, but also to his kingside. But first of all the black monarch must make its way over to the queenside, since otherwise the idea of activity on the kingside could turn out to be like a boomerang.

What is very interesting here is that Black also wants to attack just where in relation to the pawn structure his position is seemingly inferior and where the opening of the game (g4-g5) would actually have been expected earlier on from his opponent.

**40.♙f2 ♙d8! 41.h5!?**

White spots the danger and finally closes the kingside. Now the position looks like a dead draw, or is it!?

**41...♙e7!!**

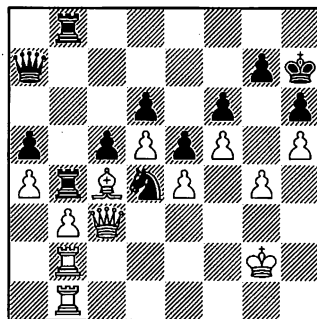
In no way! Soon the breakthrough opportunity spotted by Portisch on the queenside will become clear, but for the moment his king returns to the kingside where it need no longer have any fear of g4-g5 and thus feels itself safest.

**42.♙g2**

White can in any case undertake nothing and so waits to see ...

**42...♙f8 43.♙f2 ♙f7 44.♙g2 ♙g8**

**45.♙f2 ♙h7 46.♙e3 ♞a7 47.♙f2 ♞b8 48.♙g2**



**48...♖xc4!!**

That is what Portisch was intending! This exchange sacrifice makes it possible to penetrate the opponent's camp.

**49.♖xc4**

The alternative was **49.bxc4**, which would be followed by **49...♖b4**. Though he is ahead by the exchange, it would be very difficult for White to hold this position. All his pieces are – unlike the black ones – passive, the a4- and c4-pawns are weak, whilst the ♔d4 could hardly wish for a better square. Should White at some point exchange on b4, then after ...a5xb4 or ...c5xb4 he would have to take up the struggle against the passed b-pawn. Nevertheless that was a lesser evil than what happened to him in the game.

**49...♖b4 50.♖c3 ♖a6! 51.♕f2 c4! 52.bxc4 ♖xc4 53.♖a3**

Or **53.♖d3 ♖c8** with the serious threat of **54...♖c3**.

**53...♖c8 54.♖d2 ♖c3 55.♖b2**

**55.♖xd6 ♖f3+ 56.♕g1 ♖c3-+.**

**55.♖a2 ♖f3+ 56.♕g2 ♖c3-+.**

**55...♖c4 56.♕g2 ♔b3 57.♖e2 ♖d3 58.♖be1 ♔d4 59.♕h1 ♖h3+ 60.♖h2 ♖f3+ 61.♕g1 ♖g3+ 62. ♕f1 ♔f3 0-1**

Whenever one takes a look at this game, the question could well be whether Portisch could not have already sacrificed the exchange on move 39 (see last diagram but one) thus rendering obsolete the subject of the 'king march'.

The following comments could be made:

- If White had not closed the kingside by h4-h5, he would probably also have got into difficulties (after finishing the king march and ...h6-h5 or ...g7-g6); in that case Portisch would not even have had to 'risk' the exchange sacrifice.
- After the 'threatened' king march + pawn breakthrough ...h6-h5/...g7-g6 had provoked the advance h4-h5, Black would no longer have to worry at all about counterplay with g4-g5. After the return of his king (...♕d8-e7-f8-f7-g8-h7) he could concentrate totally on his play on the queenside. Without the moves h4-h5 the idea of an exchange sacrifice would have been rather dubious in view of the possible file opening after g4-g5.

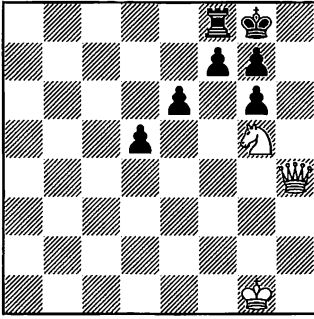
**Technique No. 29**

**h2xg3 (...h7xg6) or f2xg3 (...f7xg6)?**

For this question, which could also have been put in *Chapter IV* (The rook pawn) or *Chapter VI* (Some aspects of piece exchanges), it is above all the idea of the safety of the king which has a role to play! The natural reaction to the frequent exchange on g6 (g3) is to recapture with

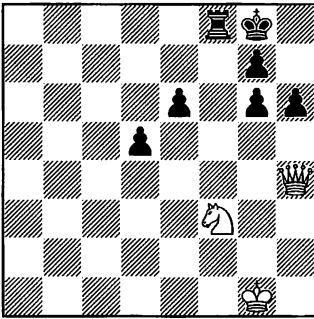
...h7xg6 (h2xg3), in other words towards the centre so as to preserve a compact pawn phalanx. But this reaction is in no way always the correct one. From time to time the opponent can set up dangerous mating threats after ...h7xg6, e.g. in this constellation:

**Attacking pattern with ♔+♘**



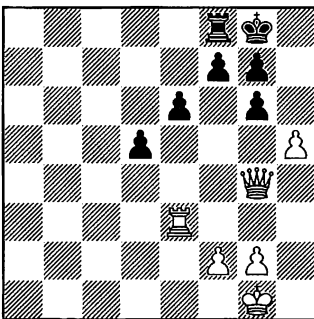
After ...f7xg6 there are hardly any ways to set up serious threats with ♔+♘ – often enough the simple ...h7-h6 is sufficient:

**Defensive pattern with ...fxg6, ...h7-h6**



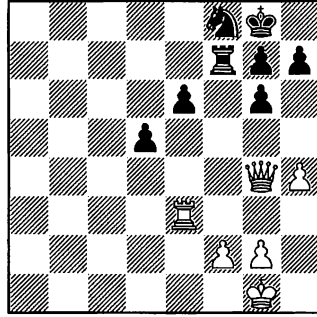
A further attacking motif in the event of ...h7xg6 is h4-h5 along with the opening of the h-file for the major pieces:

**Attacking pattern with ♔, ♖ and h-pawn**



Here it is the same: the situation after ...f7xg6 is far less threatening:

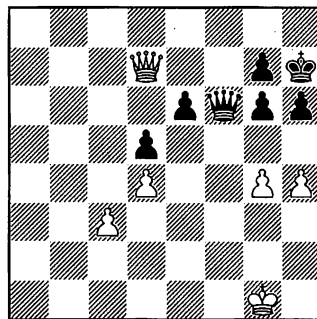
**Defensive pattern against h4-h5**

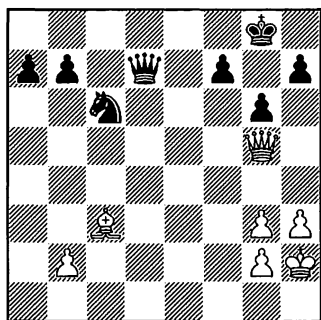


Here, after h4-h5 and an exchange on h5, Black can still play, according to the situation, either ...h7-h6 or ...g7-g6. Even the prophylactic ...h7-h6 (before h4-h5) is worth considering so as to leave the h-pawn to come to nothing after h4-h5 ...g6-g5. Thus White cannot open a file and his attack is never dangerous.

A further consideration in favour of fxg3 or ...fxg6 is the possible hiding place on h2/h7, where the king is safely protected from all pestering by the opposing queen:

**Pattern with the hiding place on h2/h7**





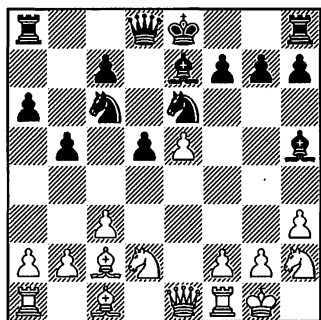
But there can be a further reason to recapture with  $f2xg3/\dots f7xg6$ , namely the *opening of the f-file in order to attack*. Here the externals can look very different from position to position.

Let us start with that very motif. This long section is subdivided; of course the motifs (for example  $f2xg3$  primarily to get chances for the initiative on the f-file and secondly for the security of one's own king) can be intertwined:

### 1) $f2xg3/\dots f7xg6$ for an initiative on the f-file

#### ► 29.1 Alekhine–Rubinstein

Vilnius (All-Russian ch) 1912



14...g6! 15.g6 f7xg6!

Here  $15\dots hxg6$  was just as playable, which would have led to an approximately level position. But Rubinstein

spots that the alternative  $\dots f7xg6$  offers him more prospects – since after king-side castling the black rook will be very active on the semi-open f-file.

16.g3

After 16.f4 0-0 17.g3 a5 (another interesting move is  $17\dots b4!$ ?) the black initiative should not be under-estimated, e.g. 18.e3 a4 19.d4 cxd4 20.cxd4 c5 21.dxc5 d4 22.e2 d5.

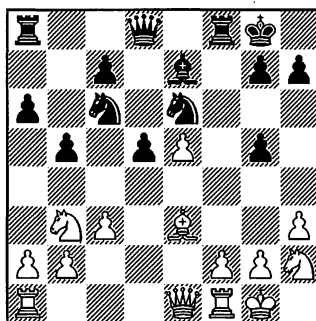
16...g5

It is questionable whether this move is necessary. There was a good alternative in  $16\dots 0-0!$ , and in the event of 17.f4 the position from the previous note would arise.

17.e3?!

As soon as becomes clear, this is not the best decision. It was worth considering  $17.f4!$  gxf4 18.exf4 0-0 19.g3. There is also Gelfand's interesting idea  $17.\text{W}e2$ , which activates both the queen and the f1.

17...0-0



18.g3?

It is astonishing that such a dynamic player as Alekhine completely under-estimates the significance of the semi-open f-file.

The correct move was 18.d4 cxd4 19.cxd4, although Black would also then achieve the more active position by  $19\dots c5$  20.dxc5 d4 21.e2 cxc5 ( $21\dots a5!$ ) 22.

b4 ♖e6 (stronger than 22...♘d3 23.♚e4 ♘xb4 24.♗f3, roughly =) 23.♚e4 ♜c8 Δ...♜c4.

After the text move Rubinstein could have exploited the semi-open f-file with great effect – 18...♜xf3! 19.gxf3 ♖xe5 with a clear advantage. In the game this exchange sacrifice was played one move later:

**18...♚d7? 19.♚d2?**

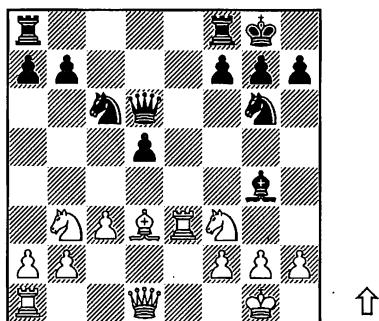
19.♖bd4 was required with chances for both sides.

**19...♜xf3! 20.gxf3 ♖xe5 21.♚e2 ♜f8 22.♗d2 ♗g6! 23.♜fe1 ♖d6--+**  
**24.f4 ♖exf4 25.♚f1 ♖xh3+ 26.♗h1 g4 27.♚e2 ♚f5 0-1**

There is no doubt that this game made a strong impression on Alekhine – the following example shows impressively how he was inspired by Rubinstein's idea ...f7xg6!:

## ► 29.2 Spielmann–Alekhine

New York 1927



The black pawn structure is a disadvantage on account of the isolated pawn on d5. In such positions it is generally recommended to the side playing against the IQP to swap off minor pieces:

**14.♖xg6! fxg6!**

A wise decision. After the automatic **14...hxg6 15.h3 ♖e6 16.♚d2** Black

would have absolutely no activity and no compensation for the weakness of his ♖d5. After the text move on the other hand, he can hope for counter-chances on the f-file which has now been opened.

**15.h3 ♖f5 16.♖bd4 ♜ad8**

**16...♖e4?!** would be weaker: **17.♖xc6 ♚xc6** (17...♖xf3 18.♖e7+ ♚xe7 19.♜xe7 ♖xd1 20.♜xd1±, 17...bxc6?? 18.♜xe4+-) **18.♗d4 ♚f6 19.f3±**. But now Black is in fact planning ...♖e4, on account of which White exchanges this bishop.

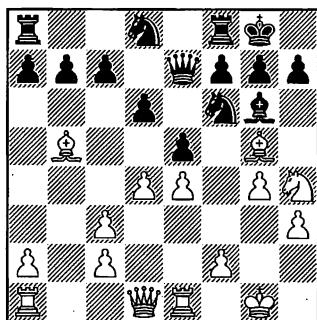
**17.♖xf5 ♜xf5 18.♚e2 ♜df8!**

The active position of the rook on the semi-open f-file keeps White from simply dealing with the IQP on d5. For the moment the ♗f3 cannot move and in certain circumstances White also has to reckon with counterplay based on ...g6-g5, ...h7-h5, ...g5-g4. In addition the idea of ...d5-d4 remains in the offing.

The game finished as a draw.

## ► 29.3 Wolf–Rubinstein

Teplitz-Schönau 1922



**13...h6! 14.♖xg6?**

This changes his opponent's pawn structure, but that simply plays into Black's hands – after the exchange he obtains strong pressure down the f-file.

The correct way was **14.♗f5 ♖xf5 15.♖xf6 ♚xf6 16.exf5** with approximate equality.

14...fxg6 15.♙c4+ ♖h7 16.♙h4  
g5 17.♙g3

White has retained his bishop pair, though in this closed position it cannot deploy its potential strength, whilst the f-file, which will soon be opened, and in particular the weakness of f4 on it provide Black with attacking chances on the kingside.

17...♗f7

♠...♗h8!-g6-f4.

18.♖f3

Here Bogoljubow pleaded in favour of 18.♙xf7!? ♖xf7 19.f3, but even then thanks to his pressure on the weak ♗f3 and White's compromised pawn structure on the queenside Black would be clearly better.

18...♖ae8 19.♖e3 b6 20.♙b5

20.♙xf7!?

20...♖d8 21.a4 ♗h8

21...a5!?

22.a5 ♗g6 23.f3 ♗f4

Here Razuvaev recommends 23...♗h8!? and then ...♗h7 – Black could then play ...♗g6-f4, without allowing his opponent the opportunity to play h3-h4. In addition, in this case after a later ...♗f4 and ♙g3xf4 Black would retain the possibility of recapturing with the rook.

24.♙f1 ♗h8 25.♙xf4 gxf4 26.♖f2  
g5 27.d5

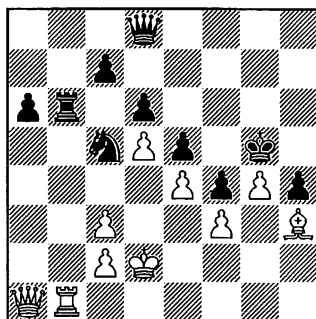
*Hiarc* 9 would here prefer 27.h4, but in this case White would have to reckon with the piece sacrifice 27...h5!? 28.hxg5 ♗xg4 29.fxg4 ♖xg5.

27...h5 28.♙g2 ♗g7 29.♖e2  
♖h8±

Black won on move 60 after a complex struggle, in which various elements had their role to play: the h-file or later a passed h-pawn after an exchange of rooks on h4, the c5-square for the knight, White's ineffective bishop, the b-file

which was opened later and finally also an advantage in space.

The position on move 43 is instructive:

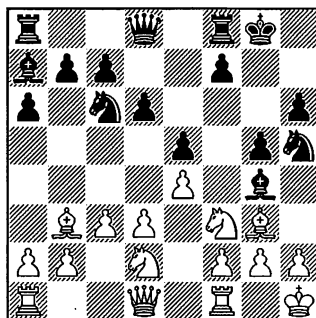


43...♖b8! 44.♖h1 a5!

Since there is 45.♖xa5? ♖b2 with the decisive threat...♗b3+.

## ► 29.4 Italian Game

Theoretical variation



Here in the event of

13.h3

it would be a mistake for Black to go for the exchange on g3, because after

13...♗xg3+? 14.fxg3 ♙h5 15.g4!

(♠♗g1-e2-g3-f5, ♖f3, ♖e2, ♖af1)

White gets a great advantage thanks to his pressure down the f-file.

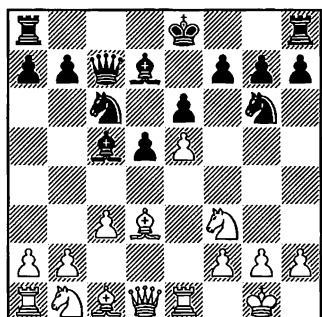
However, the correct move is

13...♙d7

(♠...♗f4) with chances for both sides.

► 29.5 Sveshnikov–Balashov

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1976



The  $\Delta e5$  is hanging. White should protect it with  $10.\text{W}e2$ , after which the game would remain roughly level. Instead of this White decides to immediately get rid of one of the pieces attacking the  $\Delta e5$ .

**10.  $\Delta xg6?$ !**

In the event of the natural  $10...hxg6?$ !  $11.\Delta g5$  0-0 White has  $12.b4 \Delta b6$   $13.a4$  together with an initiative on the queen-side, but Black reacts differently:

**10...fxg6!**

Now after kingside castling the  $\text{W}f8$  will exert strong pressure down the f-file and this difference from  $10...hxg6?$ ! is really important!

**11.  $\Delta f4$**

Now the idea of  $11.\Delta g5$  0-0  $12.b4 \Delta b6$   $13.a4$  no longer works on account of  $13... \Delta xe5!$   $14.\text{W}xe5 \text{W}xf3!$   $\rightarrow +$ .

**11...0-0 12.  $\Delta g3 \Delta e7$  13.  $\Delta bd2 \Delta f5$  14.  $\Delta b3 \Delta a4$  15.  $\Delta h1?$ !**

**15.  $\text{W}e2\bar{}$ .**

**15... $\text{W}b6$  16.  $\text{W}c2 \text{W}ac8$  17.  $\text{W}e2 h6!$  18.  $h3 g5!$**

Black gains space on the kingside. Later he will even find an opportunity to get in  $...g5-g4$ . As the game progressed, White did not manage to keep Black's initiative under control:

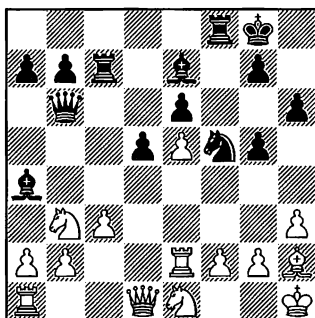
**19.  $\Delta h2 \text{W}c7$**

$\Delta... \text{W}f7$ .

**20.  $\Delta e1$**

Now after  $20... \text{W}cf7$   $21. \Delta d3$  at least f2 is protected. Black finds another possibility to further increase the activity of his pieces.

**20...  $\Delta e7$  21.  $\text{W}d1$**



**21...  $\text{W}c4!$  22.  $\text{W}d2 g4$  23.  $hxg4 \Delta e3$**

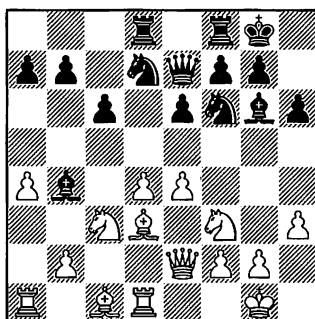
**24.  $\text{W}e2 \Delta xg4$  25.  $f3 \Delta xh2$  26.  $\Delta d4$**

**$\Delta c5$  27.  $\Delta xh2 \Delta xd4$  28.  $cxd4 \text{W}xd4$ ,**

and Black won.

► 29.6 Stahlberg–Smyslov

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



Black's last move was  $13... \text{W}ad8$ . Obviously Smyslov was not afraid of  $e4-e5$  with an exchange on g6:

**14.  $e5 \Delta d5$  15.  $\Delta xd5 cxd5$  16.**

**$\Delta xg6 fxg6$**

At first sight the black pawn structure may look somewhat compromised, but how should White exploit this? At the

same time the ♖f8 is now active, for which reason Black may now, depending on circumstances, hope for an initiative on the kingside.

**17.♙d2 ♘b8!**

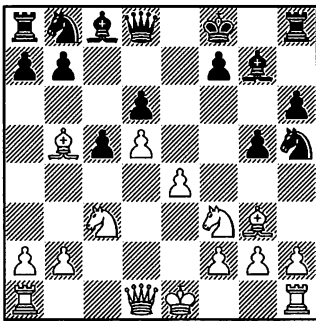
The knight heads to c6, to take aim at the ♖d4 and to block the c-file against an invasion by White's major pieces (cf. ⇒ *Technique No. 17*).

**18.♙xb4 ♖xb4 19.a5 ♖c8 20. ♖d3 g5 21.♖g6 ♖e7 22.♖dc1 a6 23.♖c3 ♘c6 24.♖ac1 ♖d7 25.♖c2 ♖f7 26.♖d2 ♖f5 27.b4**

Here the players agreed on a draw. Bronstein thinks that, on account of the threat of 28.b5 axb5 29.a6, Black would have to decide on 27...♖ce8 so as to be able to meet 28.b5 axb5 29.a6 with 29...♘a5. But 27...g4! with counterplay on the kingside also seems interesting to me.

► **29.7 A.Mikhalevski–Yudasin**

Beer-Sheba 1996



This position arose from a well-known variation of the Benoni Defence – 1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 c5 4.d5 exd5 5.cxd5 d6 6.♘c3 g6 7.e4 ♙g7 8.♙g5 h6 9.♙h4 g5 10.♙g3 ♘h5 11.♙b5+ ♖f8. Black does without castling so as to be able to swap off White's strong bishop. But this suggestion has its dark sides.

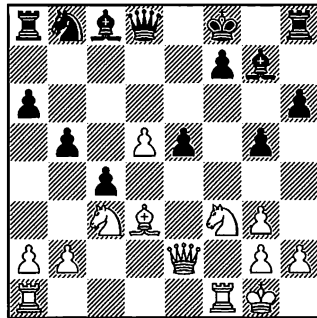
**12.e5! ♘xg3?!**

The alternatives 12...g4 or 12...a6! might be better, but for the moment we do not want to go into the subtleties of opening theory.

**13.fxg3!**

The only way. The f-file which has been opened promises White a future powerful attack on his opponent's king position.

**13...dxe5 14.0-0 a6 15.♙d3 b5 16.♖e2 c4**



**17.♘xe5! ♖b6+**

Or 17...cxd3 18.♖h5 ♖g8 19.♖xf7+ ♖h7 20.♖g6+ ♖g8 21.♖f7 ♖h7 22.♘e4+-.

**18.♖h1 cxd3 19.♖h5 ♖g8**

Forced.

**20.♖xf7**

This threatens 21.♖xg7+! and then 22.♖f7#. But perhaps 20.♖xf7+ ♖h7 21.d6 is even stronger, e.g. 21...♖xd6 22.♘e4 ♖xe5 23.♘f6+ ♖xf6 24.♖xf6 ♖g8 25.♖xh6+ ♖xh6 26.♖xg8 ♘d7 27.♖d5+-, as was played in the game Dorfman-Shvedchikov, USSR 1978.

**20...♙xe5**

Or 20...♖a7 21.d6! (threatening ♘d5), for instance 21...♖xf7 22.♖xf7+ ♖h7 23.♖g6+ ♖g8 24.♖f1+-.

**21.♖af1 ♖a7**

**21...♘d7 22.♖f8+! ♖h7 23.♖f7+ ♙g7 24.♖xg7+!**

22. ♖e4! ♙g7

22... ♗d7 23. ♗f6+! ♜xf6 24. ♖1xf6+–.

23. ♗f6+! ♜xf6 24. ♖1xf6 ♜xf7

24... ♙g4 25. ♜f8+! ♙xf8 26. ♜e8!+–.

25. ♜xf7+ ♔h7 26. ♜g6+ ♔g8

27. ♜f7 ♜h7 28. ♜e7 ♙d7 29. ♜f7+ ♔h8

30. ♜e8+! 1-0

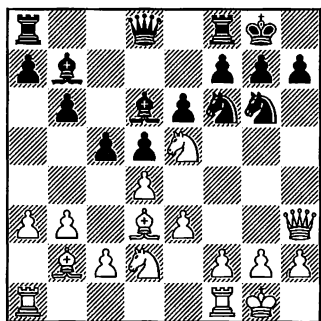
Now we finally turn to the patterns sketched in the introduction:

## 2) Attacking ♖g6/g7/f7

This can be considered a special case of ⇨ *Technique No. 30*, the attack on the h-file. The examples show how inflexible the constellation g6/g7/f7 is – the pawns can hardly move and they are also blocking the way for a defence, e.g. along the seventh rank:

### ► 29.8 Rubinstein–Bogoljubow

Göteborg (6th match game) 1920



14...cxd4?

A positional mistake – Black opens the e-file for the opposing rook.

A much stronger try is 14... ♗e4!, as recommended by GM Razuvaev, with chances for both sides.

15. ♗xg6!

Of course not 15. exd4? ♗f4.

15...hxg6

Here Black has no choice, since e6 is hanging!

16. exd4 ♜c8

Obviously Bogoljubow had exchanged on d4 two moves previously in order to open the c-file for his rook, but it is very difficult to make anything of this – the ♗c2 is safely protected by the ♙d3.

17. ♜fe1 ♜c7 18. ♗f3 ♗e4 19. ♗e5 ♙xe5

19... ♜g5!?

20. dxe5

The threat now is an attack on the king by ♜h3-g4, ♜e1-e3, h2-h4-h5 – we can see that the pawn structure on the kingside turns out to be very unfavourable for Black.

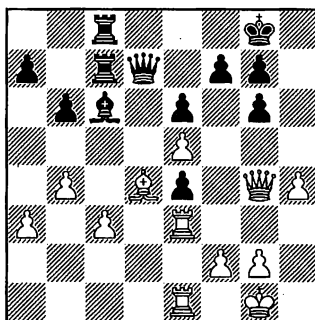
20... ♗c5?!

After a further two moves Black comes to the conclusion that the exchange on d3 would not improve his situation and moves his knight back to e4 again. 20... ♜g5!?, intending ... ♜g5-h5(-h6), as recommended by GM Razuvaev, was much more tenacious.

21. ♙d4 ♜d7 22. b4 ♗e4

22... ♗xd3 would in no way stem the danger of an attack on the kingside, e.g. 23. ♜xd3 ♜a4 24. c3 ♙a6 25. ♜d2 and then ♜e1-e3, h2-h4.

23. ♜e3 ♜fc8 24. ♜ae1 ♙c6 25. ♜g4 ♙b5 26. ♙xe4! dxe4 27. c3 ♙c6 28. h4!



Sounding the attack with h4-h5.

**28...♖e8 29.♗f4**

For the moment 29.h5 would fail to 29...gxh5 30.♗xh5 f5!, but the immediate 29.♖g3, renewing the threat of h4-h5, was very strong. Black's position would then not be an enviable one.

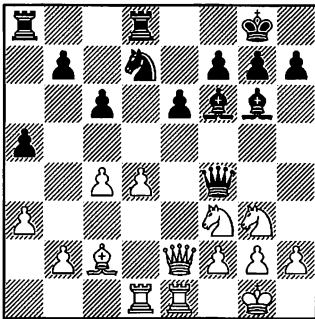
Rubinstein's queen move was unnecessary (the queen soon returns to g4), but nevertheless his position remains superior.

**29...♙d5 30.♖g3! ♔h7 31.♖ee3!  
♗a4 32.♗g4 ♖h8 33.h5!±**

Rubinstein has finally realised this advance. Black was not able to defend for much longer.

► **29.9 Yates–Réti**

New York 1924



**18.♙xg6!**

Here too Black has no choice: he must recapture with the h-pawn.

**18...hxg6 19.♘e4 ♘b6 20.b3  
♙e7 21.♖d3!**

The ♖a3 does not count – the important thing is to bring the rook to the h-file, which has just been opened by 18...hxg6.

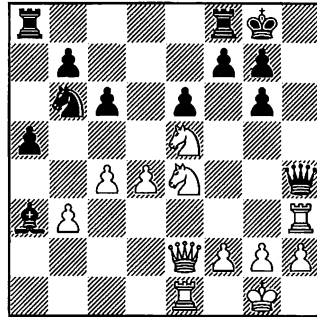
**21...♙xa3 22.♗e5**

Intending ♖d3-h3 or ♖d3-f3.

The alternative 22.♘fg5 would have been weaker on account of 22...♖d7.

**22...♗h4**

Or 22...♖f8 (so as to protect f7) 23.♖f3  
♗h4 24.♖h3



analysis diagram

Now 24...♗e7 25.♗e3! illustrates the typical attacking pattern: ♘g5 and then ♖h8+! and ♗h3-h7# can no longer be prevented.

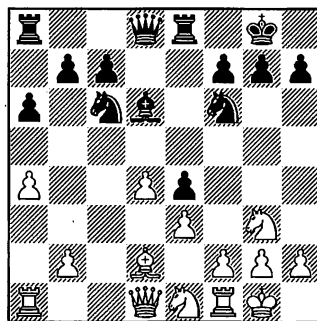
Or 24...♗f4 25.c5 ♘c8 (25...♘d5 26.♘d6 ♗f6 27.♖f3+–) 26.♘d3 ♗b8 27.♗g4, and the threat of ♗h4 is decisive.

**23.♖h3 ♗e7 24.♘g5! 1-0**

After 24...♗xg5 the move 25.♖h8+! wins, and in the event of 24...♖f8 there follows 25.♗g4.

► **29.10 Ahues–Alekhine**

Bad Nauheim 1936



**15...♙xg3 16.hxg3?**

After this the white king gets into difficulties. The correct move was **16.fxg3!**, after which Black could not start a dangerous attack (GM Marin even thinks that for that reason the more flexible 15...♖d7! with options on both wings was better).

**16...♗e7 17.b4 ♖d7!**

Planning ...♗f5, ...♗g4 and ...♗h5.

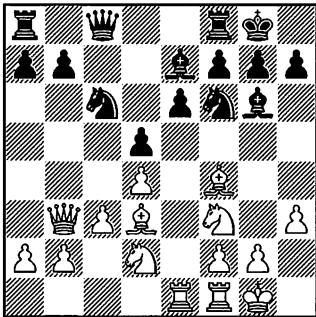
**18.♗c2 ♗e5 19.♗a3 b5 20.axb5 axb5 21.♖e2 c6 22.♗c2 ♗f5 23.♖fc1 h6 24.♖a5 ♖ac8 25.♗a1 ♗g4 26.♗f1 ♖e6!**

26...♗h5?! 27.♗e1.

**27.♖xb5 ♖f6** 0-1

► **29.11 Milner-Barry–  
Znosko Borovsky**

Tenby 1928



**13.♗xg6 hxg6**

After **13...fxg6** Black would have no compensation for the weaknesses on the e-file (the ♗e6, the e5-square).

**14.♗e5**

Generally speaking, an outpost square must be occupied.

**14...♗d7 15.♗df3 ♗dxe5 16.♗xe5 ♗xe5 17.♗xe5 ♖c6**

Black is intending a minority attack with ...b7-b5-b4. Can White for his part undertake something else?

**18.♖e3! b5 19.♖d1! b4 20.h4**

The idea of attacking by means of h4-h5 is absolutely correct, but **20.cxb4!** ♗xb4 was better and only then 21.h4.

**20...bxc3?!**

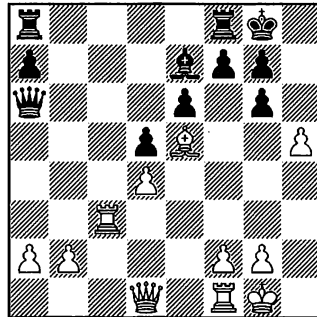
Black does not exploit his chance:

After **20...♗xh4!** 21.cxb4 ♖ac8 22.♖h3 ♗e7 23.♖d2 f6 and then ...♖c8-c2 White would not obtain an attack on the king.

**21.♖xc3 ♖a6?!**

21...♖b6 was better, e.g. **22.h5** (22.♖b3!?) 22...♖xb2 23.♖h3 (or 23.♖c2 ♖b6 24.hxg6 fxg6 25.♖g4 ♗f6) 23...g5 24.h6 f6 25.♖h5 ♖c2 26.hxg7 ♗xg7 27.♖xg5+ ♖g6 28.♖e3 ♗f7, and Black can hope to hold the position.

**22.h5**



**22...g5**

22...♖xa2 23.hxg6, e.g. 23...♖xb2 (23...fxg6 24.♖g4 with a big advantage) 24.♖h5 fxg6 25.♖xg6 ♖f7 26.♖h3.

**23.h6! f6 24.♖h5! ♗d8**

24...fxe5 25.♖g6 ♖f7 (or 25...♗f6 26.♖c7) 26.♖f3! ♖af8 27.♖xf7 ♖xf7 28.h7+ +–.

There follows an appealing finish:

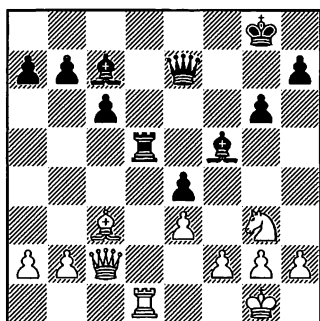
**25.♖g6 ♖b7 26.♖c7!**

And Black resigned.

### 3) A hiding-place for the king on h2/h7

#### ► 29.12 Seirawan–Tal

Montpellier (Candidates' tournament) 1985



24...♙xg3?!

24...♖d7! was better.

25.fxg3!

Tal had probably under-estimated this. Now White plans h2-h3 and then ♔h2, after which his king will feel secure, which cannot be said for that of his opponent.

25...♗xd1+ 26.♖xd1 ♖d7 27.♖e1!

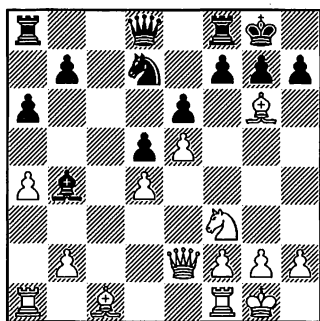
Considering his better protected king position, White avoids the exchange of queens.

27...♙e6 28.b3

As predicted, White continues with h2-h3, ♔h2 and then ♙b2, ♖c3±. Tal did not manage to hold the game.

#### ► 29.13 Boleslavsky–Smyslov

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



14...fxg6!

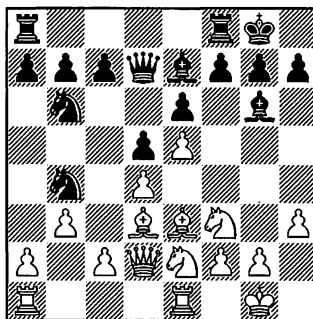
Now the black king will feel safe after ...h7-h6, ...♔g8-h7. After 14...hxg6?! on the other hand, Black would have to be anticipating ♘f3-g5, ♖e2-g4-h4(-h3), and at the same time an attack down the h-file with h4-h5 might be worth considering.

15.♙e3 ♖e7 16.♗fc1 ♗fc8 17.♙d2 h6=

In the following example the motifs for ...fxg6 – better security for one's own king and a possible crash down the f-file – go hand in hand:

#### ► 29.14 Am.Rodriguez–Miles

Palma de Mallorca 1989



15.♙xg6 fxc6!

After 15...hxg6?! 16.♙g5!, and the subsequent exchange of bishops the idea of ♘g5, ♖f4 would provide White with good attacking chances on the kingside. The text move not only guarantees the safety of the black king, but also opens the f-file for the rook.

16.c3

16.♙g5! was worth considering, to exchange the bad bishop at once.

16...♗a6!

Planning when appropriate ...c7-c5.

17.♙g5 ♙a3?!

17...c5!?

**18. ♖c2**

Preparing the exchange (♙c1) or the shutting in (b3-b4) of the bishop.

**18... ♗ac8 19.b4**

19. ♙c1 ♙e7 20. ♙g5 ♙xg5 (or 20...c5) 21. ♗xg5 c5 with initiative for Black (Miles).

**19... ♗xf3!**

19... ♗c4? 20. ♗d2 with the threat 21. ♖b3 (20... ♖f7 21. ♗f1 ♖f5 could perhaps prevent the worst).

So Black prefers to give up the exchange.

**20.gxf3 ♗f8 21. ♖g2 ♖f7 22. ♖d3**

**♗c4 23. ♙c1 ♙xc1 24. ♗axc1 ♗b8!?**

A plausible course was the repetition of moves 24... ♗b2 25. ♖e3 ♗c4 26. ♖d3. Also worth considering was 24...g5!? Δ... ♗b8-c6-e7-g6 (Miles).

**25.h4 ♗c6 26.f4 ♗e7 27. ♗h1 ♗f5**

Thanks to his nice knight and the opponent's weaknesses on the kingside Black has more than sufficient compensation for the exchange he has sacrificed, especially since White has no counterplay. Miles won after a long struggle.

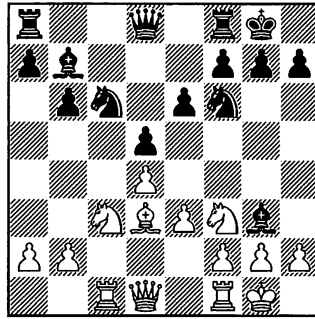
**4) h2xg3 – despite everything, the boring normal case**

Despite everything hxg3 (...hxg6) is still in the majority of cases the correct move, as, e.g., in *Example 29.11*. We saw which arguments can speak in favour of the frequent

exception fxg3 (...fxg6), and the reader would like in the future to be in the position of making his decision in such cases in a conscious rather than automatic fashion!

► **29.15 Portisch–Uhlmann**

Halle 1967



Black has just taken the ♙g3. How should White recapture?

**12.hxg3**

Here there was no reason to decide otherwise. After 12.fxg3 White would not obtain an attack on the f-file (e.g. Black could immediately meet it with 12... ♗g4 13. ♖d2 f5!?). On the other hand, after 12.hxg3 Black's idea of an attack with ... ♗g4 and ... ♖f6-h6 is an illusion, since the ♗f3 is reliably protecting the critical h2-square.

**12... ♖e7**

The game is almost level. But Black has to be prudent since White has the better bishop.

**Technique No. 30**

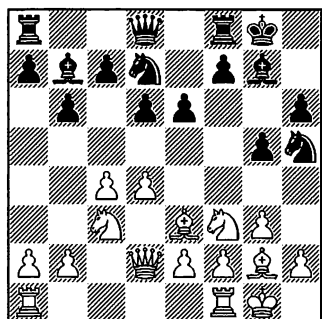
**The attack down the h-file**

If the opponent castles kingside, it is not uncommon for an attack linking an advance of the h-pawn with aggression on the h-file to be effective – we saw some examples in the previous section (after hxg3/...hxg6).

Such a plan may look like a beginner's, but just for that reason it is often not evaluated at its true worth. Just take a look at the following extracts from games:

► **30.1 Alekhine–Ibanez**

Buenos Aires 1926



**13.h4! gxh4?**

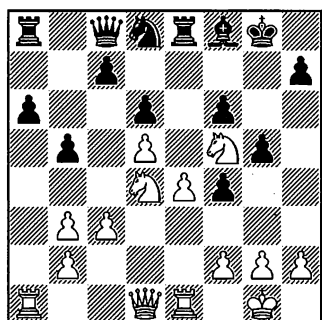
After this White is successful astonishingly quickly. After **13...g4** **14.♖h2 ♗xg2** **15.♜xg2 ♜h7** (or **15...f5** **16.♗xh6**) **16.♖xg4 f5** **17.♖h2** White would have a sound extra pawn, but the h-file would remain closed – this would then have been the lesser evil.

**14.♖xh4 ♗xg2** **15.♜xg2 ♜h7** **16.♜h1! ♜h8** **17.♖f3 ♖hf6** **18.♗xh6**

And Black resigned.

► **30.2 Maroczy–Yates**

New York 1924



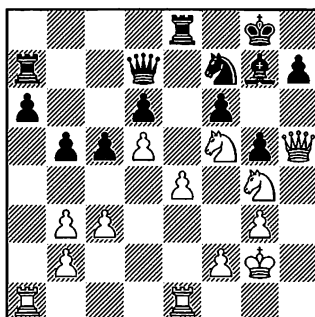
**21.g3!**

This opens the h-file for White for an attack on the king.

**21...fxg3** **22.hxg3 c5** **23.♖f3 ♖f7** **24.♖h2!**

Planning for example **♜h5**, **♖g4**, **♜g2**, **♜h1**.

**24...♜a7** **25.♜h5 ♗g7** **26.♖g4 ♜d7** **27.♜g2!**



**27...♖e5**

This runs into a simple refutation, but there was in any case no good defence against **♜e1-h1**.

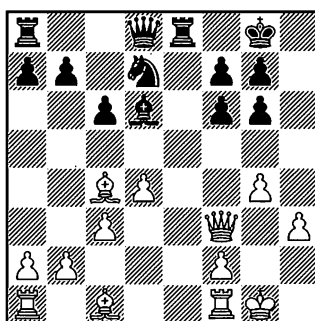
**28.♖xd6**

Also good was **28.♖xg7 ♜xg7** **29.♜h6+ ♜h8** **30.♖xf6 ♖g4** **31.♖xg4 ♜xg4** **32.f3 ♜d7** **33.♜f6+ +-.**

**28...♖d8** **29.♖xe5 fxe5** **30.♖f5 ♗f6** **31.♜h1 ♜f8** **32.♜g4 ♜h8** **33.♜h6 a5** **34.♖e3 ♜e8** **35.♜ah1 ♜ff7** **36.♜f5 ♜f8** **37.♖g4 ♗d8** **38.♜xh7+ ♜g8** **39.♜g6+ ♜g7** **40.♜h8#** **1-0**

► **30.3 Boleslavsky–Batuev**

Rostov on the Don 1939



White possesses an advantage in space and the bishop pair, but his opponent's position looks stable.

But Boleslavsky finds the key to getting access to the black position – the advance of the h-pawn with the intention of opening the h-file!

**15.h4!** ♖f8 **16.♗d2 ♖c7 17.♔g2!**  
 ♖e6 **18.♞h1! ♗f4**

After **18...♖f4+** **19.♗xf4 ♗xf4** White has **20.g5!** with a strong attack, when **20...fxg5?** loses on the spot on account of **21.hxg5.**

**19.♗xe6 ♗xd2 20.♗b3 ♖f4**

After **20...♗f4** the move **21.g5!** with the idea of h4-h5 is very unpleasant.

**21.♞ad1 ♞e7**

As A.Suetin indicates, **21...♖xf3+** **22.♗xf3 ♗h6** fails to **23.♞hg1!** ( $\Delta$ 24.g5), after which the forced **23...g5** is met with **24.h5** – on account of the absurd situation of the ♗h6 Black is clearly losing.

**22.g5! fxg5?**

**22...f5!** was much more tenacious: **23.♞h3** (the threat is **24.h5 ♖xg5+** **25.♞g3** or **24...gxh5 25.g6**; but **23.♖xf4 ♗xf4 24.♗f3 ♗c7 25.h5** would be weaker on account of **25...♗h7!**) **23...♗f8** (**23...♗h7 24.♞xd2! ♖xd2 25.h5 ♖xg5+** **26.♞g3 ♖h4 27.hxg6+ ♗g8 28.gxf7+ ♗f8 29.♞h3 ♖g5+** **30.♖g3 ♖xg3+** **31.♗xg3+-**) **24.h5!** **♖xg5+** **25.♞g3 ♖f4 26.hxg6 fxg6 27.♖xf4 ♗xf4 28.♞h1** (**28.♞xg6!**?) **28...♗h6 29.♞xg6 ♞ee8 30.♞h5 ♗e7 31.♞xf5 ♞f8 32.♞e5+ ♗d7**, and Black retains drawing chances despite being a pawn down.

**23.h5! ♖xf3+ 24.♗xf3 g4+**

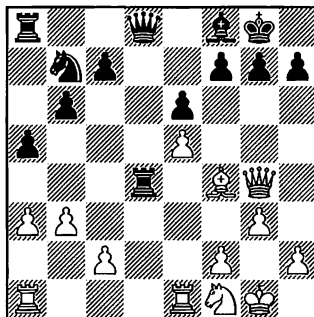
**24...♗f4 25.hxg6+-.**

**25.♔g3! ♗h6 26.hxg6 a5 27.a4 ♗f8 28.gxf7,**

and White won.

## ► 30.4 Petrosian–Sokolsky

Kiev (USSR Ch) 1954



**23.h4!**

So as to weaken the opposing king position with a later h5-h6.

**23...♖c5 24.♖h2 ♖d7**

**24...♗h8!**? came into question, so as to be able to meet h4-h5 ( $\Delta$ h6) with ...h7-h6. On the other hand (after h4-h5 and ...h7-h6) the possibility would then arise to continue the attack with g3-g4-g5.

**25.♖f3 ♞d5 26.h5! ♗h8 27.h6! gxh6**

**27...g6** would keep the files closed, but then the dark squares (g5, f6, g7) would have become very weak.

**28.♔g2 ♗g7 29.b4 ♖b7 30.♖h4 ♞g8 31.♗xh6 ♗xh6 32.♖xh6 ♞g6 33.♖h4 ♗g7 34.♞e4**

Threatening **35.♞h1 h6 36.♞g4+-.**

**34...♖d8**

Black may have managed to ward off the immediate threats on the kingside, but to do so his rook on g6 had to go into a passive position. So Petrosian now swaps off those of Black's pieces which are actively posted and obtains a superior endgame in view of the awkward position of the ♞g6.

**35.♖xd8! ♖xd8 36.bxa5!**

So as to open the b-file for the ♞a1.

**36...bxa5**

Or **36...♞xa5 37.♞c4 c5 38.♞d1±.**



There now follows a series of sacrifices typical of Tal:

**21. ♖xh7! ♜xe5**

After 21... ♜xh7 there is e.g. the decisive 22. ♖h1+ ♜g8 23. ♜h4 ♖g7 24. ♖f6!. There was the interesting line 21... ♖g7!? 22. ♖f6 ♖xf6 (22... ♜h7 23. ♖h1+ ♜g8 24. ♜h4, 22... ♖xf6 23. exf6 ♖xf6 24. ♖xg6) 23. exf6 ♖xf6 24. ♜xg6+ (there is nothing better) 24... fxg6 25. ♖xc7 ♖ac8, and Black gets off into an endgame with a pawn less.

**22. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 23. ♖xg6+ ♜g8**

23... ♜xg6 24. ♖f4+ ♜f6 25. ♜h4+! ♜f7 26. ♖xe5+.-

**24. ♖xe8**

On account of the loss of the queen (♖f6+) Black may not take the bishop, and so the game is decided. After 24. ♖h7+ there would be still the defence 24... ♜h8!.

**24... ♖g7 25. ♖d7 ♖c7**

25... ♖e3+ 26. ♖xe3 ♜d5+ would have limited the damage to a pawn, but on the other hand it would have left no chance of pulling off a swindle.

**26. ♖xc6 ♖f8**

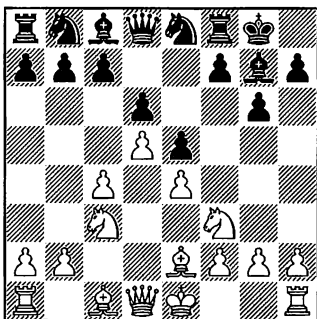
26... ♜xb2 27. ♖b1! ♜xb1 28. ♖f6+.-

**27. ♖d1 ♜c5 28. ♖f3 ♜xc2 29. ♖d7**

**♖f7 30. ♖d8+ ♖f8 31. ♖f6! ♜h7 32. ♖e4 ♜h6 33. ♖g5 ♜h8 34. ♖d7 1-0**

### ► 30.7 Gligoric–Bogdanovic

Titovo Uzice 1966



Here remember 'Botvinnik's second method' under ⇨ *Technique No. 13* – as we learned there, White can often play h4-h5 to defuse the planned ...f7-f5.

In the position in the diagram White can in addition castle queenside after this, which enables him to play for an attack on the kingside himself.

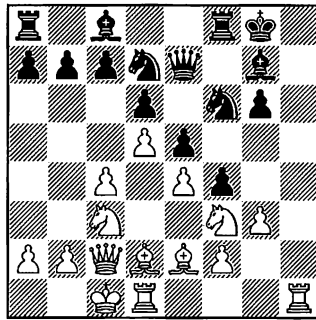
**8.h4! f5 9.h5**

In later games 9. ♖g5 or 9. ♖g5 has been played here, but with the same idea – to soon play h4-h5.

**9...f4 10.hxg6 hxg6 11.g3 ♖d7 12.**

**♖d2 ♜e7 13. ♜c2 ♖ef6 14.0-0-0**

And on no account 14. gx4?! ex4 15. ♖xf4? ♖xe4 with good counterplay.



The open h-file and the weakness on g6 promise White excellent attacking chances, whereas Black has no counterplay. Here is the rest of the game without comments:

**14...fxg3 15.fxg3 ♖c5 16. ♖h4**

**♜e8 17. ♖df1 ♖g4 18.b4 ♖a6**

**19.a3 ♖f2 20. ♖h2 ♖g4 21. ♖xf8+**

**♖xf8 22. ♖h1 ♖e7 23. ♜b2 ♖d7**

**24. ♜c1 ♜f7 25. ♖f1 ♜g7 26.c5**

**♖b8 27. ♖g5 ♖f6 28. ♖c4 ♜h7**

**29.c6 ♖c8 30. ♖h1 ♜g8 31. ♜d2**

**a6 32. ♖b3 b5 33. ♖f1 a5 34. ♜e2**

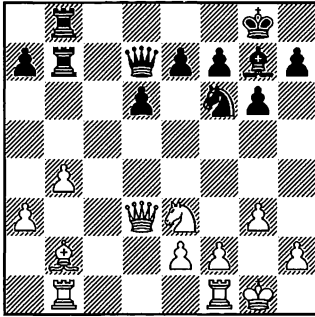
**axb4 35.axb4 ♖a6 36. ♜f3 ♜f7**

**37. ♖a2 ♖h3 38. ♖f2 ♖c8 39.g4**

And Black resigned.

► **30.8 Peresipkin–Makarichev**

USSR 1968



**25...h5! 26.♘c4**

**26.h4 ♖h3** with an initiative for Black.

**26...h4! 27.♖bc1 ♜b5!**

Here the rook is ready to appear on h5 at any time.

**28.♖f3 ♜f5 29.♖g2 ♖e6 30.♘e3 ♜fb5 31.♜fd1? hxg3! 32.hxg3 ♘g4! 33.♙xg7 ♗xg7**

There was the simple and good **33...♘xe3 34.fxex3 ♖xe3+ 35.♖f2 ♖xf2+ 36.♗xf2 ♗xg7 37.♜c7 ♜8b7** ♚, but Black is targeting his play on an attack on the king.

**34.♜c3?!**

**34.♘d5 ♜5b7 Δ...♜h8.**

**34...♜h8!**

In view of the threat **35...♜bh5** White finds himself in a difficult position.

White's initiative on the kingside is threatening to quickly become dangerous.

Should Black continue to play passively on that part of the board?

**15...h5!?**

A very interesting possibility. Suddenly it is no longer clear who will attack whom on the kingside.

**16.gxh5 ♙xh3 17.♘3h2 g6!**

**18.♘g3 ♗g7 19.♗h1!?**

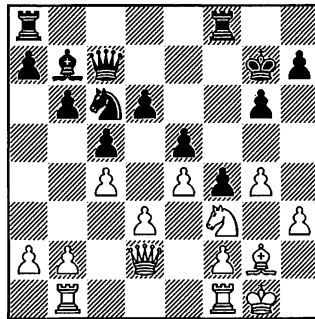
**Δ♜e1-g1.**

**19...♜h8! 20.♜g1 ♗f8**

Thanks to his active rook on h8 Black has considerable counter-chances in this complicated position.

► **30.10 Formanek–Tatai**

Reggio Emilia 1983/84



**19...h5! 20.gxh5 ♜h8! 21.hxg6 ♙c8! 22.d4**

Desperation.

After **22.♗h2 ♙xh3! 23.♙xh3 ♜xh3+ 24.♗xh3 ♖d7+ 25. ♗g2 (25.♗h4 ♜h8+ 26.♗g5 ♖h3+)** **25...♜h8 26. ♜h1 ♖g4+** Black wins.

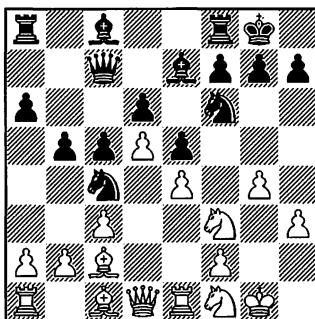
Also hopeless would be **22.♖d1 ♙xh3 23.♙xh3 ♜xh3 24.♘g5**, and now **24... ♖d7!+** decides.

**22...♙xh3 23.d5 ♖c8!**

And White already resigned.

► **30.9 Tal–Petrosian**

Erevan (USSR Ch) 1975



## Chapter VIII

# Developing and activating pieces

The development of pieces is a big subject and here we shall investigate some practical aspects.

We shall begin with the rooks, since one never knows exactly which one belongs on which file (⇒ *Technique No. 31*).

And if the routine development ♖ac1/8, ♗ad1/8, ♝fe1/8 etc. is not promising, one is left with the rook lift ⇒ *Technique No. 32*.

*Technique No. 33* deals with transferring the rook to better (central) squares.

*Technique No. 34* demonstrates how apparently ineffective bishops can be brought to good positions.

In *No. 35* an interesting square for the queen is revealed

Finally in *No. 36* the subject is influencing the opponent's piece development by a pendulum manoeuvre.

### **Technique No. 31**

## Which rook belongs on the c-, d- or e-file?

As for the tiresome question about the 'correct' positioning of the rook, I can think of no better introduction to this problem than the following admission by the XIIth correspondence chess world champion Grigory Sanakoev from his eminently readable book *World Champion at the Third Attempt*:

*'Intuitively choosing the right rook to occupy an open central file is, I believe, one of the most difficult things a chess-player ever has to do.*

*Many a time I have quickly played ♗ad1 and then suddenly realized to my dismay, a few moves later, that this rook belongs on c1, while d1 should be occupied by the king's*

*rook. Swallowing your stinging feeling of shame, you play ♗cd1 after all (you're lucky if you have enough will-power and common sense to admit your blunder). You hope no one will notice the mistake, and are relieved to see that your position is taking on a harmonious look. OK, so you've lost a tempo – never mind, it can't be helped.*

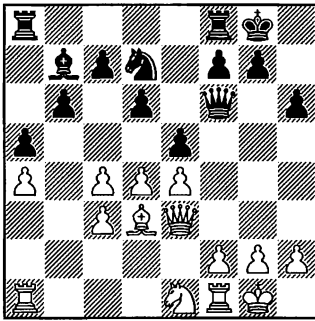
*In the next game, in a similar position, you play ♖ac1. A couple of move later – horrors! – you realise your king's rook will have to go to e1, so what is going to go to d1? Again you wring from yourself the excruciating decision – to play ♗cd1! In such moments I yearn for*

*a third rook, so as to occupy all three central files and solve the whole problem squarely.  
Say what you will, there is a deep mystery here!*

So much for Sanakoev, now to the examples:

► **31.1 Haakanson–Nimzowitsch**

Denmark 1921



The ♖f8 has to remain where it is so as to support a future ...f7-f5. But what does one do with the other rook?

**14...♖ae8!**

A very strong and important move. As was said, Black is planning ...f7-f5, after which there will be great tension in the centre and then this rook will be ideally placed on the e-file.

But should White close the centre with d4-d5, then the black knight gets the lovely c5-square, whilst the move ...f7-f5 can mean the start of a dangerous pawn storm on the kingside.

**15.f3 ♗e6 16.♘c2?**

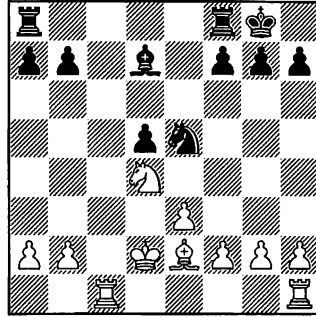
The correct move was 16.♗d2 intending ♘c2-e3, after which it would not be so easy for Black to get in ...f7-f5.

**16...exd4! 17.cxd4 f5**

White has major problems on e4.

► **31.2 Alekhine–Capablanca**

Buenos Aires (8th WCh game) 1927



Of course one of the black rooks belongs on c8 – but which one?

**16...♖fc8!**

The correct decision – now Black can bring his king into play via f8. But there is yet another argument in favour of 16...♖fc8:

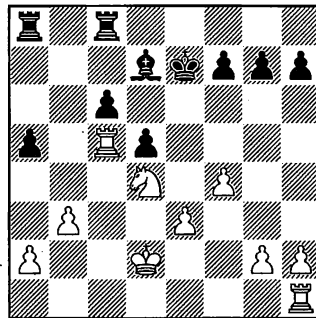
**17.b3 ♕f8**

Not 17...♖xc1? 18.♖xc1, since 18...♖c8? now fails to 19.♖xc8+ ♙xc8 20.♘b5 ♘c6 21.♘d6 winning a pawn.

**18.f4 ♘c6 19.♙b5**

19.♙f3!?

**19...♕e7 20.♙xc6 bxc6 21.♖c5 a5!**



Here the further advantage of ...♖f8-c8 becomes clear: thanks to the position of the rook on a8 this immensely important advance for the defence is possible. Now Black can with ...♖a8-a6 protect both his weaknesses – a5 and c6.

In addition Black has prevented any fixing of the position with b3-b4, now a2-a3, b3-b4 would, after ...a5xb4, just free Black from one of his two weaknesses (a5) and at the same time concede the a-file to him.

**22.♖hc1 ♔d6 23.♜1c3 ♜a6 24. ♔b5+ ♔e7**

**24...cxb5!?** 25.♜xc8 b4! 26.♜c1 ♔xc8 27.♜xc8 a4 with good counterplay.

**25.♔d4 ♔d6 26.e4 dxe4 27.♔e3 ♜b8!**

27...♜e8 28.♔f5+ ♔xf5 29.♜xf5 f6 30. ♜c4 a4 31.b4±.

**28.♔f5+ ♔xf5 29.♜xf5 f6 30.♜c4**

30.♔xe4 a4 with counterplay.

**30...♜b5**

The position is level and the game soon ended in a draw.

and even ...g6-g5) 19.e5 dxe5, and in the event of 20.fxe5 ♔d7 21.e6 fxe6 22.♔xg7 ♔xg7 White would still have to show that he has any compensation.

After the text move Black wants to bring the ♜f8 to e8 so as to get in ...e7-e5, but White thwarts this intention:

**18.a3**

This fixes the weak ♔a4.

**18...♜fe8**

♔...e7-e5.

**19.e5!**

Now the position of the rook on e8 is of no use.

**19...dxe5 20.fxe5 ♔d7 21.e6!?**

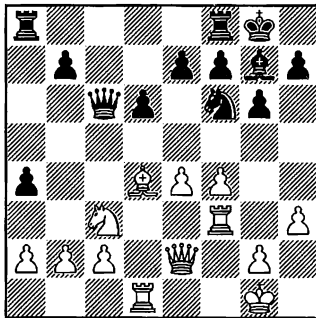
**fxe6 22.♔xg7 ♔xg7 23.♜d4 ♜c5**

**24.♜f2 ♔e5 25.♜ff4**

For the sacrificed pawn White has obtained a dangerous initiative. The ♜e8 has obviously been caught on the wrong foot.

### ▶ 31.3 Ragozin–Arnlin

2nd World Chess Correspondence Chess 1956

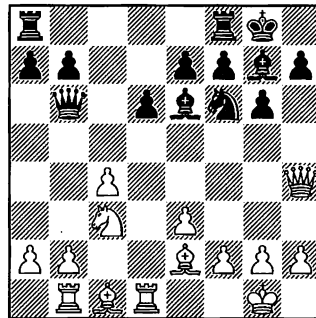


**17...♜ac8?!**

Of course one of the black rooks belongs on the c-file, but **17...♜fc8!** was preferable – after that the second rook could get into the game via a5, and in addition the ♔a4 would be better protected; e.g. **18.a3 ♜a5** (⇒ *Technique No. 32*, the rook lift – from this square this rook supports the advances ...e7-e5, ...d6-d5

### ▶ 31.4 Naranja–Fischer

Palma (Interzonal tournament) 1970



The continuation **12...♜fc8!** would have secured counterplay for Black. The other rook would then, after ...a7-a6, ...b7-b5, show its teeth either on the a- or on the b-file (according to which file is opened). But the game continued

**12...♜c5?! 13.b4 ♜f5 14.e4 ♜e5**

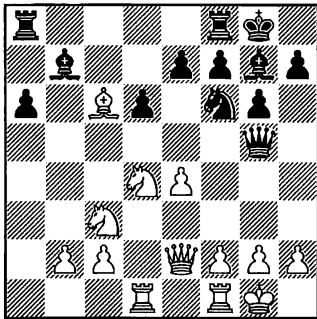
**15.♜b3 ♔d7 16.f4**

White has the initiative.

It is not a rare thing for us to make a careless ‘natural’ rook move, only to realise later that the rook would be better posted on its original square. Prophylactic thinking is a good way to avoid such mistakes.

### ► 31.5 Levenfish–Aronin

Gorki 1950



**15...♖ab8?**

After this the ♖a6 is left unprotected. For that reason 15...♖fb8 was preferable.

**16.♙xb7 ♞xb7 17.♘b3 a5**

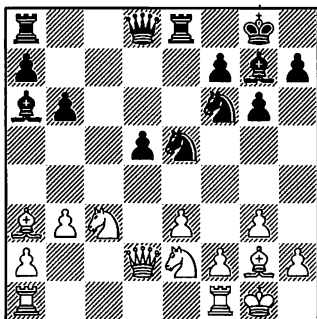
17...♘h5!? 18.♚xa6 ♘f4 19.g3 ♞fb8.

**18.h3 ♞b4 19.♞a1 ♞a8**

Now Black comes to the conclusion that a rook was in fact needed on a8. Consequently he would have been better missing out 15...♖ab8.

### ► 31.6 R.Byrne–Fischer

New York (USA Championship) 1963



One of the white rooks belongs on d1, but which one? – Byrne makes the wrong decision and in this game, which has become famous, disaster follows:

**14.♞fd1?**

White under-estimates the danger to the ♖f2, which will come after Black’s next move. Consequently the correct move was 14.♞ad1.

**14...♘d3! 15.♚c2**

The decisive mistake. But after other moves too, the white position was mightily unpleasant, thus 15.♘d4 and 15.♘f4 are both met with 15...♘e4 together with a black initiative, whereas after 15.f3 the continuation 15...♙h6 16.f4 (16.♘f4? d4!) 16...♙g7! Δ...♘e4 looks strong.

**15...♘xf2! 16.♙xf2 ♘g4+ 17.♙g1 ♘xe3 18.♚d2 ♘xg2!**

And not 18...♘xd1? 19.♞xd1∞.

**19.♙xg2 d4! 20.♘xd4 ♙b7+ 21.♙f1**

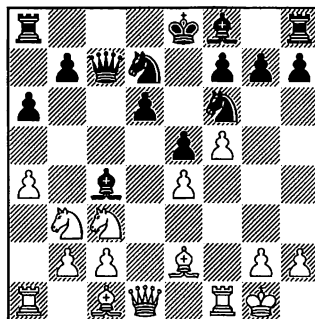
21.♙g1 ♙xd4+ 22.♚xd4 ♞e1+! 23.♙f2 ♚xd4+ 24.♞xd4 ♞xa1–+, 21.♙f2 ♚d7! 22.♞ac1 ♚h3 23.♘f3 ♙h6–+.

**21...♚d7!**

White resigned – there is no defence to the deadly threat of ...♚h3+, e.g. 22.♚f2 ♚h3+ 23.♙g1 ♞e1+!! 24.♞xe1 ♙xd4–+ or 22.♘db5 ♚h3+ 23.♙g1 ♙h6–+.

### ► 31.7 Geller–Najdorf

Zürich (Candidates’ tournament) 1953



**11...♖c8?!**

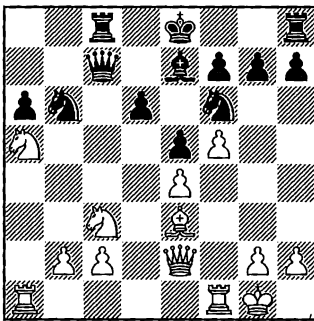
At first glance there is no doubt that this rook belongs on c8. But if we make use of prophylactic thinking in Black's place, we realise that White has the possibility to gain space on the queenside by a4-a5 and to palpably cramp our position. If we then play ...b7-b5 (and it is highly probable that we will decide to do so in order to achieve counterplay), White exchanges en passant on b6, after which the ♠a6 becomes weak and requires protection. So there are good reasons to leave the ♖a8 where it is and bring the other rook to c8, e.g. 11...♙e7 12.♙e3 0-0 13.a5 b5 14.axb6 ♘xb6 15.♙h1 ♖fc8! with good chances, as was played in many later games.

**12.♙e3**

12.a5!?

**12...♙e7 13.a5**

Now 13...b5 is not advisable, e.g. 14.axb6 ♘xb6 15.♘a5 ♙xe2 16.♚xe2



*analysis diagram*

16...d5 (16...♘c4 17.♘xc4 ♚xc4 18.♚f3 ♚b4 19.♖a2 0-0 20.♙g5 ♖fe8 21.♖fa1±) 17.♚xa6 d4 18.♘b5 ♚b8 19.♙g5 ♖xc2 20.♖fc1 ♖xc1+ 21.♖xc1+- in this line the disadvantage of ...♖a8-c8 strikes the eye.

**13...h5**

Directed against g2-g4. The move 13...0-0 can be met with an attack, e.g. 14.♖a4 ♙xe2 15.♚xe2 ♖fd8 16.g4, as

was played in the game Kononenko-Sandalakis, Denizli 2003.

14.♙xc4 ♚xc4 15.♖a4 ♚c7 16.h3 h4 17.♖f2!

♠d2.

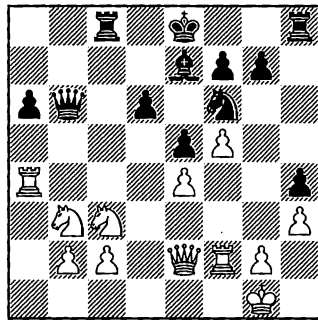
**17...b5**

Black tries to achieve counterplay and is even prepared to sacrifice the ♠a6 to get it.

**18.axb6 ♘xb6 19.♙xb6!**

A wise decision. After 19.♖xa6 ♘c4 Black would in fact obtain something of an initiative for the pawn. But now he is left with his various weaknesses (the d5-square, the pawns on a6 and d6) without any counter-chances.

19...♚xb6 20.♚e2!



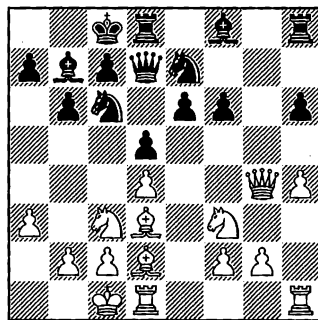
**20...♖a8**

So, back anyway!

21.♙h2 0-0 22.♖f1! ♖a7 23.♖fa1±

► **31.8 Tal-Padevsky**

Moscow 1963



**14.♖de1!**

There was nothing this rook could achieve on the blocked d-file, whilst the ♖h1 can perhaps still be useful on the kingside.

**14...♗g8**

14...f5 15.♖f4 (or 15.♖h5, Tal) with a lasting advantage on account of the backward ♖e6.

**15.♖xe6 ♗xg2**

15...♖xe6 16.♗xe6 ♗xg2 17.♙e3 f5 18.♗e2±.

**16.♖e3 ♖b8?!**

16...♗g4! was interesting, e.g. 17.♙f1 ♗f5 18.♖d3 ♗fxd4 19.♙h3 ♗xf3 20.♖xf3 f5 (Tal) 21.♙xg4 fxg4 22.♖f4 h5 with some compensation for the exchange.

**17.♙f1 ♗g8?!**

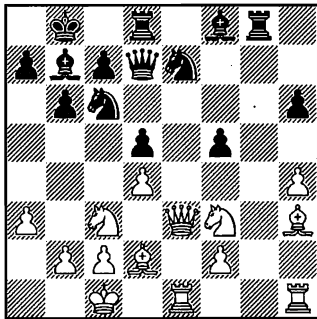
17...♗f5!? 18.♖d3 ♗xf2 19.♙h3, and now Black has the excuse 19...♙a6!. Nevertheless, after 20.♖xa6 ♗xf3 21.♗b5 White still has attacking chances.

**18.♙h3**

If White had previously opted for 14.♖he1, this bishop move would not now be possible.

**18...f5**

This decisively weakens the e5-square, but there was no sensible alternative – 18...♗f5 would fail to 19.♖d3 ♙c8 20.h5! ♖h7 21.♗h4 ♗cxd4 22.♙e3+-.



White has an indubitable advantage. The rest – annotated in depth, e.g. in *The*

*Life and Games of Mikhail Tal* – is no longer so relevant for our subject.

**19.♖d3**

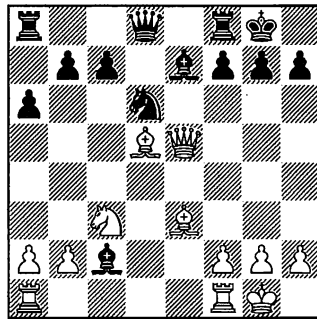
Alternatives were e.g. 19.♖hg1 (Tal) or 19.♗e2.

19...♙c8 20.h5 ♖e8 21.♙f4 ♖xh5 22.♗b5 ♗d7 23.♖c3 ♙b7 24.♗e5 ♗xe5 25.dxe5 d4 26.e6! dxc3 27.exd7 ♙g7 28.♗xc7 1-0

Black had practically run out of time and so he resigned, probably without having accurately calculated the line 28...cxb2+ 29.♖b1 ♖f3! (29...♖h4 30.♗d5+ ♖a8 31.♙g2!+-) 30.♗d5+ ♖a8 31.♙g2! (31.♗c7+ ♖b8 32.♗e8+?? ♖xf4) 31... ♖xg2 32.♗c7+ ♖b8 33.♗e8+ +-.

► **31.9 Romanishin–Knezevic**

Leningrad 1977



White is a pawn down but with his subsequent moves he brings his rooks actively into the game and obtains at least sufficient compensation.

**14.♖ac1! ♙g6 15.♖fd1!**

The ideal set-up – the ♖c1 is aiming at the ♖c7, whilst the other rook occupies the central d-file, on which the black queen is posted too. Therefore – considering the position of the ♗d6 – the move ...c7-c6 is also at least made much more difficult.

**15...♙f6 16.♖f4**

The threat is 17. ♖xb7.

16... ♖e7

16... ♖b8!?

17. ♖f3

Threatening 18. ♘d5.

17... ♖xc3

17... ♖e5 is followed by 18. ♘d5 ♖e8

19. ♖g4, after which White restores the material balance and at the same time retains his initiative.

18. ♖xc3 ♖fe8 19. h4! h6

19... ♖ad8!? Δ20. h5 ♖e4.

20. h5 ♖h7

20... ♖e4 would now fail to the simple

21. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 (or 21... ♘xe4 22. ♖xc7±)

22. ♖xc7±.

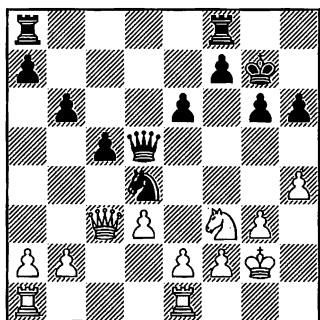
21. ♖c5 ♖e4 22. ♖xd6 cxd6 23.

♖e3 f5 24. ♖xd6

White has won back his pawn and still holds the initiative. The activity of the white rooks in this example should not be overlooked.

### ► 31.10 Larsen–Tal

Leningrad (Interzonal tournament) 1973



If it were White to move, he could by means of e2-e4 and then ♘xd4 swap off the opposing knight, without being left with serious weaknesses in his own camp. He would react exactly the same way to 18...e5: 19. e4! ♖d6 (or 19... ♖e6 20.

♘xd4) 20. ♘xd4, and no matter how Black recaptures – he does not achieve anything special, because after the exchange there is still a black pawn closing off the d-file and thus the ♖d3 does not constitute a weakness.

18... ♖ad8!

The sense of this move is now clear: 19. e4?! can now be met with 19... ♖d6, and in the event of a future 20. ♘xd4 ♖xd4 21. ♖xd4+ ♖xd4 the ♖d3 would not only be weak, but lost without any hope (22. ♖e3 ♖fd8 23. ♖d1 c4). Another good move would be 19... ♖b7!? Δ 20. ♘xd4 ♖xd4, and once more the ♖d3 remains a problem.

But why does the ♖a8 and not the king's rook go to d8? There is the following:

The ♘d4 is very strong and White would soon be required to exchange it off with ♘f3xd4. Black of course wants to recapture with ...e5xd4 (he gains the time for ...e6-e5 because White must first unpin the ♘f3), so as to exert pressure down the semi-open e-file against the backward ♖e2. For that he needs the f-rook on e8.

In addition, with the rook deployment ♖d8/♖e8 Black still has at his disposal the manoeuvre ...♖d8-d6-e6 or -f6.

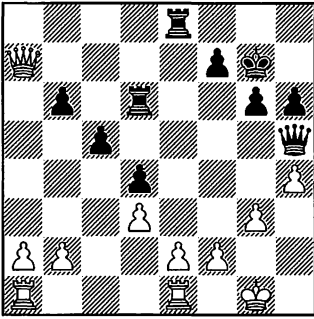
19. ♖g1 e5! 20. ♘xd4

20. ♘d2 f5 underlines another argument in favour of the move ...♖ad8.

20...exd4 21. ♖c4 ♖h5 22. ♖a4?

White wants to exploit the unprotected position of the ♖a7, but under-estimates the black attack on the kingside. In his notes Larsen recommends 22. e4, but then too Black would be clearly superior after 22...dxe3 23. ♖xe3 ♖d4 in view of the isolated ♖d3 and the weakened white kingside.

22... ♖fe8! 23. ♖xa7 ♖d6!



Now the merits of the set-up of the black rooks become clear: one rook is attacking the  $\Delta e2$ , the second one is protecting the  $\Delta b6$  (which is keeping the white

queen out of things) and threatening to join the attack dangerously by ... $\Re de6$  or ... $\Re df6$ .

**24.b4  $\Re f6!$**

The pawns no longer count – what is important is the white king.

**25.bxc5  $\Re f5$  26.f3  $\Re h3$  27. $\Re c7$   $\Re f5!$  28.cxb6  $\Re fe5!$**

The white queen can no longer get into the game. The remainder was a disaster:

**29.e4  $\Re xg3+$  30. $\Re h1$   $\Re xh4+$  31.  $\Re g2$   $\Re g5+$  32. $\Re f1$   $\Re h3+$  33. $\Re e2$   $\Re g2+$  34. $\Re d1$   $\Re xf3+$  35. $\Re c1$   $\Re f2$**

And White resigned.

### Technique No. 32

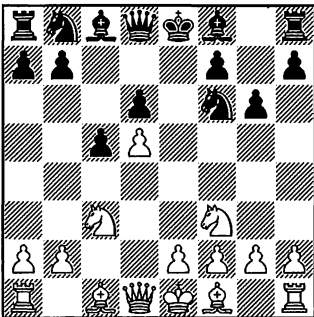
## The alternative for the rook: the rook lift

Sometimes the routine development of the rook with  $\Re a-c(d)1$  and such like does not meet the specific needs of the position – then we should take into consideration the rook lift. With it the rook is brought into play via the second or in more extreme cases even via the third or even fourth rank:

### ► 32.1 Nimzowitsch–Marshall

New York 1927

**1.c4  $\Re f6$  2.d4 e6 3. $\Re f3$  c5' 4.d5 d6 5. $\Re c3$  exd5 6.cxd5 g6**



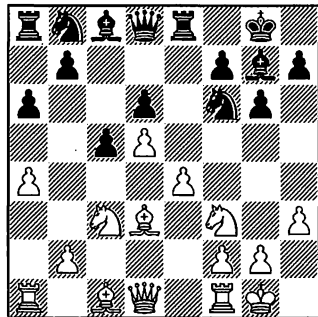
Here Nimzowitsch played 7. $\Re d2!$  and then  $\Re c4$  – this knight manoeuvre was later described by Tartakower as the 'Nimzowitsch pirouette' and even today the name is often used.

In his comments on this game Nimzowitsch analysed:

**7.e4  $\Re g7$  8. $\Re d3$  0-0 9.0-0 a6 10.a4  $\Re e8$  11.h3**

To prevent ... $\Re g4$ .

Nimzowitsch evaluated this position as more or less level and for Black he now suggested



**11...b6**

(Δ...♖a8-a7-e7).

However, we must objectively note that **11...♗bd7** or **11...c4!**? are probably better.

**12.♖f4 ♖a7 13.♖h2**

Prophylaxis for the case of ...♗f6-h5, but also possibly preparation for f2-f4 Δe4-e5.

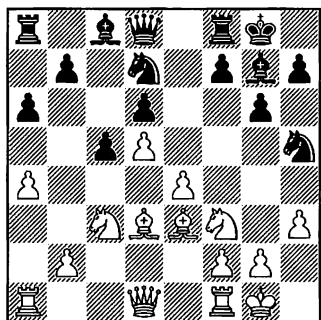
**13...♖ae7 14.♗d2**

In view of the threat of ♗d2-c4 Black has problems.

Despite this specific reservation, Nimzowitsch was indubitably the godfather of the following three examples in Benoni-type positions (in 32.3 and 32.4 even with reversed colours!):

► **32.2 Arduman–Quinn**

Leon (European Team Ch) 2001



**12...b6!?**

Not only to prevent a4-a5 (which would now be met with ...b6-b5 with black predominance on the queenside), but also to give the ♖a8 the chance to come into play along the seventh rank after ...♖a8-a7.

**13.♖d2 ♗e5 14.♗xe5 ♖xe5 15.f4 ♖g7 16.♖f2**

On Quinn's suggestion of **16.g4 ♗f6** (Δ...h7-h5) **17.♖g2** J.Watson recom-

mends in his very useful book *Guide to the Modern Benoni* **17...♖a7!** and gives the variation **18.g5 ♗h5 19.♖e2 f5! 20.♖xh5 gxh5 21.♗h2 ♖e7 22.♖fe1 ♖xc3 23.bxc3 ♖xe4** – the efficacy of the manoeuvre ...♖a8-a7-e7 should not be overlooked.

But, as we shall soon see, Black will take advantage of this rook lift in the game continuation too.

**16...f5! 17.exf5 gxf5 18.♖f3 ♗f6 19.♖ae1 ♖a7!**

Δ...♖e7, ...♖fe8.

**20.♖f2 ♖e8 21.♖d1 ♖ae7 22.♖xe7 ♖xe7 23.♖c2 ♖d7**

Black has no problems, and after

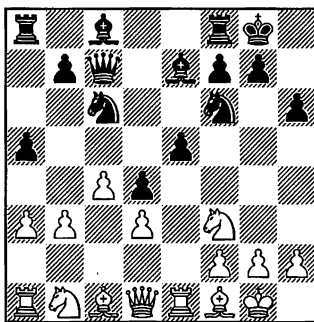
**24.♖b3**

the contestants agreed on a draw.

A counterpart with reversed colours:

► **32.3 Konstantinopolsky–Abramov**

Moscow 1947



**14.♖a2!**

So as to get to e2 in a single move.

**14...♖d6 15.h3 b6**

**15...♖f5!?** Δ **16.♗h4 ♖h7.**

**16.♗h4 ♗e7 17.♗d2 ♗d7?!**

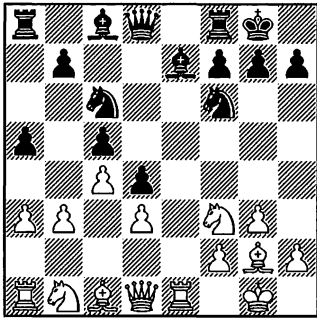
**17...♖e6** is stronger, or **17...♖d7.**

**18.♗e4 f5 19.♗xd6 ♖xd6 20.f4! ♖b7 21.fxe5 ♗xe5 22.♖f4 ♗7c6 23.♗f3 ♗xf3+ 24.♖xf3 ♖d7 25.♖ae2!**

The doubling of the rooks on the now open e-file which was prepared for by 14. ♖a2! now secures for White the initiative, especially since 25... ♖ae8? fails to 26. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 27. ♖d5+! ♖xd5 28. ♖xe8+ ♔f7 29. cxd5, winning a piece.

► **32.4 Konstantinopolsky–Lipnitsky**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1950



The position is very similar to the previous game. The main difference lies in the fact that here there is no black pawn on e5 – so the rook manoeuvre we have become familiar with (♖a1-a2-e2) now serves to strengthen the control of the only open file.

**12. ♖a2! h6 13. ♖ae2 ♖d6 14. ♖bd2 ♖e6**

14... ♖f5!?

**15. ♖h4 ♖d7?!**

15... ♖g4!?

**16. ♖e4! ♖e7**

After 16... ♖xe4 17. ♖xe4 the threat of ♖h5 and then ♖xh6 would be very dangerous.

**17. ♖g6! ♖fe8**

17... fxg6?! 18. ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 19. ♖xe6! ♖xe6 20. ♖xe6±.

**18. ♖xe7+**

18. ♖xf6+!? ♖xf6 19. ♖f4 ♖f5 20. ♖d5.

**18... ♖xe7 19. ♖f4**

19. ♖h3!?

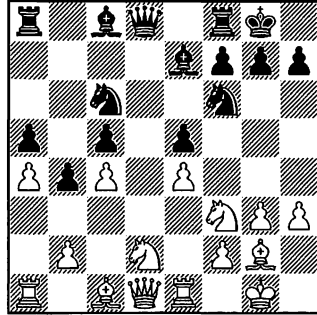
**19... ♖ed8 20. ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 21. ♖e5**

With a lasting initiative for White.

Two other examples of the rook lift to the second (or seventh for Black) rank:

► **32.5 Drumev–Matulovic**

Stip 1975



**13... ♖a7!**

The quickest way to activate this rook. Without becoming bogged down in a lot of variations, let us simply take a look at how this rook in the future course of the game manoeuvres nimbly along the seventh rank and ends up delivering the decisive blow:

**14. b3 ♖e8 15. ♖b2 f6**

Thus the game is at the same time an example of the f6/e5 barrier against the ♖b2.

**16. ♖f1 ♖d7 17. ♖c2 ♖d4 18. ♖xd4**

**cxd4 19. ♖ed1 ♖c7 20. ♖e1 ♖a6**

**21. ♖d3 ♖c5 22. g4 g6 23. ♖g3**

**♖h8 24. ♖f1 ♖xd3 25. ♖xd3 ♖c5**

**26. ♖a1 ♖df7**

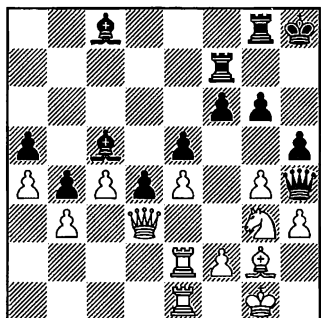
Perhaps Matulovic here put his hopes on the advance ...f6-f5, but this plan would only activate the ♖e1 and the ♖g2 (after e4xf5).

On the other hand, White has in any case no counterplay – f2-f4 would only leave behind dark-squared weaknesses on the kingside after ...e5xf4. Thus Black has all the time in the world and he later switches over to the g-file.

27.♖e2 ♖d6 28.♜fe1 ♖c7 29.♜c2  
♜g8 30.♘h1 ♖d8 31.♜ce2 ♖f8  
32.♘g1

32.♖d2!?

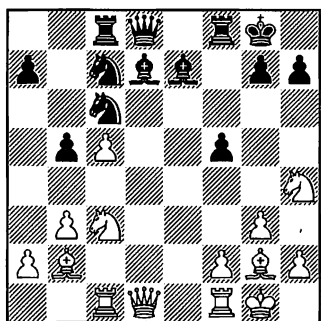
32...♖h6 33.♖d2 ♖h4 34.♖d3  
h5!



35.gxh5 gxh5 36.♘h2 ♜fg7! 37.  
♜g1 ♖f4 38.♘h1 ♜xg3! 39.fxg3  
♜xg3 40.♖d2 d3 0-1

### ► 32.6 Keres–Smyslov

Leningrad (USSR Ch) 1947



White has an extra pawn but Black is threatening 18...♖xh4. The natural retreat 18.♘f3 is followed by 18...♖f6 intending ...♖d7-e6, and thanks to the good centralisation of his pieces Black can easily fight on.

However:

**18.♜c2!**

This transfer of the rook to the d-file along the second rank decides the game in a few moves.

**18...♖xh4 19.♜d2! ♜f7**

19...♘b8 20.c6+-, 19...♘e5 20.gxh4+-.  
**20.gxh4!**

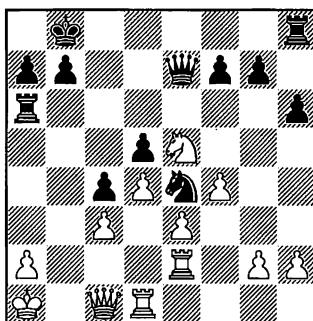
After 20.♖xc6?! Black could still sacrifice his queen with 20...♖xc6 21.♜xd8+ ♜xd8.

**20...♖e6 21.♘xb5 ♘xc5 22.  
♘d6+- ♜e7 23.♘xc8 ♖xc8 24.  
♖a3 ♘e4 25.♖xe4 fxe4 26.♖xe7  
♘xe7 27.♜xd7 1-0**

We now turn to cases in which the rook is brought into play via the third rank:

### ► 32.7 Lilienthal–Botvinnik

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1945



In order to deliver a decisive blow on the queenside Black needs to have his second rook there as well:

**23...♜d8!**

Botvinnik's suggestion of 23...h5! Δ...♜h8-h6-b6 was also very strong.

**24.♜c2 ♜dd6! 25.♘g4 ♜g6 26.h3 h5  
27.♘e5 ♜gb6 28.♘f3 ♖a3 29.♘g5**

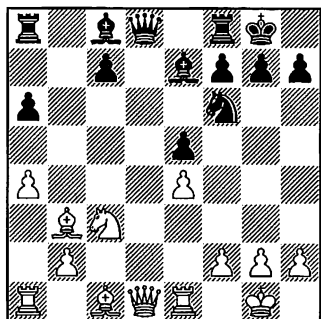
Or 29.♘e5 (Δ♘d7+) 29...♖a4! with the decisive threat ...♘xc3.

**29...♘xc3 30.♖xa3 ♜xa3 31.♜dc1  
♘b5 32.♘xf7 ♜xe3+-,**

and Black soon won.

► **32.8 Keres–Smyslov**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955



At first glance it is easier to bring the ♖a1 into the centre than the ♖a8, since White has no problems playing ♖a1-d1. But Smyslov finds a nice idea as to how to activate the ♖a8 without first having to move the queen or the ♕c8.

**13...a5!**

△...♖a6-d6. The obvious 13...♖b8 would be less effective.

**14.♘d5**

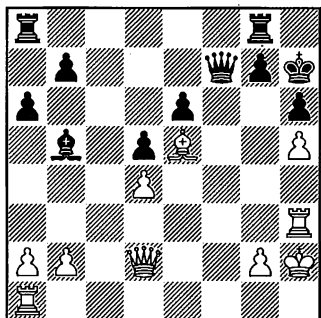
14.♕e3 ♖xd1 15.♕xd1 ♖b8 with an initiative for Black, 14.♖c2!?

**14...♗xd5 15.♕xd5 ♖a6 16.♕e3 ♕b4 17.♖e2 ♖d6,**

and thanks to the threats of ...c7-c6 or ...♕c8-a6 Black seized the initiative.

► **32.9 Minasian–Gelfand**

USSR 1982



White has built up a very promising attacking position on the kingside but for his complete happiness he still needs the ♖a1.

**26.a4! ♕c6 27.♖aa3! ♖af8**

Or 27...♖f5 28.♖af3 with an attack.

**28.♖af3! ♖e8 29.♗d3+ g6**

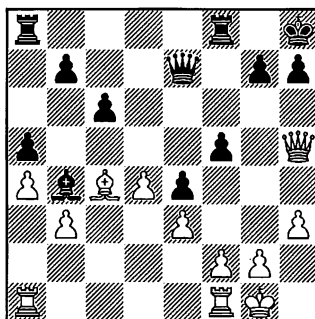
29...♕h8 30.♖g6! ♖xg6 31.hxg6 △ ♖xh6#.

**30.hxg6+ ♖xg6 31.♖xh6+! ♕xh6**

**32.♖h3+ ♖h5 33.♖xh5+ 1-0**

► **32.10 Groszpeter–Kupreichik**

Minsk 1982



**20.d5?**

A careless move – White disregards the fact that after the exchange of the c-pawn the ♖a8 will come into play very quickly and very effectively.

**20...cxd5 21.♕xd5 ♖a6! 22.♖fd1**

**♖g6 23.♖e2 ♕d6 24.♕c4 ♖e5**

**25.g3 f4 26.exf4 ♖xf4 27.♖xd6?!**

27.♖a2 ♕c5 28.♕h1 ♖f5 29.♕g2 ♖gf6 30.♖f1 ♣.

**27...♖xd6 28.♖xe4 ♖c5 29.♖g2**

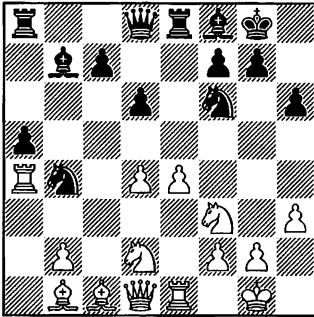
**♖gf6,**

and Black won.

In the following example each side used the third rank to develop his rook:

► **32.11 Timman–Karpov**

Kuala Lumpur (5th WCh game) 1990



**17.♖a3!**

Timman transfers his rook to e3, from where it will overprotect the ♖e4 and support the advance e4-e5. In addition the rook could very quickly pop up on g3 so as to make life difficult for the black monarch.

**17...♖a6!**

Karpov wasn't born yesterday either – the d-pawn will soon disappear from d6 (after ...d6-d5 or even ...c7-c5 and then an exchange on c5) and then the rook will be active on the sixth rank.

**18.♞ae3 a4**

Directed against 19.b3 Δ20.♙b2.

**19.♘h4 c5 20.dxc5 dxc5**

20...d5!? Karpov.

**21.♘f5 ♙c8?!**

Now White gets a dangerous initiative. Krogius' suggestion of 21...g6∞ was stronger.

**22.e5 ♘fd5 23.♞g3 ♘f4**

23...♙h8? 24.♘c4 ♙xf5 25.♙xf5±.

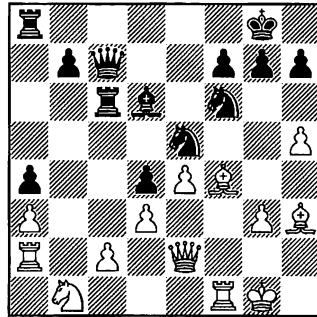
**24.♞f3 ♙xf5 25.♙xf5 ♘e6 26. ♙b1**

White has good attacking prospect on the kingside.

Now, two examples with the rook on the fourth rank:

► **32.12 Fischer–Keres**

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade (ct tournament) 1959



The ♞a2 and the ♘b1 are very passively posted, but the white activity on the kingside looks threatening – so Black has to reckon seriously with h5-h6 and/or ♙g5. Keres finds a pretty rook manoeuvre, which breaks the white kingside initiative:

**23...♞a5! 24.h6**

24.♙g5 ♘f3+! 25.♞xf3 ♞xg5–+.

**24...♙g6 25.♞f3 ♞h5! 26.♙g4**

**♘xf4 27.♙xh5**

27.gxf4 ♞h4–+.

**27...♙4xh5 28.♙g2 ♘g4 29.♘d2**

**♘e3+ 0-1**

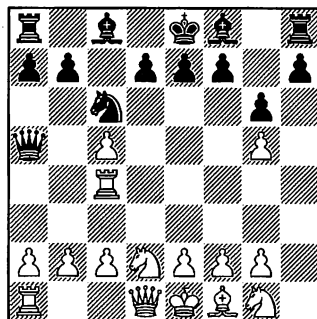
► **32.13 Trompowsky Attack**

Theoretical variation

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.♙g5 ♘e4 3.h4!? c5**

**4.dxc5 ♞a5+ 5.♘d2 ♘xg5**

**6.hxg5 g6 7.♞h4!? ♘c6 8.♞c4**



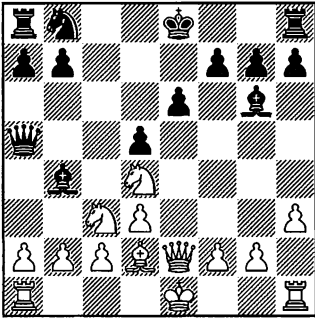
An original opening variation, which of course involves some risk.

In the game Botsari-Lakos, Pula 1997, things were unclear after 8...♘e5 (8...d5!? 9.cxd6 ♕e6) 9.b4 ♖a3 10.♞e4.

We bring this section to a close with a rook performing a little dance on the fifth rank:

► **32.14 Aronian–Seel**

Deizisau 2002



Aronian has in mind something astonishing with his rook on h1:

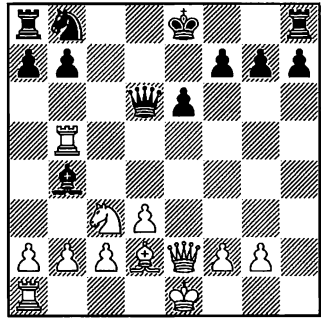
**12.h4!! ♖b6**

The h-pawn is hard to stop: **12...h5** or **12...h6** is followed by 13.♘xe6! (uprooting the ♕g6), whilst 12...♘c6 loses after 13.♘xc6 bxc6 14.h5 ♕f5 15.g4 d4 16.♘b1!.

**13.h5 ♕xh5**

13...♖xd4 14.hxg6± is hardly satisfactory but it was the lesser evil.

**14.♞xh5 ♖xd4 15.♞xd5 ♖b6 16.♞b5 ♖d6**



Now **17.♞xb7±** was good enough, but Aronian continued to play in grand style: **17.♘e4!?** ♕xd2+ **18.♖xd2 ♖c6?!** (18...♖h2 19.0-0-0 0-0 20.g4 with an attack) 19.♞c5 ♖d7 20.♞c8+!, and White won.

**Technique No. 33**

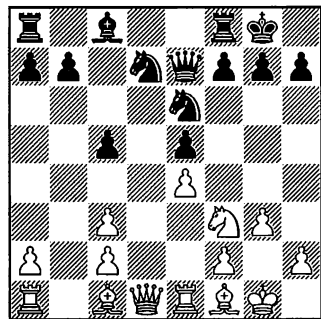
**Transferring the knight to the centre**

It is sometimes worthwhile sending an ineffectively posted knight on a long journey – when the destination is an attractive post in the centre.

First, one more example out of the praxis of the long-term World Champion Mikhail Botvinnik:

► **33.1 Botvinnik–Panov**

Leningrad (USSR Ch) 1939



The d5-square would be ideal for the ♖f3. So:

**15. ♖h4! g6**

This prevents ♖h4-f5.

**16. ♖g2! ♖g7**

So as, after ...♖f6, to develop the bishop to e6.

**17. ♖e3 ♖f6 18. ♖g2**

White is in no hurry with ♖e3-d5 and first he strengthens his position.

Another good move was **18. ♖d5 ♖xd5 19. exd5 Δf2-f4.**

**18... ♖e6 19. c4**

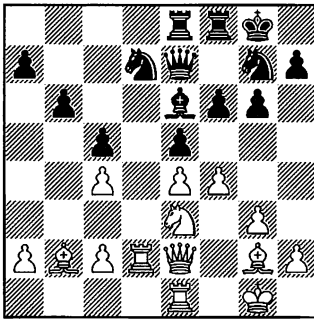
Δ♖c1-b2.

**19... ♖ad8 20. ♖e2 ♖d7**

Planning the 'barrier' (⇒ *Technique No. 3*) with ...f7-f6.

**21. ♖b2 f6 22. f4 ♖de8 23. ♖ad1 b6 24. ♖d2**

Intending ♖e1-d1.



White is in the act of taking complete control of the game — the doubled pawns do not count at all.

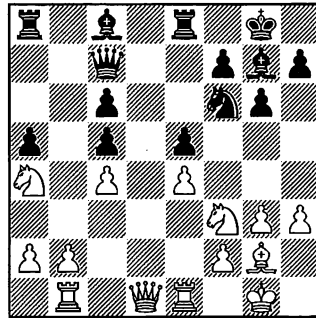
With the following operation Black seeks in vain to alter the course of events:

**24... exf4 25. gxf4 g5 26. fxf5 fxf5 27. e5 ♖f7 28. ♖d5±**

White won after 41 moves.

### ▶ 33.2 Portisch–Fischer

Sousse (Interzonal tournament) 1967



Doubtless many less experienced players would here protect the ♖c5 by **16... ♖d7**. But the proper place for this knight is on d4, therefore:

**16... ♖f8! 17. ♖b3 ♖h5!**

The same knight manoeuvre as in the previous example, only with reversed colours — the knight sets off on its route march ...h5-g7-e6-d4!

The famous Russian player and trainer A. Konstantinopolsky wrote:

*'More than any other player Fischer was well aware of the importance of the heritage of classical chess. He knew all the classic games by heart and employed his knowledge in masterly fashion in his own games.'*

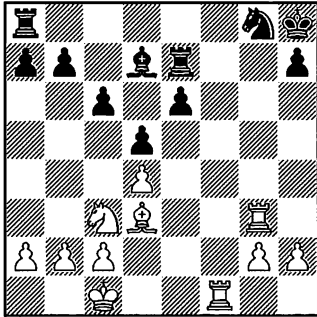
We can be certain that Fischer knew the previous game by Botvinnik.

**18. ♖e3 ♖a7 19. h4! ♖g7! 20. ♖h2 f6 21. ♖h3 ♖xh3 22. ♖xh3**

Here Fischer played **22... ♖e6**, and after **23. h5** Portisch obtained a certain initiative on the kingside. The prophylactic **22... h5!?** seems to be more precise, so as to then go on and play ...♖e6-d4.

► **33.3 Lasker–Pillsbury**

Paris 1900



The white knight is at present restricted by the barrier c6/d5, but Lasker finds a way to activate it:

**22. ♖b1!**

Planning ♗d2-f3-e5.

**22... ♜ae8**

22... e5? runs into 23. dxe5, and if 23... ♜xe5?? 24. ♜f7 ♜e7, then 25. ♜xg8+!

**23. ♗d2 e5**

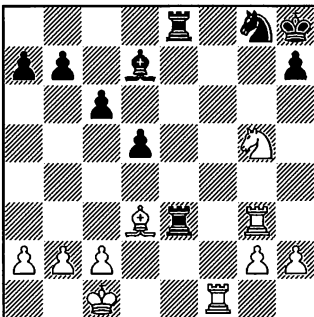
Otherwise Black is left after 24. ♗f3 with a hopelessly backward ♜e6 as well as the bad bishop.

Now the idea of ♗c3-b1-d2-f3-e5 no longer comes to fruition, but another lovely route opens up for the knight, taking it to b7:

**24. dxe5 ♜xe5 25. ♗f3 ♜e3**

25... ♜5e7 26. ♗g5±

**26. ♗g5**

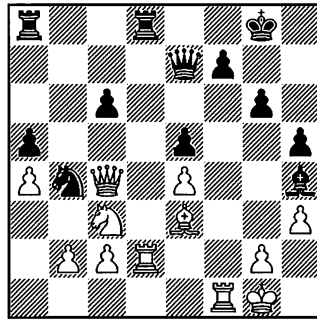


The knight has got into the game effectively and because all the other white pieces are very active too, White obtains a dangerous initiative.

**26... ♜xg3 27. hxg3 h6 28. ♗f7+ ♗g7 29. ♗d6 ♜e7 30. ♗xb7±**

► **33.4 Karpov–Spassky**

Leningrad (9th match game) 1974



Here it is only the black pawn on c6 which is controlling important squares for the knight (d5), but its own ♜e4 is blocking another central square.

Karpov finds an artistic way of activating the knight.

**24. ♖b1! ♜b7 25. ♗h2! ♗g7 26. c3 ♗a6 27. ♜e2! ♜f8**

27... ♜d7 (Δ... ♜ad8) is followed by 28. ♗d2±, and after 28... ♜ad8? the move 29. g3 ♗f6 30. ♜ef2 ♜d6 31. ♗g5 would win just like the one proposed by Rowson, 29. ♗b3.

**28. ♗d2**

From here the knight can, according to how matters lie, choose between the squares f3, c4 and b3.

**28... ♗d8**

28... ♗e7 could not save the day either: **29. ♖b3! ♜c7 30. ♜d2** (30. ♗c1!± Δ ♗d3, Rowson) **30... f5** (30... f6 31. ♗xa5! ♜xa5 32. ♜d7 ♜f7 33. ♗h6+ +-) **31.**

**f6d1** (31. ♖xa5? f4!) **31... ♖b8** **32. ♖c5**  
**♙xc5** **33. ♙xc5** **♞e8** **34. exf5** **gxf5** **35.**  
**♞h4+-.**

You should note how important a role the knight plays in all these variations.

**29. ♖f3 f6**

However, this attempt to tame the ♖f3 weakens the e6-square.

**30. ♞d2! ♙e7**

**30... ♖b8** **31. ♖g5!**

**31. ♞e6 ♞ad8**

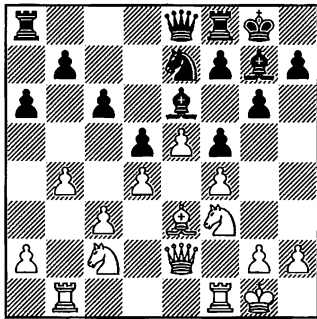
**31... ♖b8** **32. ♞fd1+-.**

**32. ♞xd8 ♙xd8** **33. ♞d1 ♖b8** **34.**  
**♙c5 ♞h8** **35. ♞xd8!**

And in view of **35... ♞xd8** **36. ♙e7** Black resigned.

► **33.5 Pillsbury–N.N.**

USA 1898



Where is the dream square for the ♖c2?

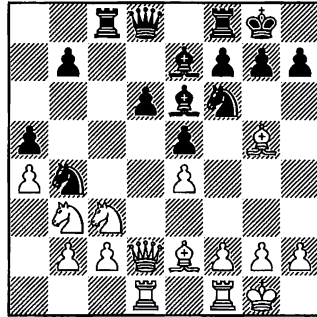
**15. ♖a1! b6** **16. ♖b3! ♞c8** **17. a4!**  
**♞c7** **18. a5! b5** **19. ♖c5±**

White has a clear plus: the knight is not only looking towards e6, in addition it is tying down forces to the protection of the ♖a6.

As the game went on, White was able to take advantage of his advantage in space to prepare a major piece attack on the g- and h-files.

► **33.6 Rossetto–Marini**

Mar del Plata 1950



Here the psychological barrier to ♖b3-a1! is even greater: since before the way to d5 can be made free (♖a1-c2-e3-d5), blockages like those on c2 and c3 must still be cleared away:

**13. ♖a1!!**

In addition the ♖c2 is protected, and **14. ♙xf6 ♙xf6** **15. ♞xd6** becomes a threat.

**13... ♖e8!**

This avoids the exchange on f6 and casts an eye on ...f7-f5, getting rid of the ♖e4 – which would also lessen the importance of the key square d5.

**14. ♙xe7 ♞xe7** **15. ♖b5! ♞d8** **16.**  
**c3**

This would bring to an end the clearance operations concerning c2.

**16... ♖c6** **17. c4!**

Takes control of the d5-square with another pawn.

**17... f5!** **18. exf5 ♞xf5** **19. ♖c2 ♞f7**  
**20. ♖e3 ♞g5?!**

**20... ♖f6** was better (**21. ♖xd6?** ♖e4).

**21. ♖d5!**

The knight has reached its target square!

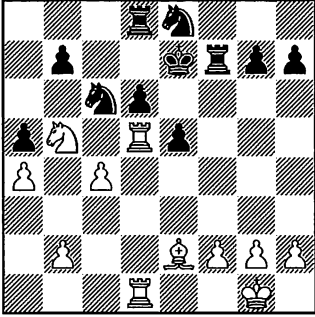
**21... ♞xd2** **22. ♞xd2 ♙xd5**

After **22... ♖e7** the move **23. ♙f3!** maintains the control over d5.

**23. ♖xd5 ♜f8**

Violent attempts at freeing such as  
**23... ♜b4 24. ♖d2± d5? 25. cxd5 ♖xd5**  
**26. ♖xd5 ♜xd5 27. ♙c4+- fail.**

**24. ♖fd1 ♜e7**



On account of the weakness of d6 and his control over d5 White has the clearly better endgame:

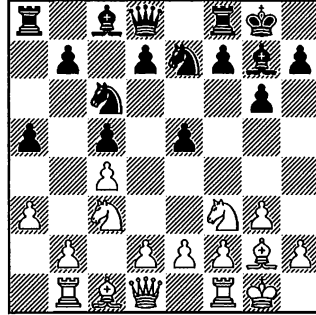
**25. g3 ♖f6 26. ♙g4 g6 27. ♜g2 b6**  
**28. ♖5d2 ♜g7 29. ♜c3! ♜b4 30.**  
**♜e4 ♖ff8 31. ♖xd6 ♜f5 32. ♖xb6**  
**♖xd1 33. ♙xd1 ♖d8 34. ♖b7+**

Black resigned.

► **33.7 English Opening**

Theoretical variation

**1. c4 c5 2. ♖c3 ♜c6 3. g3 g6**  
**4. ♙g2 ♙g7 5. ♜f3 e5 6. 0-0 ♜ge7**  
**7. a3 0-0 8. ♖b1 a5**



With his eye on d5, here White mostly plays

**9. ♜e1**

intending ♜c2-e3-d5, e.g.

**9...d6 10. ♜c2 ♙e6 11. ♜e3 ♖b8**  
**12. ♜ed5**

with slightly better chances.

**Technique No. 34**

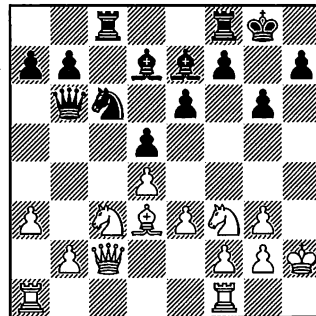
**The cloistered bishop**

One frequently wonders what can be done with, for example, a bishop on d7 (with pawns on d5/e6/f7).

Sometimes it is worthwhile retreating the bishop even further, for instance to e8 and then to f7, where it will perhaps overprotect vulnerable points, support an advance which offers good prospects and – generally speaking – conserve its ‘energy’ for better days.

► **34.1 Von Scheve–Tarrasch**

Dresden (German Ch) 1892



15...♗a5! 16.♘e5 ♕e8

Obviously Tarrasch is not worried by his opponent's last move (16.♘e5) – he knew that the at first glance modest position of the ♕e8 is anything but bad: ...f7-f6, ...♗f7, ...e6-e5 is being planned and in addition this move enables the bishop to overprotect the ♖g6.

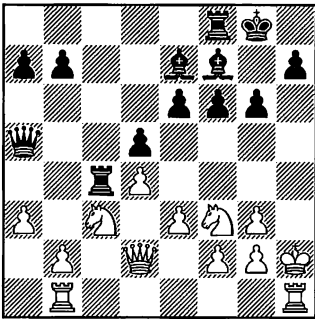
17.♞h1?!

White misses a tactical opportunity – 17.♘xd5!, though Black could maintain equality with 17...♞xc2 18.♘xb6 ♞d2 (18...♞xb2?! 19.♘c8 ♕d8 20.♘xa7) 19.♘c8 ♕f6 20.♞ad1 ♞xb2 21.♘xa7 ♞b3 22.♞b1 ♞xa3 23.♘b5 ♕xb5 24.♕xb5.

17...f6 18.♘f3 ♘c4 19.♞ab1 ♖a5

19...♗f7!?

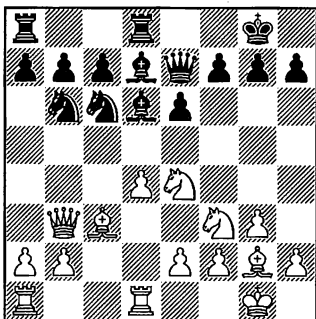
20.♕xc4?! ♞xc4 21.♖d2 ♕f7



Black has the better chances.

### ► 34.2 Beliavsky–Krasenkow

Germany Bundesliga 2003/04



The black position looks really passive. But Krasenkow finds a way to achieve some counterplay.

14...♕e8! 15.♞ac1 f6!

Black's intention is ...♕e8-f7 and then ...e6-e5, and in certain circumstances also ...♕e8-g6.

As the game progressed Beliavsky was unable to demonstrate any advantage and even drifted into a worse position:

16.♘c5?!

There were better moves:

16.♘xd6 cxd6 (= Ribli) or 16.♘fd2 (= Krasenkow).

16...♕xc5 17.dxc5 ♞xd1+ 18.♞xd1 ♖xc5 19.♕h3

19.♖xe6+ ♕f7 20.♖g4 ♘d5 21.♕d4 ♖c2 with good counterplay for the second player.

19...♘d8!

19...♕f7 20.♕xe6 ♖e7 21.♕xf7+ ♖xf7 22.♖xf7+ ♗xf7 23.b3= Ribli.

20.♕b4

20.♕xe6+?! ♘xe6 21.♖xe6+ ♕f7 22.♖g4 ♘d5 with an advantage for Black (Krasenkow).

20...♖h5 21.♕xe6+ ♘xe6 22.♖xe6+ ♕f7,

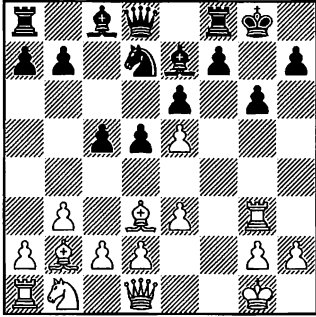
and Black seized the initiative.

It is a relatively frequent case to find a bishop 'parked' on d7/e8, so that it can later be activated via h5, e.g. in the French Defence or in the Dutch Stonewall.

We have no wish to go into that in more depth here, but we would like to finish with another case of a bishop's 'zigzag manoeuvre' (...♕e7-g5-h6-g7).

► **34.3 Bönsch–Plachetka**

Keszthely 1981



Doubtless White had pinned his hopes on an attack on the king.

**11...♙g5!**

The bishop goes to g7 – there it will both be useful for the defence and also threaten the ♖e5.

**12.♘a3?!**

12.c4!?

**12...♙h6 13.♚g4?**

Too optimistic. The correct way was **13.♙e2 ♙g7 14.d4** or **13.♙b5 ♙g7 14.d4**, though there could be no more hope of an attack on the king.

**13...♙g7 14.♚f4 a6**

Black prevents ♖b5 and threatens 15...♚c7. Also interesting was **14...f6!?**.

**15.h4**

It was already too late for **15.♙e2** (to be able to meet 15...♚c7 with 16.d4): **15...f6! 16.exf6 ♘xf6 17.♙xf6 ♞xf6 18.♚a4 ♙d7+**.

**15...♚c7!**

The advantages of the bishop's position on g7 should not be overlooked: the ♖e5 falls without White obtaining from the exchange any attacking chances worth mentioning.

**16.h5 ♘xe5 17.♞f1 ♙d7 18.h6 ♙h8 19.♞g5 f5**

With a strategically winning position.

**Technique No. 35**

**A good square for the queen on the edge**

Not necessarily a technique which could be used in every game, but nevertheless a motif which should be known:

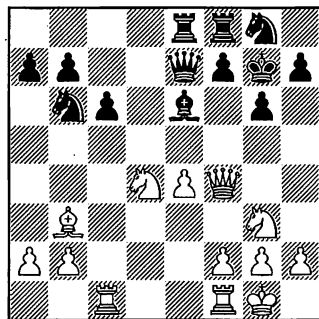
In a position with an opposing knight on b6 (b3) the a5-square (a4) is often a good position for the queen. It controls the important fifth rank, and both casts an eye on the ♖a7 and an X-ray eye on the d8-square and cannot be driven away by any opposing pawn.

Back at ⇔ *Technique No. 1* we got to know a disadvantage of the knight on b3/b6. Why do people put their knight on this square at all? – Well, for example in a position with an isolated pawn (isolated

queen pawn ♖d5) perfect control of the blockading square d4 is irritating, as in *Example 35.4* or *35.5*.

► **35.1 Smyslov–Rabar**

Helsinki (Olympiad) 1952



20. ♖xe6+ fxe6 21. ♖e5+! ♖f6  
22. ♖a5!

From here the queen attacks the ♖a7 and controls the whole of the fifth rank. In addition it is targeting the d8-square, which can become important whenever the struggle for the d-file begins.

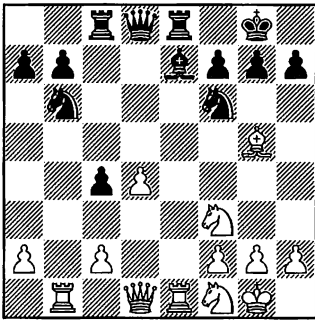
22... ♖c8 23. e5 ♖f4 24. ♖c4! ♖f7  
25. ♖d4

Black would just love to play 25... ♖d8 now so as to take up the struggle for the d-file.

25... b6 26. ♖d2 c5 27. ♖d7 ♖e7  
28. ♖d1 b5 29. ♖e4+- ♖b6 30.  
♖d6 c4 31. ♖c2 h6 32. ♖d4 1-0

### ► 35.2 Bondarevsky–Bronstein

Saltsjöbaden (Interzonal) 1948



In view of its worse pawn structure the white position looks somewhat suspect. But Bondarevsky proves that he too has his trump cards.

15. ♖d2! ♖fd5 16. ♖xe7 ♖xe7  
17. ♖a5

With the queen on a5 White is exerting considerable pressure on the opposing queenside. For the moment the ♖a7 is hanging, but should it take a step forward, then the position of the ♖b6 would be weakened.

17... ♖xe1 18. ♖xe1 a6 19. ♖b1! f6  
20. ♖e3 ♖xe3! 21. fxe3 ♖d5

Fortunately for him, Black still has this equalising route.

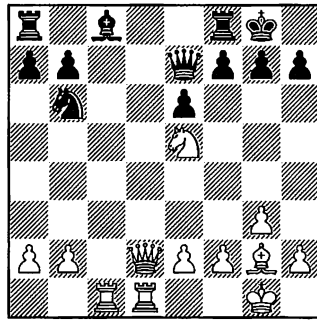
22. ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 23. e4 ♖c3 24.  
♖xb7 ♖xe4=

Two moves later a draw was agreed.

The next game was remarkable because the 19 year old Kasparov defeated the great defensive artist Petrosian in only 24 moves in a ‘bloodless’ game without any spectacular sacrifice, but with the ♖a5 motif!

### ► 35.3 Kasparov–Petrosian

Bugojno 1982



White is completely mobilised, whereas his opponent has great problems with his development. But now Black is hoping, by means of ...f7-f6, to drive away the giant on e5 and thus somewhat relieve his position.

16. ♖a5!

The white queen is casting an eye over the squares on the a5-d8 diagonal. The continuation 16... f6 does not work now – 17. ♖c4 ♖xc4 18. ♖xc4, and in view of the threat of 19. ♖c7 Black can practically resign. In addition the ♖a5 is controlling the whole fifth rank and tying the opposing rook to the ♖a7.

16...g6

Petrosian makes an airhole, just in case.

**17.♖d3!**

Now White can double his rooks on whichever of the two open files he pleases.

**17...♗d5**

17...♗d8 18.♖c5! ♖xc5 19. ♗xd8+ ♖f8 20.♗xf8+ ♖xf8 21.♞c7 f6 22.♞f7+ +–.

**18.e4**

Of course not 18.♗xd5? exd5 19.♖xd5 (19.♗xd5 ♖h3) 19...♗e6 20.♖a5 ♗fc8, and Black has good counterplay.

**18...♗b6**

Now the effective radius of the ♗g2 on the h1-a8 diagonal is reduced and Black is planning 19...f6, and if 20.♗c4, then 20...♗xc4 21.♞xc4 b6 22.♖c3 ♗a6 (23.♞c7 ♖xc7 24.♖xc7 ♗xd3).

**19.♗f1**

Now 19...f6 is again followed by 20.♗c4 with a big advantage, e.g. 20...♗xc4 21.♞xc4 b6 22.♖c3± ♗a6?, and now 23.♞c7 wins as the ♗d3 is protected, or 20...♗d7 21.♗xb6 axb6 22.♖xb6 ♗c6 23.a3 with a sound extra pawn.

**19...♗e8 20.♗dd1! ♗f8**

There is absolutely nothing Black can do and so he marks time. 20...f6 failed to 21.♗c4 with a practically won position for White, e.g. 21...♗xc4 22.♗xc4 b6 23.♖a4 a6 (23...♗b7?? 24.♗d7+–) 24.♗b3 b5 25.♖a5, and the struggle is as good as decided.

**21.a3 ♖g7 22.b3**

He is planning an advance with a4 and if appropriate after the queen moves away, a3-a4-a5.

**22...♖g8**

Or 22...f6 23.♗c4 ♗xc4 24.♞xc4 ♗f7 25.e5! with a strategically winning position.

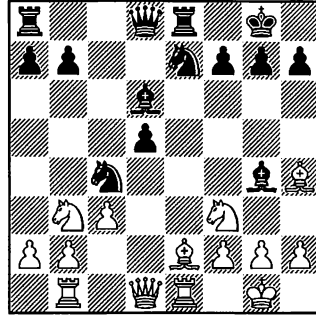
**23.a4 ♗d8 24.♖c5!**

In view of the variation 24...♖xc5 (24...♖e8 25.♗g4!) 25.♗xd8+ ♖f8 26.♗xf8+ ♖xf8 27.♞c7 Black resigned.

Two examples in which the ...♖a4 motif neutralises White's typical slight positional pressure in positions with isolated pawns:

► **35.4 Kindermann–Uhlmann**

Budapest 1985



In view of the isolated pawn on d5 Black has to live with what is in the long term a disadvantageous pawn structure. But his ♗c4 has an active post and – at least for the moment – is tying the opposing rook to the defence of the ♖b2. But does this circumstance alone compensate for the lasting weakness on d5?!

Uhlmann finds a way to crank up the pressure on his opponent's queenside:

**15...♖d7! 16.♗g3 ♗xg3 17.hxg3 ♖a4!**

Now the ♖a2 becomes the problem child.

**18.♗bd4!?**

Kindermann sacrifices the pawn, but activates his knight. An alternative would be 18.♗fd4 ♗xe2 19.♞xe2 ♗c6 (19...♖xa2?? 20.♞a1+–) 20.♞c2 – after that the ♖a2 could still not be taken (20...♖xa2?? 21.♞a1 ♗xb2 22.♖f3+–), but in this case the white rooks would be much too passive.

**18...♖xa2 19.♗b5**

Next came 19...♖a5? 20.♗xc4 dxc4 21.♗d6 ♗ed8? (the lesser evil was 21...♞ad8 22.♗xb7 ♗xd1 23.♗xa5 ♗xb1 24.♗xb1±, on account of the weakness of c4 the end-

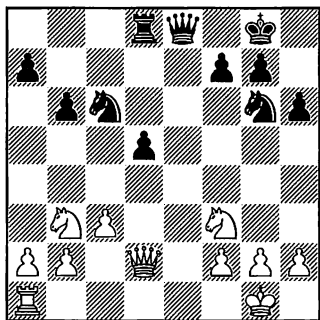
game is difficult for Black) 22. ♖xe7 ♖c5, and here White, by means of 23. b4, could retain the extra piece, e.g. 23... ♖xd6 (23... ♖c6 24. ♖d4 ♘xf3 25. ♖xf7!+-; 23... ♖h5 24. ♖b2 and then ♖d2) 24. ♖e8+!

Instead of 19... ♖a5? the move 19... ♘xf3 would have been correct, e.g. 20. ♘xf3 (or 20. gxf3 ♖ad8 21. b3 ♘d2 22. ♖a1 ♖b2∞) 20... ♖a5 21. b3 ♘a3 22. ♘xa3 ♖xa3 23. ♘xd5 ♖ad8 24. ♖a1 ♖c5 25. c4 ♘xd5 26. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 27. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 28. cxd5 a6 with a drawish endgame.

The essential in these complicated variations: after ... ♖d7-a4! White got out of passive defence on the queenside, by sacrificing the ♖a2 – with complications which should result, with correct play on both sides, in a roughly level position.

### ► 35.5 Navarro–Franzoni

Thessaloniki (Olympiad) 1988



Here too, at first sight White's chances seem better on account of the advantageous pawn structure.

21... ♖e4! 22. ♖e1

After 22. ♘fd4 ♘xd4 23. ♘xd4 (23. ♖xd4?! ♘f4 24. ♖xe4 dxe4) 23... ♖e8 Black would obtain control of the e-file.

22... ♖a4! 23. ♘c1

But now, after the white knight has given up control of d4, Black can finally free himself of his weakness.

After 23. ♖c2 ♘a5 (of course not 23... ♖xa2?? 24. ♖a1) 24. ♘fd4 ♘c4 Black's pressure on the queenside compensates for the weakness of the isolated pawn on d5.

23...d4!

Note: the ♖a4 is supporting this breakthrough from its position.

24.b3

24.cxd4 ♘xd4 25. ♘xd4 ♖xd4 with initiative.

24...♖a5 25.c4

After 25. b4 Black obtains good play with 25... ♖f5!, e.g. 26. cxd4 ♘f4∞ or 26. ♘xd4 ♘xd4 27. cxd4 ♖g4, in each case with compensation for the pawn, whilst after 25. cxd4 ♘xd4! 26. ♖xa5 ♘xf3+ 27. gxf3 bxa5 he obtains the slightly better endgame.

25...♖xd2

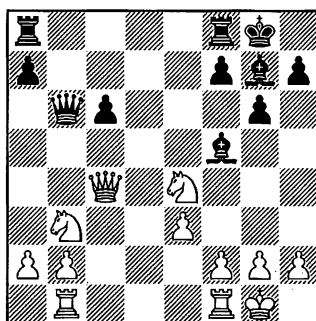
25... ♘h4! 26. ♖xa5 ♘xf3+ 27. gxf3 ♘xa5 28. ♘d3 ♘c6 was a little stronger.

26. ♘xd2 ♘f4

The isolated pawn has been promoted to a passed pawn, and Black can therefore be content with his position.

### ► 35.6 Portisch–Van der Wiel

Thessaloniki (Olympiad) 1988



White has an extra pawn, but in this open position the black bishop pair should not be under-estimated either.

20... ♖b5! 21. ♖c2

Portisch does not want to exchange queens on b5, so as not to improve Black's pawn

structure. On the other hand the black queen can now occupy a more active post. Moreover, 21. ♖fc1 ♗ad8 (threatens 22... ♗d1+) 22. ♖c2 is also followed similarly to the game by 22... ♖a4!, and White cannot make his material advantage count.

21... ♖a4!

The ♘e4 and the ♖a2 are both under attack.

22.f3 ♖xa2

22... ♗fe8!?

23. ♘d4 ♗xe4 24.fxe4 ♗ab8 25.

♘xc6 ♗xb2 26. ♗xb2 ♖xb2 27.

♖xb2 ♗xb2 1/2-1/2

## Technique No. 36

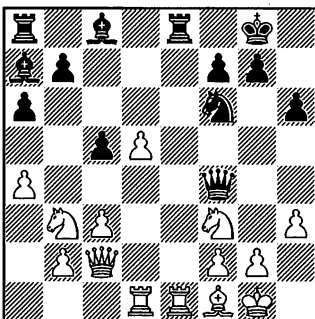
# Hindering the opponent's development: the pendulum manoeuvre

As the title suggests this technique is one which serves to make it difficult for the opponent to develop his pieces.

Sometimes it makes sense to put a piece on a provisional square in order to force the opponent into making an unfavourable move – then the piece is sent to its actual destination. You can then say that our move has ‘disappeared’, though its consequences which have been to our opponent’s disadvantage remain. Nowadays, moreover, such manoeuvres are a fixed component in opening theory, as we shall see at the end of this section.

### ► 36.1 Tarrasch–Alekhine

Baden-Baden 1925



White is not afraid of 21... ♗xh3 22.gxh3 ♖xf3 23. ♗g2∞.

However, next came

21... ♗f5! 22. ♗d3

(22. ♖d2 ♖xa4 23. ♘c1 ♗c2 24. ♗xe8+ ♗xe8 25. ♗e1 ♘e4 26. ♖f4 c4 27. ♘d4 ♗xd4 28.cxd4 ♖b4!∞ – Alekhine), and only then:

22... ♗xh3! 23.gxh3 ♖xf3

The move which ‘disappeared’, ... ♗c8-f5, forced the opposing bishop to d3, and now White no longer has the resource ♗f1-g2.

24. ♗xe8+

Otherwise the ♗d5 falls, but that was perhaps the lesser evil, e.g. 24. ♗f1 ♗xe1 (24...c4!?) 25. ♗xe1 ♖xd5 26. ♗g2 ♖g5.

Now it is the rook lift to the kingside which is decisive:

24... ♗xe8+ 25. ♗f1 ♗e5 26.c4

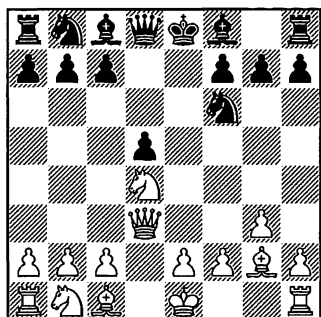
♗g5+ 27. ♖h2 ♘g4+ 28.hxg4

♗xg4

White resigned.

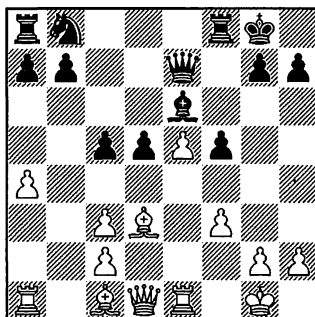
► **36.2 Réti–Alekhine**

Baden-Baden 1925



► **36.3 Geller–Jussupov**

Vilnius (USSR Ch) 1980



Of course, here Alekhine could play the obvious **6...♙e7**. But he decided on another continuation:

**6...♙b4+**

He wants to provoke c2-c3 first, but why?

Here the problem is that after the natural **7.c3 ♙e7** the advance e2-e4 would be made more difficult: The knight can no longer be developed to c3, moreover in some variations the unprotected position of the ♗d3 could make itself felt.

Réti worked out his opponent's idea and played something else:

**7.♙d2**

After **7.♖c3** the move **7...c5** is unpleasant.

**7...♙xd2+**

Even here **7...♙e7!?** was to be considered, since the white queen's bishop is not really well posted on d2 – it is not radiating any influence and is denying the knight the d2-square. In addition, in view of the pawn structure the black king's bishop can be described as a 'good' bishop, and that is a further reason in favour of **7...♙e7!?**.

Nevertheless, the move in the game is also OK.

**8.♖xd2 0-0**

The position is roughly level.

The ♙d3 is passive. White would be well advised to exchange it for the black knight which is aiming for c6 or to bring it on to the h1-a8 diagonal by means of ♙f1, f3-f4, g2-g3 and ♙g2. But White cannot force the exchange for the knight since after ♙d3-b5 Black can chase the bishop by ...a7-a6. Nevertheless there followed:

**13.♙b5! a6**

**13...♖c6** is followed by **14.♙xc6 bxc6** **15.♙a3!**, and the ♖c5 does not have much longer to live.

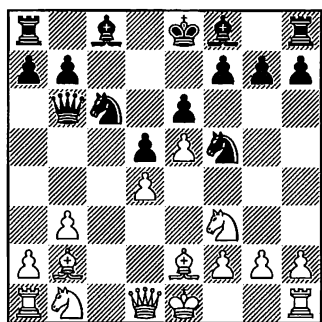
**14.♙f1 ♖c6 15.♖b1!**

The move **13.♙b5** has 'disappeared', but its consequences can still be seen: the black rook pawn is now on a6 instead of a7, and for that reason the b6-square and the ♖b7 have become weak – Black must now reckon with ♖b1-b6 together with a doubling (or even tripling) of the white major pieces on the b-file. For all this White has to thank the move which has 'disappeared', ♙d3-b5.

► **36.4 French Defence**

Theoretical variation

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♖c6 5.♖f3 ♗b6 6.♙e2 cxd4 7.cxd4 ♖ge7 8.b3 ♖f5 9.♙b2**



9...♙b4+ 10.♚f1

Otherwise the ♖d4 is lost.

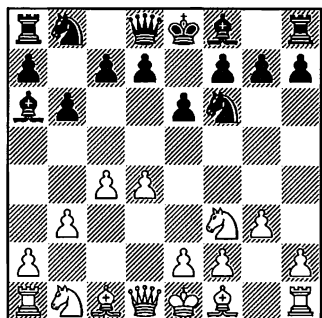
10...0-0 11.a3 ♙e7

On account of the disappeared move ...♙f8-b4+ White has lost his right to castle.

### ► 36.5 Queen's Indian Defence

Theoretical variation

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♗f3 b6 4.g3  
♙a6 5.b3



5...♙b4+ 6.♙d2

Not 6.♗bd2? on account of 6...♙c3 7.♞b1 ♙b7 8.♙b2 ♘e4.

6...♙e7

As a result of the move which has disappeared, ...♙f8-b4+, Black has forced on to d2 the opposing bishop which actually belongs on b2, which creates a certain disharmony in the white position.

In the *Sicilian Defence* the black queen belongs as a rule on c7 (after the preparatory



pawn move ...a7-a6) or a5. However, it is often first of all placed on b6 so as to drive the opposing knight away from d4 to a less aggressive position. By doing this Black anticipates the following dangers:

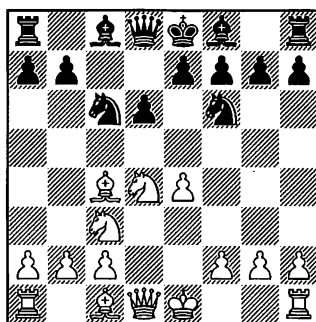
- A knight or bishop sacrifice on e6 (especially if the ♙c8 is developed to b7).
- That after f4-f5 the pressure on e6 will become too great.
- Sometimes also a knight sacrifice on f5 or threats against c6.

Here is a sample variation:

### ► 36.6 Sicilian Defence

Theoretical variation

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4  
4.♗xd4 ♘f6 5.♗c3 d6 6.♙c4



6...♞b6!? 7.♗b3

Sometimes in return the opponent also puts a piece on a wrong square; then with several pieces on provisional squares there is a positional struggle for concessions, with occasionally surprising tactical possibilities cropping up. Here e.g. 7.♗db5!? a6 8.♙e3 ♞a5 9.♘d4 ♘g4 (9...♘xe4 10.♞f3) 10.♘xc6 bxc6 11.♙d2 ♘xf2!? 12.♙xf7+! (12.♙xf2? ♞c5+) 12...♙xf7 13.0-0 or 11...g6! 12.♞e2 ♙g7 etc.

7...e6 8.0-0 ♙e7 9.♙e3 ♞c7

Unlike in the line seen last, the situation has calmed down. Black has a good game.

# Chapter IX

## Along the diagonals

This chapter deals with various formations on the long and other key diagonals, for instance the h2-b8 diagonal. Also, in  $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 37* (middlegame) and  $\Rightarrow$  *Technique No. 43* (endgame) we deal with typical positions with bishops of opposite colours.

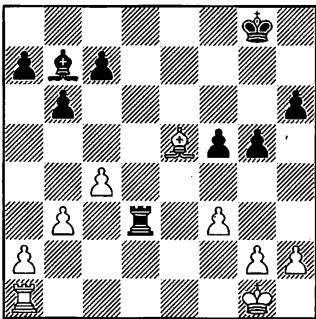
### Technique No. 37

## Attacking on the long diagonal Bishops of opposite colours – yes, please!

Let us start with the attack down the long diagonal, in which the decisive trick frequently consists of bringing about a position with bishops of opposite colours. As an introduction, an example which shows that even deep into the endgame an attack on g2 can be very unpleasant:

#### ► 37.1 Ehrlacher–Metzger

St. Petersburg 1992



The position looks very close to a draw. The black rook is active, but the  $\triangleleft f3$  is restricting the effective radius of the  $\triangleleft b7$  and thus protecting g2. For its part the  $\triangleleft e5$  is attacking the  $\triangleleft c7$  and variations

such as 26...c5 27. $\triangleleft b8$  a6 28. $\triangleleft e1$   $\triangleleft f7$  (28... $\triangleleft d2?$  29. $\triangleleft e7$ ) 29. $\triangleleft f2$  or 26... $\triangleleft d7$  27. $\triangleleft e1$   $\triangleleft f7$  28. $\triangleleft f2$  leave no doubt that the outcome of this game will be peaceful. But Black has other plans:

**26... $\triangleleft d2!$ ?**

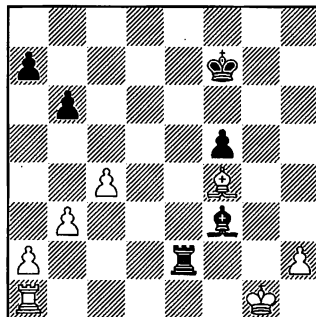
He sacrifices the  $\triangleleft c7$ , but threatens to activate his bishop with 27...g4!, with an unpleasant attack directed at g2.

**27. $\triangleleft xc7$  g4! 28. $\triangleleft f4$   $\triangleleft e2$  29. $\triangleleft xh6$  gxf3 30.gxf3  $\triangleleft xf3$**

Now 31... $\triangleleft g2+$  32. $\triangleleft f1$   $\triangleleft xh2$  threatens.

**31. $\triangleleft f4$   $\triangleleft f7$**

The king hastens to help. It wants to get to g4 so as to chase away the  $\triangleleft f4$  and to make ...f5-f4 possible.



The question is not whether there is a forced win for Black in the position (as we shall see, there is not!). But despite his extra pawn White is in great danger and that alone underlines the practical strength of the idea of 26...♖d2 and then 27...g4!.

**32.♖f1 ♗g6 33.a3 ♖h5!?**

After 33...♖b2 34.b4 ♕e2+ 35.♖f2 ♕xc4+ 36.♖e3 White would have no problems.

**34.♞e1!**

Correct! White's only hope of warding off the threats is to have an active rook.

**34...♞a2 35.a4 ♗g4 36.♕d6 f4 37.h3+ ♗g3**

Black's play was very inventive – now the opposing king is in great distress. Nevertheless White could have saved the game by activating his rook: **38.♞e7!** (Δ♞g7+), e.g. 38...♞a1+ 39.♞e1 ♞a2 (39...♕g2+ 40.♖e2 achieves nothing) 40.♞e7 with a repetition of moves.

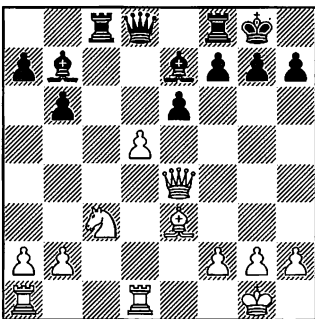
**38.h4? 0-1**

According to the databases the game ended here, possibly White over-stepped the time limit. However, in any case, after **38...♞h2** his position was hopeless.

The next two examples have transitions to positions with bishops of opposite colours:

► **37.2 Lisitsin–Zamikhovsky**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1931.



Black has the bishop pair. As soon as the ♖d5 has disappeared, White will have major problems on the a8-h1 diagonal, since he does not have a light-squared bishop to oppose the ♖b7 or which could at least protect g2.

**23.♕f6! 24.♞a4 ♕xc3! 25.dxe6 ♞f6**

Now the long light-squared diagonal has been opened up and the catastrophe on g2 is not long in coming.

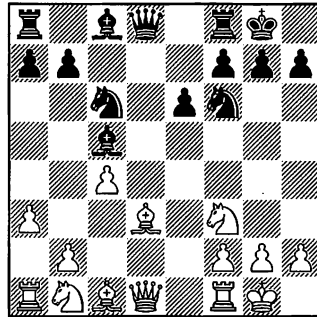
**26.exf7+ ♞xf7 27.bxc3 ♞g6! 28.g4**

28.f3 ♞xf3, 28.g3 ♞h5+.

**28...b5! 29.♞xb5 ♞e4 30.♖f1 ♞xe3 0-1**

► **37.3 Thorhallsson–Ulfarsson**

Gardabaer (Icelandic Ch) 1996



**11.b4 e5?!**

Instead of simply retreating his bishop, Black decides on a tactical option. But in doing so he under-estimates the fact that the white queen's bishop will then be without a counterpart and will become very active on the long diagonal.

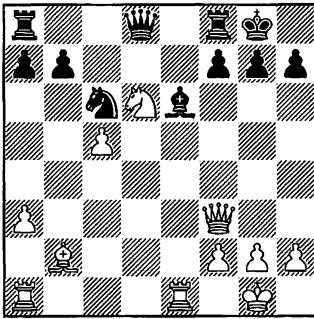
**12.bxc5 e4 13.♕e2 exf3 14.♕xf3 ♕e6 15.♗d2 ♗d7 16.♗e4 ♕xc4 17.♞e1 ♗de5**

White cannot retain his bishop pair – a cause for satisfaction for Black?

**18.♗d6!**

The queens must remain on the board.

**18...♗xf3+ 19.♞xf3 ♕e6 20.♕b2!**



The bishops of opposite colours are in no way the sign for a draw here, but much more for the fact that Black can expect serious problems on the long diagonal.

**20... ♖g5 21. ♜ad1 ♜ab8**

21... ♗g4 22. ♖g3±.

**22. ♜d3 ♗e7 23. ♜e5 ♖g6 24. h4 h5**

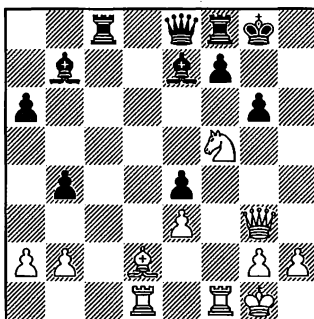
This loses but in any case there was no longer any chance of saving the game, e.g. 24... h6 (to prevent ♜g5) 25. h5 ♖h7 26. ♖e2! (Δ27. ♜xe6) 26... ♗h8 27. ♜g3!, and g7 cannot be held. White wins both after 27... ♗c6 28. ♜xe6 fxe6 29. ♜xg7 ♖xg7 30. ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 31. ♖xe6 and after 27... ♜g8 28. ♜xe6!.

**25. ♜g5** **1-0**

In the next example Black's long diagonal has already been weakened:

► **37.4 Smyslov-Bisguier**

USSR-USA 1955



Smyslov forces the transition to a position with bishops of opposite colours, in which his bishop will inevitably dominate the long diagonal.

**26. ♗d6! ♗xd6 27. ♖xd6 b3 28. axb3 ♖e6 29. ♖b4!**

Of course White avoids the exchange of queens so as to be able to create threats against the black monarch.

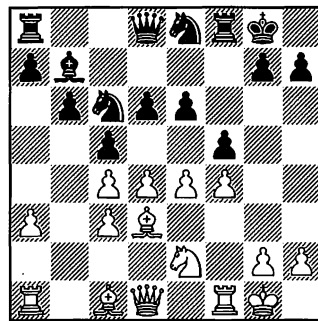
**29... ♗c6 30. ♗c3 ♜cd8 31. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 32. ♖b6 ♖c8 33. h3 ♜d5 34. ♖b4 ♖e8 35. ♗d4 ♗b5 36. ♜c1 ♜d8?**

After this the white queen decisively breaks into the black position. Black can still fight on after the correct 36... ♖d8.

**37. ♖c5 ♗d7 38. ♖g5** **1-0**

► **37.5 Mastichiadis-O'Riordan**

Moscow (USSR-USA) 1955



**13. ♗g3 g6?**

Black wants to hang on to the ♗f5, but weakens the long dark-squared diagonal, which is particularly dangerous in view of the absence of his dark-squared bishop.

**14. d5!**

The first step towards the activation of the ♗c1.

**14... ♗e7**

After 14...♖a5 15.dxe6 Black can no longer hold on to the ♔f5 and the white queen's bishop comes into play via g5, e.g. 15...fxe4 16.♗xe4 ♗g7 17.f5! ♜xf5 18.♞xf5 ♗xf5 19.♙g5 with a strong attack.

**15.♞a2?!**

15.dxe6 ♗g7 16.♞e1± was simpler and stronger.

**15...exd5?**

A theoretical mistake – now the activation of the ♙c1 can no longer be prevented.

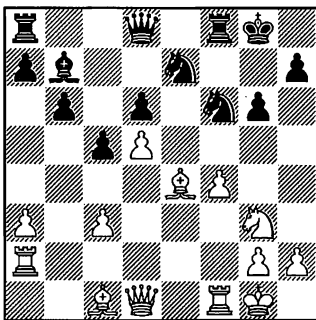
15...fxe4?! could not be recommended either – after 16.♗xe4 exd5 17.cxd5 ♙xd5 (17...♗xd5 18.♙c4 ♗ec7 19.♞d2) 18.c4 White develops his bishop to b2, which promises him more than sufficient compensation for the pawn he has sacrificed.

But 15...♗c7! was stronger. After it it would not be so easy for White to bring his dark-squared bishop into the game, e.g. 16.dxe6 ♗xe6 17.♞e2 ♗g7 18.♞fe1 ♞d7, and despite White's initiative Black can hope to hold the position.

**16.cxd5**

♗c3-c4, ♙b2.

**16...fxe4 17.♙xe4 ♗f6**



**18.c4! ♗xe4 19.♗xe4**

White has surrendered his bishop pair, but that is not important. His remaining

bishop stands ready to dominate the long diagonal, whereas his opponent has no effective options with his ♙b7, either for the defence or for counter-play.

**19...♗f5 20.a4 ♙a6**

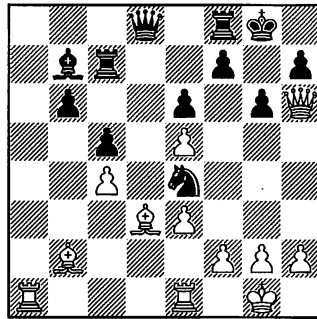
20...♗d4 21.♞af2 ♞d7 22.♙b2±.

21.♞d3 ♞b8 22.♞d2 ♙c8 23.♙b2 h6 24.♞c3 ♙f7 25.♗g3 ♗xg3 26.♞g7+ **1-0**

And now we turn to more complicated examples:

► **37.6 Taimanov–Averbakh**

Zürich (Candidates' tournament) 1953



**22.♙xe4! ♙xe4**

Why has White gone in for a position with bishops of opposite colours?

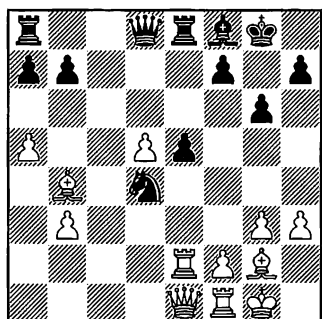
Here it is about forcing access to d6 for the white rook; Black will sooner or later be obliged to swap it off. And then the ♙b2 gets the opportunity to prove its real strength on the long dark-squared diagonal.

**23.♞ed1 ♞d7 24.♞d6! ♙b7**

And now White could set his opponent major difficulties with 25.h4! (Δh4-h5), e.g. 25...♞xd6 26.exd6 f6 27.h5 gxh5 28.♞a7 ♞f7 29.♙xf6! ♞xd6 30.♞xh5 with a very strong attack.

► 37.7 Akopian–Khachian

Erevan (Armenian Ch) 1995



And here too, White forces the transition to a position with bishops of opposite colours:

23. ♖xe5 ♜xe5 24. ♖xe5 ♙xb4  
25. ♖xd4 ♙xa5 26. d6 ♙b6 27.  
♖f4

There can be no talk of a drawish tendency here.

The ♠d6 is not Black's only problem – it is only a question of time till the white bishop pops up on d5 or c4, after which the ♠f7 becomes vulnerable. Unlike its white rival, the ♙b6 cannot cause the opponent any difficulties – it may perhaps not be so badly posted, but all the other black pieces are too passive and it cannot create any threats on its own.

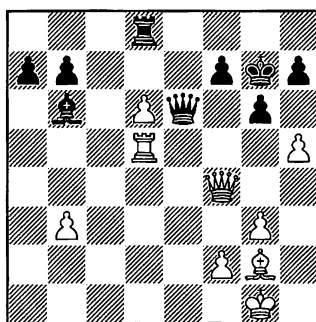
It would be better for Black to have a light-squared bishop here, so as to better protect the light squares and then possibly to be exchanged for the opposing bishop.

27... ♖d7 28. ♜d1 ♜d8

△... ♙c5.

29. ♜d5 ♖e6 30. h4! ♙g7 31. h5!

With this move White forces his opponent to weaken the position of his king.



31...h6

Or else things would have become too cramped for the black king after h5-h6+.

32. ♖d2 g5?!

32... ♜d7 looks better, though the black position would also remain bad enough. After the weakening ...h7-h6/...g6-g5 the direction of the attack switches from the long diagonal to the b1-h7 diagonal:

33. d7 ♖g4 34. ♜d6! ♖xh5 35.  
♖c3+ ♙g8 36. ♙d5! ♜f8

White has a very nice win after 36...g4 37. ♖f6 ♙c7: 38. b4!! (none of the black pieces can move!) 38...a6 (38...♙f8 39. ♜e6!+- △♖h8#, 38...♙xd6 39. ♖xd8+ ♙g7 40. ♖h8+! ♙xh8 41. d8♖+ +-) 39. ♙c4! b5 (39...♙xd6 40. ♖xd8+ ♙g7 41. ♖h8+ ♙xh8 42. d8♖+ ♙g7 43. ♖xd6+-) 40. ♙a2 a5 41. ♜d4 axb4 42. ♜e4+-.

37. ♖d3 ♙h8 38. ♙f3

A more thematic move was 38. ♖f5 △ ♙e4 – Black cannot prevent the catastrophe on the light squares.

38... ♖h3

38...g4 39. ♜xb6 axb6 40. d8♖+-.

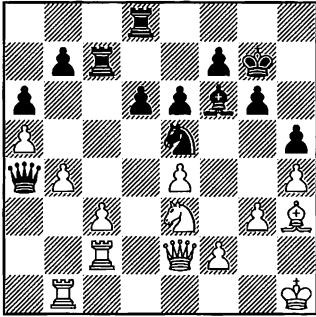
39. ♜xb6

1-0

The final example demonstrates the power of the pressure down the long diagonal in play on the queenside:

► 37.8 Hort–Fischer

Palma (Interzonal tournament) 1970



33...♞c4!

Black is aiming for a position with major pieces and bishops of opposite colours, because then his opponent would not have enough forces to protect the ♖c3. Should the latter in fact disappear, then the b4- and a5-pawns would be in danger. In addition, Black then creates a dangerous passed pawn by means of ...d6-d5. Here it is significant that the ♙f6 is clearly superior to its rival.

34.♞a2

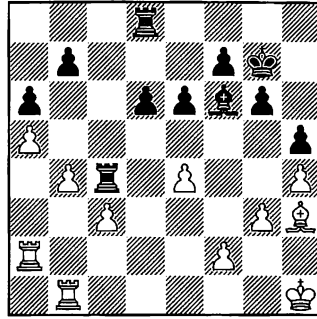
After 34.♞xc4 ♞xc4 35.♟xc4 ♟xc2 36.♞f1 ♟xc3 37.♟xc3 ♙xc3 38.♞b1 d5 (or 38...f5!?) White's position would be a less enviable one.

34...♟c6 35.♞xc4?!

The resulting endgame with the bishops of opposite colours can hardly be saved by White on account of the unfavourable

pawn constellation (almost all his pawns are on dark squares) and the passive ♙h3. So a much more tenacious try was passive defence with 35.♞d1.

35...♟xc4 36.♟xc4 ♞xc4



37.b5 ♙xc3 38.bxa6 bxa6 39. ♞b6

In his hope for counterplay, Hort exchanges the ♖e4 for the ♖a6. However, Black's central pawn duo turns out to be too strong as the game progresses.

39...♞xe4 40.♞xa6 ♞e1+ 41.♞h2 d5 42.♞c6 ♞a1 43.♞xa1 ♙xa1 44.a6 ♙d4 45.♞c2 ♞f6 46.f4 ♞b8 47.♞a2 ♙a7 48.♙f1 ♞e7 49.♞g2 ♞d6 50.♙d3 ♞b3 51.♙e2 f6 52.♞d2 ♞a3 53.♙d3 ♙b6 54.♞d1 ♞a2+ 55.♞f3 ♙d4 56.g4 ♞a3 57.♞g2 ♙e3 58.♞f3 ♙c5 59.♞g3 e5 60.fxe5+ fxe5,

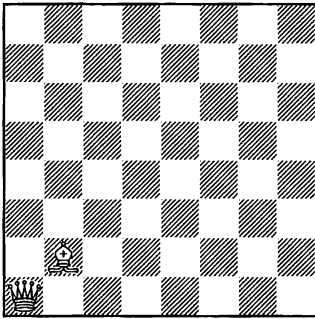
and Black soon won.

**Technique No. 38**

**The Réti battery ♖a1/♙b2 (♗a8/♙b7)**

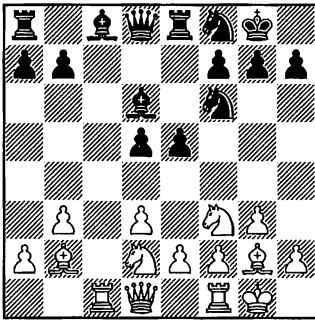
The basic point of this set-up (see diagram next page) is to exert strong pressure down the long dark-squared diagonal. It

is especially important to achieve domination of the e5-square or pressure against a pawn on the said square.



► **38.1 Réti–Yates**

New York 1924



**12.♖c2!**

White is planning ♖d1-a1, so as to strengthen the pressure on e5.

**12...♗d7**

**12...a5**, so as to achieve counterplay with ...a5-a4.

**13.♞a1! ♗g6 14.♞fc1 ♗c6**

Once again **14...a5!?**, and after **15.a4** the move **15...b5** secures counterplay.

**15.♗f1**

The knight is heading for e3, from where it can take aim at the ♗d5 and at the same time prevent ...e5-e4-e3, which is possible in some variations.

**15...♞d7**

Still **15...a5!?** ♠...a5-a4.

**16.♗e3 h6?**

A positional mistake. **16...♗g4 17.♗xg4 ♞xg4** was much stronger, after which

Black could with the move ...f7-f6 (cf. ⇒ *Technique No. 3*) weaken the effectiveness of the Réti battery ♞a1/♗b2, e.g. **18.d4 f6** with chances for both sides.

**17.d4! e4 18.♗e5**

The originally modest looking set-up now turns out to be highly dangerous – suddenly White gets a strong initiative, which practically unfolds of its own accord.

**18...♗xe5 19.dxe5 ♗h7 20.f4 exf3**

**20...♞ad8 21.f5 ♗gf8 22.♗d4±.**

**21.exf3 ♗g5**

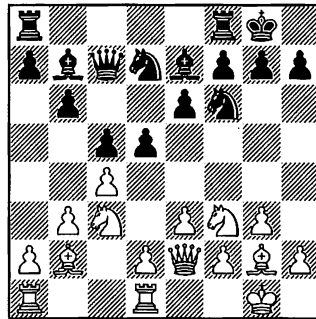
**21...f6 22.f4 fxe5 23.f5! ♗gf8 24.♗xe5±.**

**22.f4 ♗h3+ 23.♗h1,**

and Réti quickly converted his superior position into a win.

► **38.2 Smyslov–Gipslis**

Moscow 1967



**11...♞ad8!**

Why is Black moving this rook and not for example playing **11...♞fd8?** – the answer will soon become clear; in any case **11...♞ac8** with the same intent was also worth considering.

**12.♞ac1 ♞b8!**

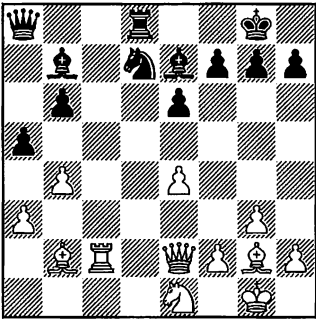
Now Black is prepared to set up the Réti battery with ...♞b8-a8, so as to strengthen the influence of his ♗b7 on the long diagonal.

**13.cxd5 ♗xd5 14.♗xd5 ♗xd5**

**15.e4 ♗b7 16.d4**

It may look as if White would now get the initiative, but Black finishes setting up his Réti battery, after which the pressure against e4 will promise him at least sufficient counterplay.

16...♖a8! 17.♘e1 ♜fe8 18.♞c2 cxd4 19.♞xd4 ♘c5 20.♞xd8 ♞xd8 21.b4 ♘d7 22.a3 a5!



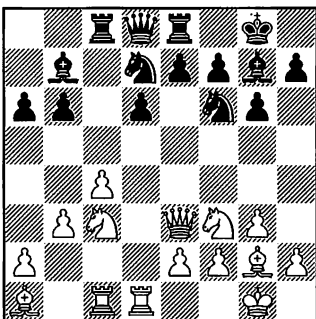
The last move makes it clear that from a8 the queen's influence makes itself felt not only in the direction of e4, but also down the a-file – the reply, 23.b5?!, to keep the a-file closed, would simply hand over to Black the key square c5.

23.♖c4 axb4 24.axb4 ♘f6 25.f3

Here the players agreed on a draw, although Black was slightly better after 25...♖a4 or 25...♞d1.

### ► 38.3 Karpov–Kasparov

London/Leningrad (1st WCh game) 1986



White has an advantage in space, which means that his position looks slightly better at first glance, doesn't it?

14...♞c5!

Kasparov activates his rook on the fifth rank and at the same time prepares to set up the Réti battery.

15.a4 ♖a8!

This strengthening of the control over the long light-squared diagonal is very important:

- The options for the ♘f3 have now been clearly restricted – it can only go to h4 or e1;
- White must reckon with ...♘d7-e5.
- Sometimes the ♖a8/♙b7 battery supports the breakthrough ...d6-d5.

16.♘e1

Rather modest, but Karpov minimises the risk by exchanging the ♙b7.

20.♙b2 ♞cc8 21.♙a3 ♘c5 22.♞b1 ♘e6 23.♖d3 ♘c7 24.♘f4 b5! 25.cxb5 axb5 26.♘b5 ♘xb5 27.♖xb5 ♖xb5 28.axb5 ♞b8 29.♙b2 ♞b7!

From here the queen supports ...b6-b5 – a consequence of the Réti battery, thanks to which the black queen actually got to b7.

18.f3

Directed against 18...♘g4.

18...h5 19.♘g2 ♞c5

The rook no longer needs the fifth rank and goes back home.

29.♙b2 ♞b7!

After 29...♞xb5 30.♙xf6 ♙xf6 31.♘d5 ♞eb8 32.♘xf6+ exf6 33.♞xd6 ♞xb3 34.♞xb3 ♞xb3 35.♞xf6 White could carry on torturing his opponent for a long time in this theoretically drawish endgame.

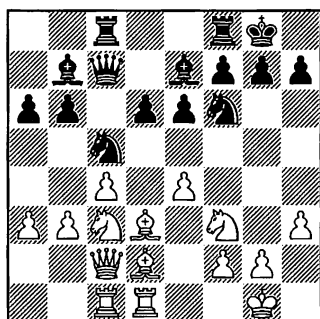
30.b6 ♞eb8 31.b4 ♘d7 32.♙xg7 ♘xg7

Here a draw was agreed.

Black's Réti battery ( $\text{♙b7}/\text{♜a8}$ ) is in general typical of hedgehog-like positions:

### ► 38.4 Tozer–Smagin

London 1989



**18...♜b8!**

Black plans ...♜b8-a8, and not only to increase his pressure on e4, but also to increase the effect of the breakthrough ...d6-d5. Moreover the ♞c8 now has an X-ray attack on the pretty white queen.

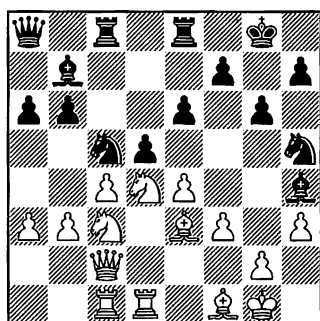
**19.♘d4 ♜fe8**

It is very probable that Black will get in ...d6-d5, which will lead to the opening of the e-file. So with some foresight Black improves the position of his rook.

**20.♞e1 g6 21.♙f1 ♜a8 22.f3**

White had to play like this to overprotect e4, but now his dark squares on the kingside have been weakened – a logical consequence of the effect of the Réti battery.

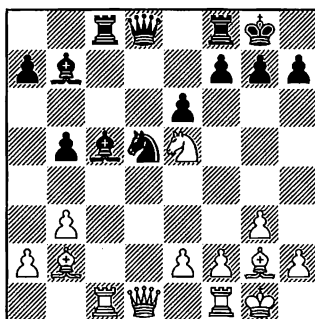
**22...♘h5 23.♙e3 ♙h4 24.♞ed1 d5!**



With ...d6-d5 a new phase of the game is beginning, which we will not analyse here. But it is obvious that Black has the initiative in the resulting complications thanks to the factors mentioned (pressure from the Réti battery, the vis à vis of the ♜c2/♞c8, weakening of the dark squares on White's kingside).

### ► 38.5 Gutman–An.Sokolov

Biel (Interzonal tournament) 1985



**15.♘d3! ♙e7 16.♞xc8 ♜xc8 17. ♜a1! ♘f6**

The idea of restraining the Réti battery which has just been set up by means of **17...f6!?** was well worth considering, but probably Sokolov did not want to weaken the ♖e6.

**18.♞c1 ♜a8**

Interesting – Black is setting up a Réti battery too!

**19.♞c7!**

19.♙xb7?! ♜xb7=.

**19...♙xg2 20.♞xe7**

Unlike his opponent White can, if required, blunt the effect of the opposing ♜/♙ battery with f2-f3.

**20...♘d5?!**

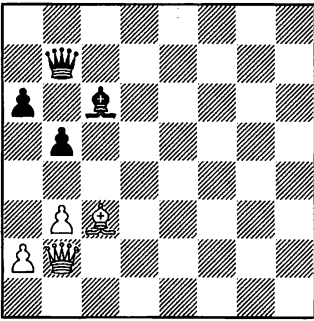
**20...♙h3 21.f3 ♘d5** was stronger, although White would then be somewhat better after **22.♞d7 e5 23.♞d6 f6 24.♘f2 ♙c8 25.♜d1 ♘c7 26.e4.**

21.♖d7 ♕h3,  
and Gutman could have forced an ending with a sound extra pawn by

means of 22.♙xg7 ♘b6 (22..♘c3 23.f3!  
♘xe2+ 24.♖f2+-) 23.♘f4! ♘xd7  
24.♙xf8 ♘xf8 25.♘h3.

### Technique No. 39

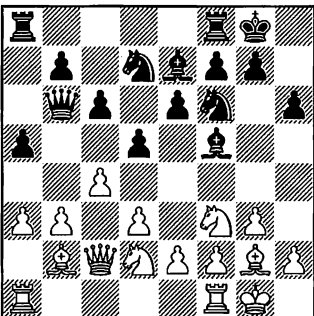
## The Smyslov battery ♖b2/♙c3 (♗b7/♘c6)



This formation is very similar to the Réti battery – here too the main concern is the long dark-squared diagonal. But sometimes it is significant that here the two participating pieces support the advance b3-b4 (or ...b5). In addition the queen is often more flexible on b2 than on a1 as in the Réti battery.

### ► 39.1 Smyslov–Djurasevic

Belgrade (Yugoslavia-USSR) 1956



12.♙c3! ♗fd8 13.♗b2!

The important role of the ♖b2/♙c3 battery is obvious: White exerts strong pressure on the long dark-squared diagonal and at the same time plans to play b3-b4.

13...♘c5 14.♙d4 dxc4 15.dxc4  
♗c7 16.b4 axb4 17.axb4 ♘cd7

17...♘a4!? 18.♗b3 ♘b6.

18.♗xa8 ♗xa8 19.c5 ♗b8  
20.♘c4 ♙e4 21.♙h3 ♙f5

21...♙d5!?

22.♙xf5 exf5 23.♖d1

Now Black would like to bring his ♘f6 to d5, but the white ♖/♙ battery does not yet allow him to do so.

23...♗f8 24.♘e3!

Smyslov forces ...g7-g6, which will lastingly weaken the a1-h8 diagonal.

24...g6 25.♘e5 ♖d8 26.♘5c4  
♗a8 27.♙c3 ♗c8 28.♗b3

This threatens 29.♙xf6 ♙xf6 (29...♘f6 30.♘b6) 30.♘d6.

28...♘e8 29.♙b2 ♗a6 30.♗d3  
♘df6 31.♘d6

The game continued 31...♗e6 32.♘xb7 with a sound extra pawn.

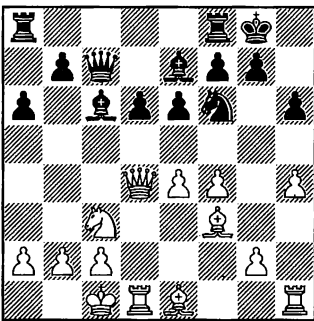
But after 31...♙xd6 32.cxd6 ♗d7 33. ♗d4 too, White would be easily winning thanks to his mastery of the long diagonal – the threats of g3-g4 or ♘e3-c4-b6 and then d6-d7 are decisive.

The 'black' Smyslov battery ♖b7/♗c6 is especially often useful in the Sicilian Defence. One of the main variations in the Scheveningen System goes as follows:

1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♞xd4 ♟f6  
 5.♞c3 d6 6.♗e2 ♗e7 7.0-0 0-0 8.f4 ♞c6  
 9.♗e3 ♖c7 10.♖e1 a6 11.♖g3 ♞xd4  
 (the bishop can also go via d7: 11...♗d7  
 12.♞h1 b5 13.a3 ♞xd4 14.♗xd4 ♗c6 by  
 transposition of moves) 12.♗xd4 b5 13.  
 a3 ♗b7 14.♞h1 ♗c6 15.♞ae1 ♖b7,  
 and now the usual continuation is 16.♗d3  
 b4 17.axb4 ♖xb4 18.♞e2 ♖b7 19.e5  
 (this lengthens the diagonal to g2) 19...  
 ♞h5 20.♖h3 g6 with complicated play.  
 This example makes it clear how the ♖b7  
 is effective both directed towards e4 and  
 also on the b-file (the b4-, b2-squares).  
 Next come two examples from the Sicilian,  
 in which the setting up of the Smyslov  
 battery is less obvious:

► 39.2 Averbakh–Botvinnik

Training match Moscow 1957



The white threat of g2-g4-g5 looks extremely dangerous.

16...b5!

It looks as if Black would have decided on an attack on the king.

17.g4 b4 18.♞e2

18.♖xb4?? d5-+.

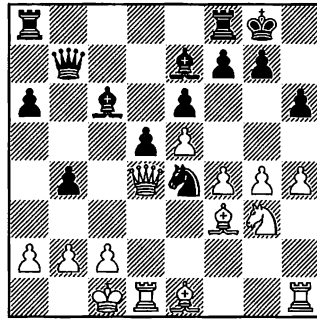
18...♖b7!

Now Black's idea becomes clear. By advancing the b-pawn he has driven the opposing knight out of the centre and at the same time prepared to set up the Smyslov battery ♖b7/♗c6. In what follows it is above all about e4 and d5.

19.♞g3

Of course the knight can protect the ♗e4 from here too. But it is no longer controlling d5 and White will soon feel that most keenly.

19...d5! 20.e5 ♞e4!



Without the Smyslov battery the knight could occupy this square at best after a pawn sacrifice. Now thanks to his counterplay in the centre Black gets a dangerous initiative.

21.♗xe4

21.♞xe4? dxe4 22.♗g2 ♞fd8 23.♖e3 ♞xd1+ 24.♞xd1 ♞d8+ 25.♞c1 ♖d7 26.♗g3 ♗c5! 27.♖e2 ♖d5 28.♞b1 ♖d2-+.

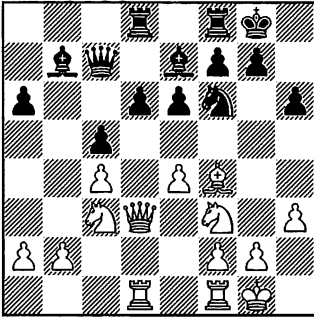
21.♗g2 ♞ac8 22.♞xe4 dxe4 23.♖e3 ♗d5 – Black has brought his opponent's attack to a standstill and set his own going.

21...dxe4 22.♖e3 ♞fd8 23.♗f2 ♞xd1+ 23...♗d5!?

24.♞xd1 ♗xh4 25.♞xe4 ♗xe4 26.♗xh4 ♞c8 27.♞d8+ ♞xd8 28.♗xd8 ♖d5 29.♗e7 ♖c4 30.♖f2 ♖xa2 31.♗xb4 ♖a1+ 32.♞d2 ♖xb2, and Black won.

► 39.3 Maliutin–R.Sherbakov

Jurmala 1989



This too is a Sicilian position;  $\text{♙b5x} \text{♜c6}$   $\text{♞b7xc6}$  were played and later  $\dots \text{c6-c5}$ .

**17...♙c6! 18.♞fe1 ♚b7!**

Here the Smyslov battery serves the following purposes:

- Pressure on e4
- Support of the advance  $\dots \text{d6-d5}$ .

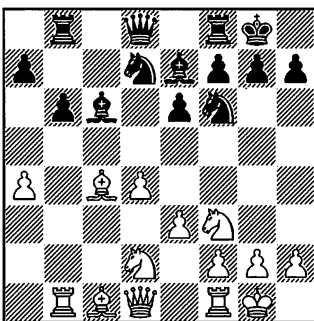
**19.b3 ♞fe8 20.♚c2 ♙f8 21.♙g3 ♜h5 22.♙h2 ♜f6 23.♞e3 d5! 24.exd5 exd5 25.♜xd5 ♜xd5 26.cxd5 ♙xd5?! 27.♞de1 ♞xe3 28.♞xe3 ♞c8 29.♙e5 c4**

Black has the initiative.

Further examples:

► 39.4 Petrosian–Botvinnik

Moscow (17th WCh game) 1963



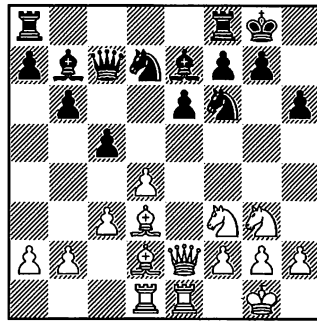
White's main idea consists of the preparation of the central advance  $\text{e3-e4}$ , e.g. by  $\text{♞e1}$  and/or  $\text{♙d3}$ . Is there a suitable counter-measure?

**13...♚c7! 14.♙b2 ♚b7!**

Thanks to the Smyslov battery Black has strengthened his control over the e4-square. If the occasion arises Black can – even after  $\text{♙c4-d3}$  – play  $\dots \text{♜e4}$ . The position is roughly level.

► 39.5 Zapata–Dlugy

Tunis (Interzonal tournament) 1985



**14...♙d5! 15.♙b1 ♚b7!**

Here the Smyslov battery is used to strengthen the pressure on the squares along the long light-squared diagonal. First and foremost it is about the  $\text{♜f3}$ , because now the idea of  $\dots \text{♙b7xf3}$  is very unpleasant.

**16.♜h4**

This avoids the said exchange but the h4-square is not particularly well suited to the knight. In addition White now gets an isolated pawn on d4.

**16...cxd4 17.cxd4 ♞fe8 18.♚d3 ♜f8 19.f4**

In his search for active play White weakens the a8-h1 diagonal.

19...♖ad8 20.♙c3 b5 21.b3 ♘c6  
22.♗f3 ♘g6 23.f5 ♗f4 24.♖f1 b4  
25.♗e5

25.♙b2 is followed by 25...♗h3+ 26.  
gxh3 (26.♖h1 ♗g4-+) 26...♙xf3干.

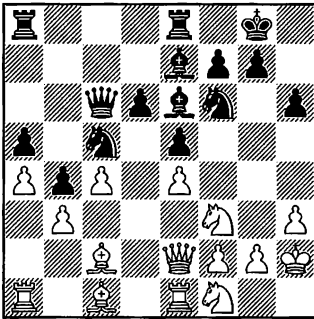
25...♗xg2 26.fxe6 fxe6 27.♙b2?

The lesser evil would be 27.♗xc6 ♖xc6  
28.♖xg2 ♖xg2+ 29.♖xg2 bxc3 30.♙xe6  
♗d5干.

27...♗xe1 28.♙xe1 ♙d6,  
and Black won.

### ▶ 39.6 Pietzsch–Spassky

Varna (Olympiad) 1962



20...♖b7! 21.g4 ♙d7 22.♗g3 ♙c6

Thanks to the Smyslov battery Black has  
strengthened his pressure on e4.

23.g5 hxg5 24.♙xg5 ♗h7 25.♙d2  
g6

Now White must always be reckoning  
with ...f7-f5.

26.♙g1 ♖h8 27.♖e3 ♗e6

Here 27...f5 was in any case bad on  
account of 28.♖h6 ♙g8 29.♗g5.

28.♗e2 ♙g8

28...♗c5 29.♗g3 ♙g8 30.♙ae1 f5!?

29.♙g3?

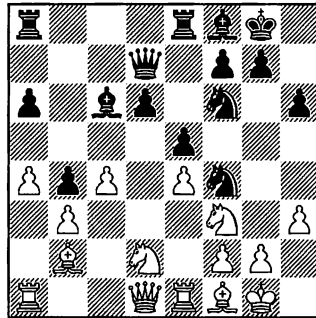
29.♙ae1 ♙af8 with an initiative for  
Black. Now the first player loses the ♗e4.

29...♗c5 30.♖h6 ♙xe4 31.♗g5  
♙g7 32.♙g4? ♙xc2 33.♙h4 ♙xg5  
34.♙xg5 ♗e4 35.♙g1 ♗exg5

White resigned.

### ▶ 39.7 Guseinov–Polovodin

Tallinn 1983

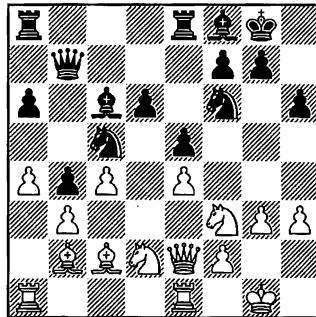


Black has a weakness on d6 and must at  
some point also reckon on c4-c5.  
Polovodin brings about a set-up very  
similar to the previous example:

20...♗e6! 21.♙d3 ♗c5! 22.♙c2  
♖b7! 23.♖e2 ♗h5

This provokes a weakening of the long  
diagonal. The loss of time is not serious.

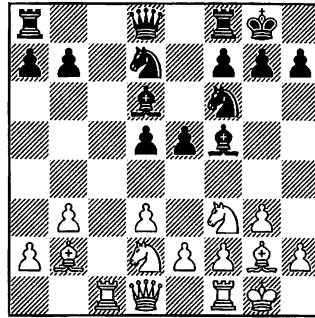
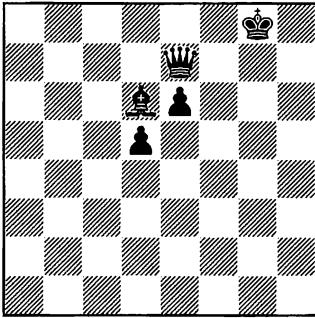
24.g3 ♗f6



The pressure on e4 secures sufficient  
counter-chances for Black.

**Technique No. 40**

**The Lasker formation ♖e7/♘d6**



This sort of set-up supports the central advance ...e6-e5 and exerts strong control on the squares along the a3-f8 diagonal.

**11...♖e7! 12.♖c2 a5!**

Intending ...a5-a4. It is very important here that the ♖e7 and ♘d6 are not only protecting the e5-pawn, but also preventing the move a2-a3.

► **40.1 Réti–Lasker**

New York 1924

**1.♘f3 d5 2.c4 c6 3.b3 ♘f5 4.g3 ♗f6 5.♘g2 ♗bd7 6.♘b2 e6 7.0-0 ♘d6 8.d3 0-0 9.♗bd2 e5**

**13.a4**

Of course Réti did not want to allow ...a5-a4xb3, but now the ♖b3 and the b4-square become weak.

If Lasker had not previously set up his ♖e7/♘d6 battery, White could meet the move ...a7-a5 with a2-a3, so that after ...a5-a4 he would have the reply b3-b4.

A more accurate way was first **9...♖e7** – which Lasker went on to play two moves later.

**13...h6**

Freeing the h7-square for the ♘f5.

**10.cxd5 cxd5 11.♖c1?!**

**14.♖a1**

**14.♗h4?! ♘h7 15.e4 ♗c5** with an initiative for Black.

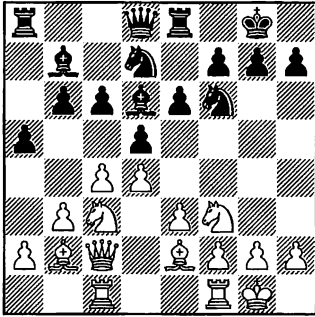
According to Kasparov the only way White could hope to come out of the opening with something of an advantage was **11.e4!**, since in the event of **11...dxe4 12.dxe4 ♘xe4?! 13.♗xe4 ♗xe4** the continuation **14.♗h4 ♗df6 15.♗f5** is rather unpleasant for Black. But Réti, rather too stereotypically, follows his favourite plan: ♖c1-c2, ♖d1-a1, and if appropriate ♖f1-c1.

**14...♖fe8 15.♖fc1 ♘h7**

Black's set-up has completely justified itself. His centre is strong and secure despite the opposing pressure on e5. Thanks to the ideas of ...♗d7-c5 (weakness of b3!) and/or ...e5-e4 Black's chances are already preferable.

► **40.2 Portisch–Ljubojevic**

Linares 1981



On account of the advantage in space the white position looks better. Obviously Black has to aim for one of the freeing advances: ...e6-e5 or ...c6-c5.

**12...♖e7 13.♜fd1**

After **13.e4 dxe4 14.♞xe4 ♞xe4 15.♞xe4** Black could prove the effectiveness of the Lasker formation by means of **15...e5!**, e.g. **16.dxe5 ♞xe5 17.♞xe5 c5!** (now a further advantage of the queen's position on e7 becomes clear – from there it protects the ♞b7) **18.♞e3 ♞xe5 19.♞xe5 ♞xe5 20.♞xe5 ♜xe5**, and White would have to fight for the draw.

**13...♞a3!?**

An interesting moment. Black employs his Lasker formation to swap off the dark-squared bishops. But when one looks at the pawn structure the ♞d6 is 'better' than the ♞b2 – so why is Black actually doing that?

The following can be said. Black is somewhat cramped and must, as was said, free himself by means of ...e6-e5 or ...c6-c5. But after **13...c5!** **14.dxc5** the ♞b2 would become a very active and dangerous piece, whilst **13...e5?** fails to **14.dxe5 ♞xe5 15.cxd5 cxd5 16.♞b5±**. And **13...dxc4!** **14.bxc4 e5** is followed by the line pointed out by Kharitonov

**15.c5! bxc5 16.dxe5 ♞xe5 17.♞xe5 ♞xe5 18.g3 ♞e7 19.♞a4** with advantage to White, since the ♞b2 is now once more clearly more active than its rival on d6. And that is exactly what Black wants to avoid with the exchange of the dark-squared bishops.

**14.♞xa3 ♞xa3 15.♞e5!?**

After **15.♞d3 ♞e7 16.♞b2 dxc4 17.bxc4 c5 18.♞e2 ♜ab8** Δ...e6-e5 the position would be more or less level. The text move is more aggressive, yet Ljubojevic manages to keep things level.

**15...♞xe5 16.dxe5 ♞d7 17.f4**

**♜ed8 18.♞h1**

**18.cxd5!?** exd5 **19.♞d3.**

**18...♞e7 19.♞a4 ♜ac8**

Δ...b6-b5.

**20.♞b2 ♜b8 21.♞c2**

**21.cxd5 exd5 22.♞g4 ♞a8!∞.**

**21...♞a8!?**

**21...♜bc8.**

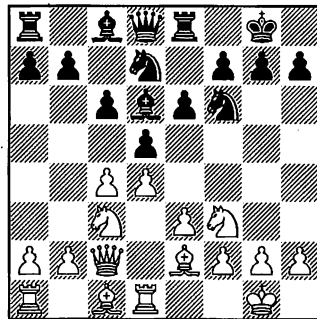
**22.cxd5 exd5 23.e4 dxe4 24.**

**♞xe4 c5**

Complicated and with chances for both sides.

► **40.3 Eingorn–Sveshnikov**

Moscow 1989



**9...♞e7 10.e4 dxe4 11.♞xe4 ♞xe4 12.♞xe4 e5**

In this example too, the Lasker formation helps with the realisation of this typical advance.

13. ♖g5 f6

13... ♗f8!?

14. ♖e3 exd4 15. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 16.

♜xd4 ♜c5 17. ♖f3 a5

Black has practically equalised.

on c4). But on the other hand the black major pieces are now very actively posted on the e-file and the ♜f6 gets the e4-outpost.

14...exd5 15.b4

It may look as though White is finally at the end of his worries about the ♖a3, but ...

15...b5!

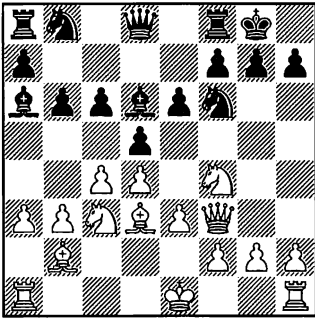
Black plans ...a7-a5, and after the exchange on a5 the ♖a3 could become weaker than ever before.

16. ♖e1 ♜e4 17. ♗d1 a5 18.bxa5

♜xa5

#### ► 40.4 Van der Wiel–Timman

Sarajevo 1984



White has an advantage in space here, but with his next move Timman shows that he too has some trump cards.

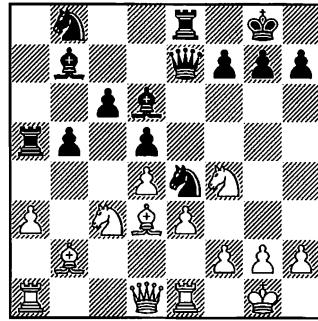
11... ♗e7!

The Lasker formation fulfils two tasks here:

- The ♖a3 is now attacked twice, which momentarily ties up the ♜a1.
- The advance ...e6-e5, supported by the ♖d6 as well as the ♗e7, is in the offing.

12.0-0 ♖e8 13. ♖fd1 ♖b7 14. cxd5

With this exchange White frees himself from the necessity to have to be continually worrying about ...e6-e5 (with or without a previous exchange



The black position is looking better and better. But Van der Wiel finds a way to buck this trend.

19. ♖xe4!?

19.a4?! would be followed by 19... ♜xc3 20. ♖xc3 ♜xa4 and it would not be so simple for White to restore the material balance (21. ♜xa4 bxa4 22. ♗xa4?? ♖xf4+).

19...dxe4 20.d5

And the ♖b2 is suddenly freed.

20...c5 21. ♗d2 ♗c7 22. ♗c2 ♗e7

22...f5 23.a4∞.

23. ♗d2 ♗c7 24. ♗c2 ♗e7 1/2-1/2

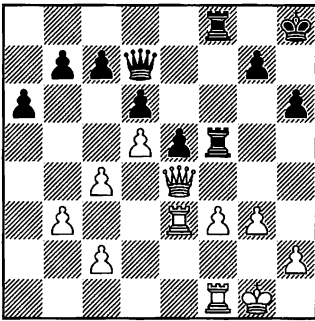
## Technique No. 41

# The Rubinstein manoeuvre: ...♙d8-b8-a7!

Here we have a sort of abstract 'queen fianchetto' in which her majesty appears on what is for her the somewhat unusual square a7, from where it exerts an astonishingly strong influence:

### ► 41.1 Janowski–Rubinstein

Karlsbad 1907



29...♙d8!

The possibility offered by this move of activating the queen by ...♙d8-g5 is quite obvious. But Rubinstein has in mind a hidden idea: the queen can also go to the a7-g1 diagonal, where it is very active and moreover frustrates the idea of c4-c5.

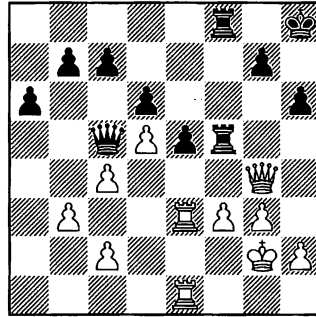
30.♙g4

Directed against ...♙d8-g5.

30...♙b8! 31.♖g2 ♙a7! 32.♜fe1  
♙c5

(see diagram next column)

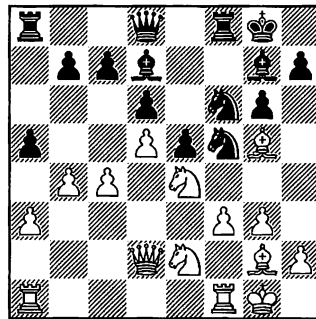
Now Black is planning to obtain an initiative on the queenside by ...♙c5-b4 and then ...a6-a5-a4, whereas White has



no counterplay and must concentrate on defensive measures. Rubinstein went on to win this game.

### ► 41.2 Lematschko–Gurieli

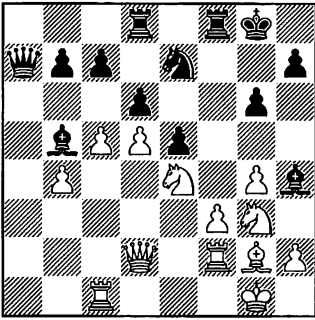
Kuala Lumpur 1990



16...♙b8! 17.♙xf6

After 17.c5 ♙a7 18.g4 ♘e7 19.♘xf6+ ♙xf6 20.♙e3 the black queen finds another nice place – 20...♙a6!, after which the idea of ...♙c4 appears.

17...♙xf6 18.g4 ♙a7+ 19.c5 ♘e7  
20.♞ac1 ♙b5 21.♞f2 axb4 22.  
axb4 ♙h4 23.♘2g3 ♞ad8



**24.cxd6?!**

White probably wanted to deprive her opponent of the option of ...d6xc5, in addition she activates the ♖c1, but on the other hand the a7-g1 diagonal now opens up for the black queen.

24.g5 with an unclear position was stronger.

**24...cxd6 25.♖h6**

25.g5 is followed by 25...♖b6 (directed against ♖c1-c7) 26.♗h1 ♖f4 with a strong initiative.

**25...♗xg3 26.hxg3 ♗xd5 27.♖d2**

27.♗g5? ♗f6-+.

**27...♖d4**

27...♗e3!?.

**28.♖d1?**

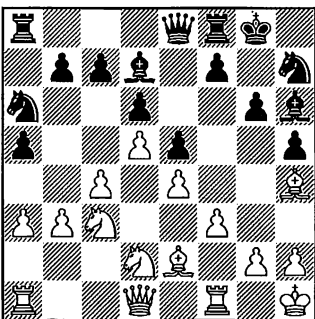
28.♖xd4 exd4 29.♖d2 d3 30.♗f2.

**28...♖xd2 29.♖dxd2 ♗c4,**

and Black won.

### ► 41.3 Shirov–J.Polgar

Madrid 1994



Here we have a well known position from the theory of the King's Indian Defence.

Before this game, basically 15...♗e3 was played here, e.g. 16.♖c2 c6 17.♗f2! ♗xf2 18.♖xf2±, Illescas–Gelfand, Linares 1994.

Polgar's next move was a novelty then:

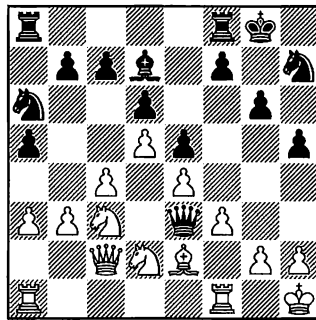
**15...♖b8!?**

Black is planning to bring her queen into play via a7.

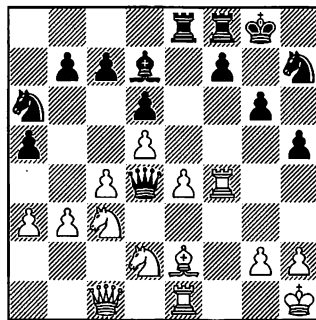
**16.♖c2**

16.♗f2 is followed by 16...♖d8! intending ...♖g5.

**16...♗e3 17.♗f2 ♖a7 18.♗xe3 ♖xe3∞**



**19.f4?! exf4 20.♖ae1 ♖c5 21. ♖c1 ♖d4 22.♖xf4 ♖ae8**

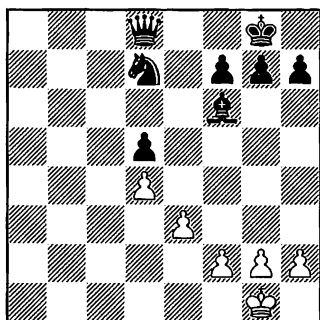


Thanks to her pawn structure and the active position of the ♖d4 Black has the better chances.

## Technique No. 42

# Boleslavsky's regrouping: eyeing h2!

Let us take a look at the following schematic diagram:



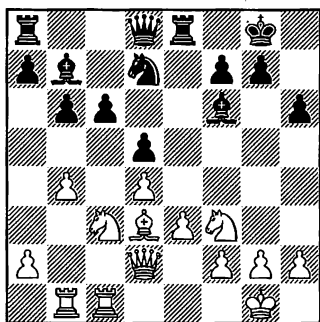
By means of the regrouping ...♙f6-e7-d6, ...♘d7-f6-e4 Black can often activate his two minor pieces.

And if in addition the black queen is aiming towards the white kingside, things can become really cramped for the white king.

The said regrouping was recommended by I.Boleslavsky in his annotations to the following game.

### ► 42.1 Petrosian–Spassky

Moscow (20th WCh game) 1969

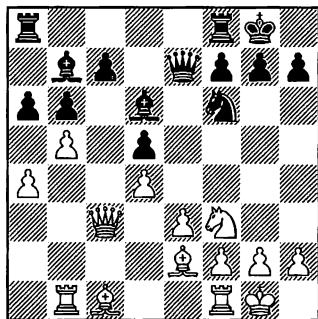


*'Here Black had at his disposal the plan which is typical for such positions ...♙e7-d6, ...♘f6-e4. What could White do then? The advance a4-a5 does not achieve much, while b4-b5 is always met with ...c6-c5. So White would have to concentrate on e3-e4, but that would have led to simplifications and promised few chances of success.'* (Boleslavsky).

It is interesting to note that in an earlier game of the same match the following position appeared on the board:

### ► 42.2 Spassky–Petrosian

Moscow (11th WCh game) 1969



Unlike in the previous position Black has no need to first regroup his minor pieces: his king's bishop is already on d6, and the knight is ready for the leap to e4:

15...♘e4! 16.♚c2 ♖fc8 17.♙b2 c6 18.bxc6 ♙xc6 19.♚b3 ♚d7 20.♞a1 b5 21.a5

21. **axb5** ♖xb5 22. ♖xb5 ♗xb5 23. ♗xb5 axb5 ♣.

21... ♖b7 22. ♘e5

Kortchnoi's suggestion 22. ♖fc1 was worth considering, although after 22... ♖xc1+ 23. ♖xc1 ♗d8 24. ♖a1 ♖c8 Black had the more active position.

22... ♗d8?!

The idea is correct: the queen is aiming for h4. But the text move allows a tactical trick. So 22... ♗e7 Δ... ♗h4 with good attacking chances was more accurate.

On the other hand the continuation 22... ♖xe5?! 23. dxe5 ♘d2 did not promise very much: 24. ♗b4! ♘xf1 25. ♖g4! ♗c6 26. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 27. ♘xf1 d4 28. f3 dxe3 29. ♖c1, and White maintains the balance.

23. ♖fd1

Spassky misses his chance: After 23. ♖d3! (Geller) 23... ♘d2 24. ♖xh7+! ♘xh7 (24... ♘f8 25. ♗d3 ♘xf1 26. ♗f5! ∞) 25. ♗d3+ ♘e4 26. ♘xf7 the game should end peacefully: 26... ♖xh2+! (Geller takes into account only 26... ♗e7 27. ♘xd6 ♗xd6 28. f3 ±) 27. ♘xh2 ♗h4+ 28. ♘g1 ♖f8 29. f3 ♖xf7 30. fxe4 dxe4 31. ♗d2=.

23... ♗h4!

Things gradually become uncomfortable for the white king.

24. g3 ♗e7

24... ♗f6!?

25. f3

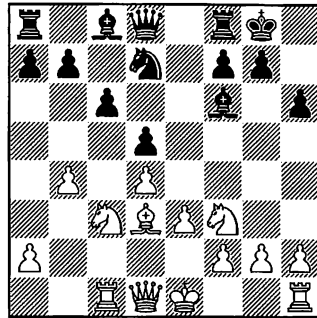
After 25. ♖f3 ♗f6 26. ♘g2 ♗f5 or 25. ♖d3 ♗f6 too Black can lay claim to the initiative.

25... ♘g5 26. h4 ♘e6 27. f4 f6 28. ♘f3 ♘d8 29. ♘f2 ♘f7 ♣

Black is better on both flanks and won after a long struggle.

## ► 42.3 Tal–Geller

Tbilisi (USSR Ch) 1978



11... ♖e7!? 12. b5 ♖a3

The pendulum manoeuvre (⇒ *Technique No. 36*) – before Black his brings his bishop to d6, he drives the opposing rook on to a less favourable position.

13. ♖c2

Now the rook is blocking the possible ♗d1-b3.

But after 13. ♖b1 then 13... ♗a5 14. ♗c2 ♖b4 Δ 15. ♖b3 c5 would have been rather unpleasant.

13... ♖d6 14. 0-0 ♘f6 15. bxc6 bxc6 16. ♘a4

Worth considering here is 16. e4!?, as was played in some later games.

16... ♘e4

And now Black has adopted the Boleslavsky formation. The threat is 17... ♖g4 with a very dangerous initiative on the kingside.

17. ♘e5

This prevents ... ♖g4 and moreover restricts the range of the dangerous ♖d6. But on the other hand the position of the ♘e5 is very shaky.

An alternative was 17. ♖xc6 ♖d7 18. ♖c1 (18. ♖a6 ♖c8 19. ♖c6 ♖d7, 18... ♖g4!?) 18... ♖a3 19. ♖b1 ♗a5, and after 21. ♘c5

Black recovers the pawn he has sacrificed, with equality.

**17...♖e8! 18.f3**

18.♘xc6? fails to 18...♙d7 19.♖c1 ♜c8.

**18...c5**

This leads to exciting complications, which finish peacefully.

**19.fxg4 cxd4 20.♘g4 dxe4 21. ♙c4 ♙xg4**

After **21...♖xa4? 22.♙xf7+!** ♔h8 (22... ♜xf7?? 23.♜xc8+!) 23.♜xc8 ♖xd1 24.♜xf8+ ♜xf8 25.♜xd1 ♜xf7 26. ♜xd4 ♙c7 27.♞xe4 there would occur an endgame with an extra pawn for White.

**22.♖xg4 ♖xa4 23.♜xf7!**

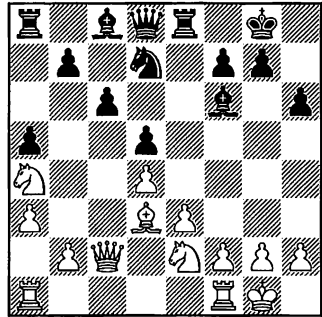
23.♖xe4? ♜ae8.

**23...♜xf7 24.♙xf7+ ♔xf7 25. ♖f5+ ♔e7 26.♖xe4+ ♔d7 27. ♖b7+ ♔e6 28.♖e4+ ♔d7**

Draw. **28...♙e5** would probably not change the result either: 29.♜c6+ ♔f7 30.♖f3+ ♔g8 31.♖d5+ ♔h8 32.♜xh6+ gxh6 33.♖xe5+ ♔g8 34.♖d5+ ♔g7 35.♖xa8 ♖d1+ 36.♔f2 ♖d2+ 37.♔g3 ♖xe3+ 38.♖f3=.

► **42.4 Gokhale–Barua**

Calcutta 1999



**13...♙e7! 14.♞fb1 ♘f6! 15.b4 ♙d6!**

Now White has to reckon both with ...♘g4 and with the bishop sacrifice on h2.

**16.h3**

Preventing the mentioned nasty intentions.

**16...♔e4! 17.♘c5 ♖g5**

Black's activity on the kingside has become very dangerous.

**18.♘xe4**

**18.f4!? ♖g6 19.♙xe4 dxe4 20.♔f2** looks better.

**18...dxe4 19.♙xe4 ♙xh3**

with an initiative for Black on the kingside.

**Technique No. 43**

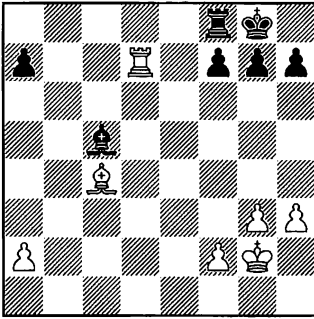
**Bishops of opposite colours: attacking f7 even in the endgame!**

The fact that *bishops of opposite colours* in no way automatically lead to a draw, has already been mentioned – thus *Technique No. 37* shows some attacks which were favoured by bishops of opposite colours.

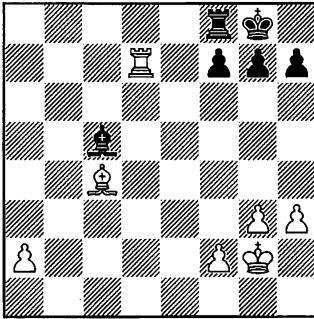
But at least in the endgame the drawing tendency of these pieces is considered to

be high. Still, even here: when there is an attack on a specific square, then the attacking side has, as it were, an extra piece since the defending bishop can neither defend the said square nor force an exchange for the opposing bishop.

Let us take a look at the next two positions:



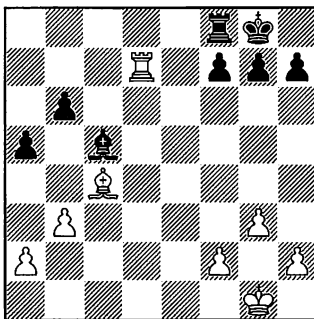
Here White is attacking the  $\triangle f7$  from two directions: from the seventh rank and along the a2-g8 diagonal. Despite the material equilibrium, the defence is very difficult ( $\Rightarrow$  *Example 43.1*).



Here Black not only has to defend f7, but he also has to battle against the passed pawn. This is obviously too much – the white position is clearly won.

► **43.1 Keres–Pirc**

Munich (Olympiad) 1936



White's plan looks like this:

He will push his kingside pawns forward and make contact with the opposing pawns. White is hoping to be finally left with his g-pawn against the black  $\triangle f7$ , to then follow up with g5-g6 and to win the  $\triangle f7$  thanks to the pin (no matter whether the king is on g7 or g8).

**28.♖g2 g6 29.g4 h6 30.h4 g5**

Wait and see tactics require to be checked, for instance:

**30...♖g7!? 31.g5 hxg5 32.hxg5 ♖g8 33.f4 ♖g7 34.♖f3 ♖g8 35.f5 ♖g7!** (the cramping advance f5-f6 is not as bad as the threat of a pin with g5-g6 after the exchange of the pawn) **36.♖f4** (36. f6+ ♖g8 37.♖f4 ♖a3 and if 38.♖e5, then 38...♖c1) **36...♖a3**, and 37.fxg6 ♖xg6 38.♖d3+ achieves nothing for White on account of 38..f5.

Nevertheless, Black's life is hanging by a silken thread.

A thorough analysis of this position would go beyond what we have space for, and moreover such endgames have not yet been sufficiently investigated.

**31.hxg5 hxg5 32.♖g3 ♖g7 33.f4 ♖e3**

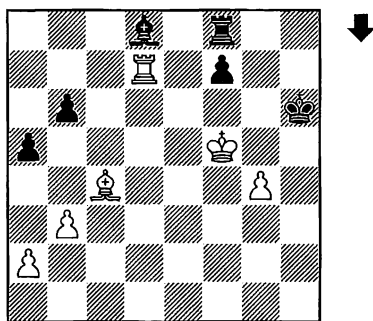
After this move Black's defensive task becomes even harder and perhaps even impossible.

Things look better after **33...gxf4+** 34.♖xf4 ♖g6! 35.♖d3+ (35.g5 f5! =) 35...♖g7, and now Black is threatening to relieve his position with ...♖e8-e7.

**34.fxg5 ♖xg5 35.♖f3 ♖d8**

Or **35...♖f6** 36.♖f4 ♖c3 37.♖f5 and then g5-g6.

**36.♖f4 ♖g6 37.♖d3+ ♖g7 38.♖f5 ♖h6 39.♖c4**



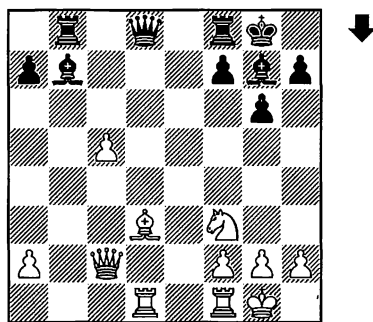
**39...♗g7?**

The last chance consisted of **39...f6**, although after **40.a4 ♖e8 41.♗f4 ♜f8 42.♙d3 f5** (forced, **42...♞h8 43.♙f5** with a deadly zugzwang, e.g. **43...b5 44.♞b7!**) **43.♙xf5** the black position is close to losing.

**40.g5 ♖g8 41.g6** **1-0**

### ► 43.2 Ragozin–Bondarevsky

Leningrad (USSR Ch) 1939



Black decides on a forcing variation, so as to achieve a position of the same type as that in the previous example:

**20...♙xf3! 21.♙e2 ♞b2 22.♞xd8 ♞xc2 23.♞xf8+ ♙xf8 24.♙xf3 ♙xc5**

A similar position – with reversed colours – as in *Example 43.1*. The only difference: here each side only has one pawn on the queenside.

**25.♙d5 ♞d2 26.♙b3 ♖g7 27.h3 27.g3!?**  $\Delta$  **♗g2** would involve the same sort of questions and problems as in the previous example.

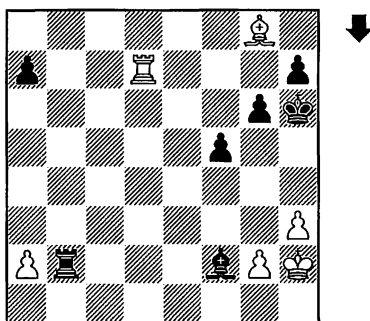
**27...f5 28.♗h2?**

The decisive mistake – White sacrifices the  $\Delta$  **f2** with the intention of getting the  $\Delta$  **h7** in return, but he overlooks the fact that this will put his king in a terrible position. **28.g3** and then **29.♗g2** would leave him a chance of saving the game.

**28...♙xf2 29.♞d1 ♞b2**

Of course not **29...♞xd1? 30.♙xd1** with a draw despite Black's extra pawn.

**30.♞d7+ ♖h6 31.♙g8**



**31...f4!**

With the deadly threat **32...♙g3+**.

**32.h4**

**32.♞xh7+ ♖g5 33.♙c4 ♞c2! 34.♙d3 ♞xa2-+.**

**32...♙xh4 33.♖h3 ♙e1 34.♞xh7+**

Or **34.♞xa7 ♖g5! 35.♞xh7 ♞b8!** (**35...♙g3? 36.♞c7!  $\Delta$ ♞c5+**) **36.♙b3** (**36.♞g7 ♙g3 37.♙h7 ♖h6-+**) **36...♙g3-+  $\Delta$ ...♞e8-e1-h1#.**

**34...♖g5 35.♞xa7 ♞b8! 36.♞e7**

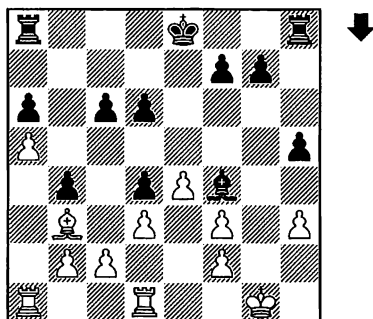
**36.♙h7 ♞h8 37.♞e7 ♙g3 38.a4 ♖h5 39.a5 g5 40.♙f5 g4+!** and then mate.

**36...♙g3 37.♙h7 ♞b1 38.♞e5+ ♖f6 39.♞a5 ♞h1+ 40.♖g4 ♞h4+ 41.♖f3 ♞xh7**

White resigned after two more moves.

► 43.3 Kiik–Kaidanov

Norilsk 1987



White has no control whatever over the dark squares in the centre and on the kingside. The black monarch notices this and cunningly personally invades the opposing camp by heading up the dark-squared staircase in the direction of f2:

21...♔e7! 22.♖a4 ♜hb8 23.♙c4  
 ♚f6 24.♚f1 ♜a7 25.♞e1 ♙h6  
 26.♚e2 ♚e5 27.♚f1 ♚f4 28.♚e2  
 ♞e7!

The bishop cannot take on a6 (29.♙xa6? d5 and then the bishop is trapped), and in addition there is also the threat of 29...d5 30.♙b3 f5. So:

29.♚f1 ♚xf3 30.♙xa6 d5!  
 31.exd5 ♜xe1+ 32.♚xe1 ♜e8+  
 33.♚f1 ♞e2!

With the fall of f2 the white king ends up in a mating net and the successes of the white troops on the queenside make not a bit of difference.

34.♞a1 ♜xf2+ 35.♚g1 ♞g2+ 36.  
 ♚h1 ♙e3,

and in view of the inevitable ...♚g3 White resigned.

# Chapter X

## Other methods

And to finish with, two methods which cannot be linked to specific manoeuvres.

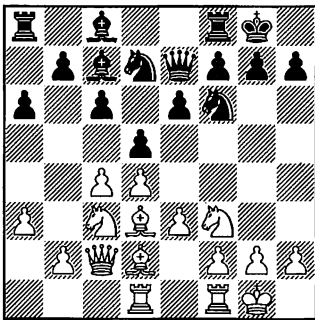
### Technique No. 44

## Letting the opposing plan come to nothing

*Technique No. 44* describes the case when the opponent's set-up is rather one-dimensionally concentrating on a specific plan (provided we can work out what that plan is!) and can sometimes quite simply, e.g. by an unexpected exchange, be reduced to the absurd. The result is that the opponent is left with a piece constellation which loses all sense and reveals itself as lacking in harmony.

#### ► 44.1 Taimanov–Botvinnik

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955



Black is planning to free his ♕c8 after ...d5xc4 and then ...e6-e5 and his piece set-up ♖e7, ♜d7, ♕c7 seems to be well suited to the task. In the meantime White decides on a 'preventive' move:

**12.cxd5! exd5 13.♞fe1!**

The ♕c8 has now been freed from the cage of pawns (which would also have been the case if White had allowed ...dxc4 and then ...e6-e5), but in view of the threat of e3-e4 the black queen is suddenly very unfavourably placed. A difference to some examples with the Lasker formation (⇒ *Technique No. 40*): here Black does not have sufficient control of the e4-square.

**13...♞d8 14.e4!**

The same move would also have followed after 13...♞e8.

**14...dxe4 15.♜xe4 h6,**

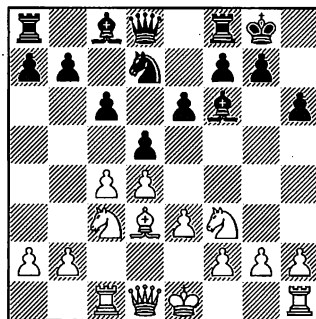
and now after

**16.♞c1!?**

(♜xh6) White could obtain a dangerous attack on the kingside.

#### ► 44.2 Jussupow–Balashov

Vilnius (USSR Ch) 1980



Black had just played 9...♘d7 intending 10...dxc4 and then ...e6-e5. But Jussupow prevents this with a prophylactic exchange.

**10.cxd5!? cxd5?!**

10...exd5 was stronger, although White would then have at his disposal the standard plan of the minority attack with b2-b4-b5.

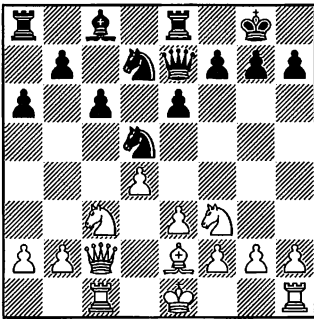
**11.0-0**

In the struggle for the c-file White has much the better cards and so he has an indubitable advantage. We cast some light on similar situations in *Technique No. 17* (Rubinstein's exchange).

And now an example of the opposite:

► **44.3 Alekhine–Capablanca**

Buenos Aires (2nd WCh game) 1927



Black is ready, after the exchange on c3 to play the central advance ...e6-e5. For this plan three of his pieces (♖e7, ♜e8; ♘d7) are perfectly placed. But it is White's idea and he could prevent his opponent's idea with the prophylactic move 12.♘xd5. Despite that, Alekhine did without the exchange on d5 and played

**12.0-0**

Why?

The answer is that after 12.♘xd5 exd5 13.0-0 ♘f6 too, the black pieces are very

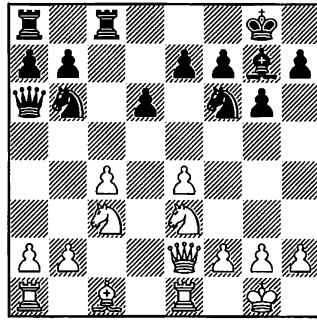
harmoniously placed – the ♖e7 and the ♜e8 are on a semi-open file, whilst it is almost inevitable that the ♘f6 will pop up on e4 – thus White's preventive exchange would not have brought him any advantage, but in any case would be worth considering as a valid alternative to the text move.

The game continued

12...♘xc3 13.♖xc3 e5 14.♞fd1  
exd4 15.♘xd4 ♘f6 16.♙f3 ♙g4  
17.♙xg4 ♘xg4 18.♘f5 ♖f6 19.  
♖xf6 ♘xf6 1/2-1/2

► **44.4 Kan–Lisitsin**

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955



Black has trained three of his pieces on the ♖c4. For the moment the ♜a8 is still passive, but it is hoping to get into the action quickly, if in one way or another Black gets rid of the pawn.

At first glance it is hard to offer good advice to White, e.g. after the natural 14.♘ed5 ♘fxd5 15.♘xd5 ♘xd5 (perhaps 15...♙f8!? Δ 16.♙g5 ♖f6 is even stronger) 16.cxd5 ♖xe2 17.♞xe2 ♜c7 and then ...♞ac8 Black obtains a dangerous initiative, whilst 14.b3? fails to 14...♘xe4.

However, things continued:

**14.e5! dxe5 15.b3**

A very nice idea. Thanks to the pawn sacrifice e4-e5, there is nothing stopping

White from playing b2-b3 and then the whole black set-up directed against the ♖c4 loses its *raison d'être*. Now the ♖a6, ♜c8, ♘b6 are unharmoniously placed and bad, and things are no better even for the ♞a8.

Black must now try to regroup his forces, but that is not so simple.

### Technique No. 45

## The principle of the two weaknesses

Let us assume that the opponent already has one weakness – and also no dynamic counterplay at all – but that for the moment he is able to defend his weakness satisfactorily. Then it is necessary to create a second weakness in his camp, usually on the opposite wing.

Then it becomes much more difficult for the defender (and in the long run usually impossible), to defend both weaknesses simultaneously. In doing so the attacking side need have little fear of exposing some weakness of his own – so long as the opponent is kept busy with defence, he has no chance of exploiting ‘weaknesses’ in the camp of the player who is attacking.

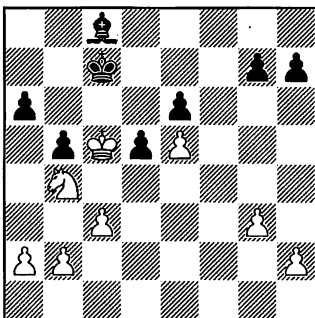
15...♗bd7 16.♙b2 ♖e6 17.♞ad1  
e4 18.♘cd5 ♘xd5 19.♘xd5

19.cxd5?! ♖a6! 20.♗xa6 bxa6 21.♙xg7  
♘xg7 22.♘c4 ♘c5

19...♙xb2 20.♗xb2 f5 21.♗a3,  
and thanks to his active pieces as well as  
the idea of f2-f3, White has considerable  
compensation for his pawn.

### ► 45.1 Shubarev–Alexandrov

Russia 1915



Here Black already has more than one weakness – the b6- and d6-squares are vulnerable. But unfortunately these squares are not very far from each other, meaning that the black king can protect both of them from c7. The a6- and e6-pawns are also worrying for him, but they are protected by the bishop (one of them is not even under attack). And Black is not (yet) in zugzwang as long as he can play ...♙c8-b7-c8.

In such cases one must try to force a weakness on the other wing too.

45.♘d3 ♙d7 46.♘f4 g6

Or 46...♙c8 47.♘h5, and Black must move the g-pawn.

47.♘h3

♙g5.

47...h6 48.♘f4 g5 49.♘h5 ♙e8

50.♘f6 ♙f7 51.♘g4 h5 52.♙e3  
♙g6

52...h4 53.gxh4 gxh4 54.♘g2 h3  
55.♘f4+-.

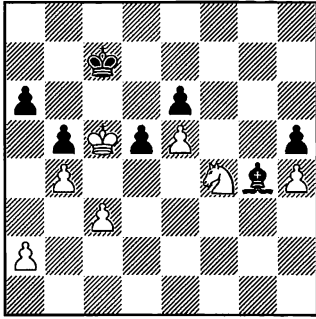
53.h4! gxh4 54.gxh4

A further weakness has been created – namely the ♖h5! Now Black has it to worry about as well and that soon becomes too much for him.

54...♙e4

Or 54... ♖e8 55. ♘g2 ♗g6 56. ♘f4 ♗f7 57. b4, and the zugzwang decides matters.

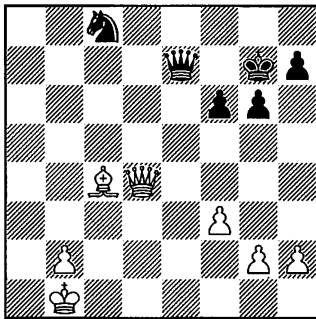
55. ♘f1 ♗f3 56. ♘d2 ♗e2 57. ♘b3 ♗g4 58. ♘d4 ♗h3 59. ♘e2 ♗f5 60. ♘f4 ♗g4 61. b4+–



Zugzwang. Black cannot keep up the protection of all his weaknesses: if the bishop moves, the ♗e6 or the ♗h5 is lost; and if the king moves, the white monarch forces its way into the opposing position via b6 or d6.

## ► 45.2 Alekhine–Sämisch

Baden-Baden 1925



Alekhine has a sound extra pawn which, moreover, is a passed pawn. However, converting the advantage is not so simple since advancing his pawn would leave the white king's position very 'draughty', with the danger of a perpetual check. Moreover, a minor piece ending

after the exchange of queens offers Black certain drawing chances since he can hope to be able to blockade the b-pawn.

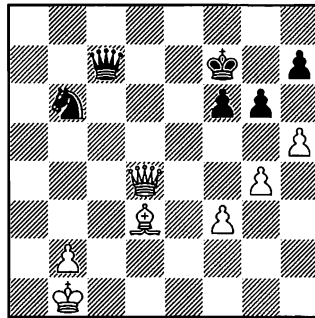
35. ♗d3!

Before White plays his main trump card – the passed b2-pawn – he is intending to attack on the kingside; for that he requires the bishop on d3. The vulnerability of the black king position will represent the second weakness, the first being the very existence of the passed pawn. Both of these together will then put too much of a strain on Black's defensive skills.

35... ♖c7

35... ♖e1+ 36. ♗c2 achieves nothing.

36.g4! ♗f7 37.h4! ♘b6 38.h5!



38...gxh5

Of course this move strongly weakens the kingside, but otherwise after h5xg6 h7xg6 the ♗g6 would become the problem.

39.gxh5 ♖c6 40. ♗e4

Not 40. ♗xh7 ♖xf3 41. ♖xb6? ♖d1+ 42. ♗a2 ♖a4+ with perpetual check.

40... ♖b5 41. h6!

Fixes the ♗h7 and indubitably turns it into a further weakness.

41... ♖b3 42. ♗c2 ♖b5 43. ♖d3!

With the weakness on h7 the queenless endgame is an easy win.

43... ♖xd3 44. ♗xd3 ♘c8

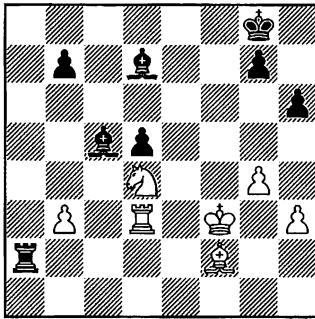
44... ♗g8 is followed by the simple 45. b4, winning – Black cannot at the same

time blockade White's passed pawn and protect the ♖h7.

45. ♖xh7 ♗e7 46. ♖c1 f5 47. b4 ♘d5  
48. b5 ♖e6 49. ♖d1 ♖d6 50. f4  
♘xf4 51. ♖xf5 ♘d5 52. ♖e4 1-0

### ► 45.3 Lein–Dvoretsky

Moscow 1973



Black has an extra pawn, which in addition is a passed pawn; as well as that, he also has the bishop pair. But all the white pieces are centralised and active, which will make it difficult for Black to achieve the full point. How can Black make his advantage tell?

44...h5!

Not so as to exchange the ♖g4, but to fix the ♖h3 with ...h5-h4 and turn it into the second weakness!

45. ♖e3

The attempt to maintain control over the h4-square was condemned to fail: 45. ♖g3 ♖h7 46. ♖f2 g5!, and Black can still play ...h5-h4.

45...h4!

Now White also has worries with the ♖h3 – there is already the threat of 46...♖h2.

46. ♖c3

46. ♗f5 would lose on account of 46...♖h2 47. ♖xc5 ♖xh3+ 48. ♖e2 ♖b5

49. ♗(♖)e3 ♖h2+ (Dvoretsky), but 46. ♖g1 was probably worth a try.

46...♖b6

Now 47. ♖g1 is met with 47...♖d2–+.

47. ♗f5?

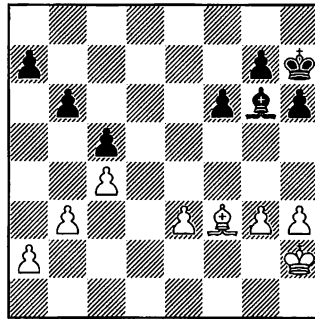
This loses practically on the spot. According to Dvoretsky 47. ♗e2 or 47. ♖c2 was more tenacious.

47...♖h2 48. ♗e7+ ♖h7 49. ♗xd5 ♖xh3+ 50. ♖f4 ♖d8 51. ♖c1 ♖c6 52. ♖b6 ♖f3+ 53. ♖e5 ♖g5 54. ♖c3,

and White resigned at the same time on account of 54...♖xd5.

### ► 45.4 Smyslov–Keres

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1951



In a pawn structure like this the black bishop is far superior to its counterpart, but is that enough for a win? – Keres forces the weakening of the ♖b3 and then fixes that weakness:

36...♖b1! 37. a3 a5!

To allow 38...♖a2 39. ♖d1 a4.

38. ♖d1 ♖g6 39. ♖g2 ♖f5 40. ♖f3 ♖e5 41. a4 g5 42. ♖e2

White is very passive, but for the moment his problem child the ♖b3 is still not in danger. Black must create a second weakness in the opposing camp.

42...♖f5! 43. g4

There was no other choice: **43.h4** would lose at once on account of **43...♙g4+ 44.♖d2 ♘xd1 45.♗xd1 ♕e4 46.♕e2 g4**. But now the ♖h3 has been fixed and has clearly become the second weakness.

**43...♙b1 44.♖f3 f5!**

Keres forces the ♖g4 to exchange on f5 and thus creates for his bishop ‘access’ to the ♖h3.

**45.gxf5**

**45.♖f2** fails to **45...f4 46.♖f3 fx3 47.♗xe3 ♙e4+.**

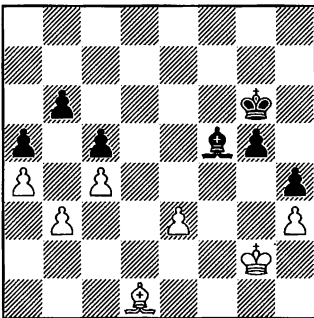
**45...♗xf5 46.♖f2 ♙e4 47.♖g3 ♖g6 48.♖f2**

After **48.h4** White would have got rid of his weak h-pawn, but in return his opponent would get a passed pawn on the kingside, which can be considered the second weakness. The winning method would then look like this: **48...h5 49.hxg5 ♗xg5 50.♖h3 ♙f5+ 51.♖g3 h4+ 52.♖g2 ♙d3 53.♖h2 ♖f5 54.♖g2 (54.♖h3 ♖e4+)** **54...h3+! 55.♖xh3 ♖e4+.**

**48...h5! 49.♖g3 h4+**

The ♖h3 is totally fixed.

**50.♖f2 ♙f5 51.♖g2**



Both of White’s weaknesses are protected, but his king has to protect the ♖h3 and for that reason has only two squares at its disposal (g2 and h2), whilst the ♙d1 cannot move at all on account of the threat of **...♙f5-c2**. In these circum-

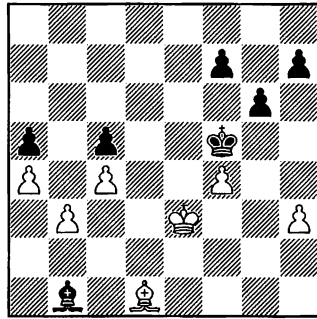
stances there is nothing to prevent the black monarch from making its way into the white camp.

**51...♖f6 52.♖h2 ♖e6**

In view of **53.♖g2 ♖e5 54.♖h2 ♙b1 55.♖g2 ♖e4 56.♖f2 ♖d3** White resigned.

### ► 45.5 Kan–Keres

Moscow (USSR Ch) 1952



This example – in which Keres also has the black pieces – is very similar to the previous. The ♖b3 is permanently weak, and as we already know, a second weakness must be created on the kingside.

**43...h5! 44.♖f3**

**44.h4** fails to **44...♙e4**, and White loses on account of zugzwang.

**44...h4**

Now White also has to worry about the fixed ♖h3.

**45.♖e3 ♖e6 46.♙g4+**

This leads to a lost pawn ending, but there was in any case no way to save the game, e.g. **46.♖f3 ♙f5 47.♖g2 ♖f6 48.♖h2** (what else?) **48...♙e4 49.♖g1 (49.♙g4 ♙c2+)** **49...♖f5+.**

**46...♙f5 47.♖f3 ♖f6 48.♙xf5**

**48.♖e3 ♙xg4 49.hxg4 g5+.**

**48...♗xf5 49.♖e3 f6**

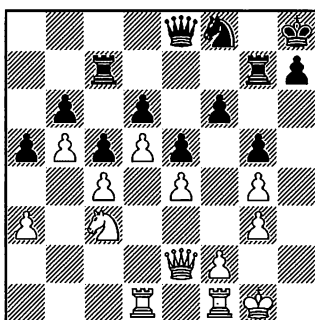
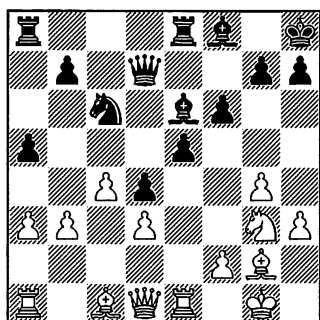
White resigned.

# Chapter XI

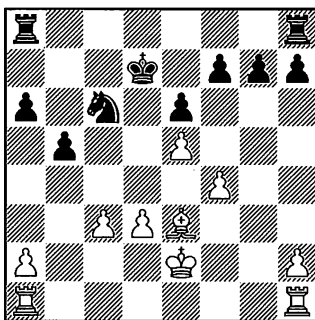
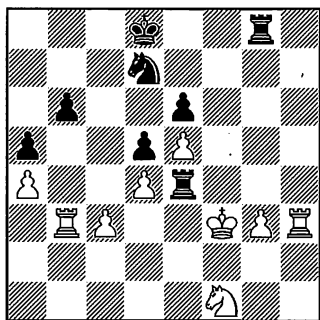
## Practical exercises

In most cases the main task for the reader is to work out the correct one of the 45 'techniques' – once that has been done, the solution is often obvious. But be careful, sometimes the themes from the techniques have been slightly altered and many of the exercises are quite difficult.

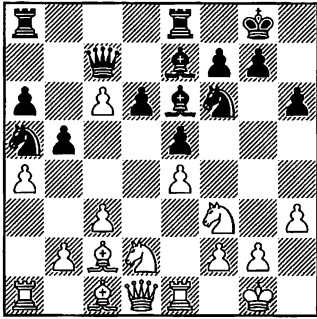
With few exceptions the exercises are purely strategic in nature and require hardly any calculation of variations – so do not pay too much attention to what your computer thinks!



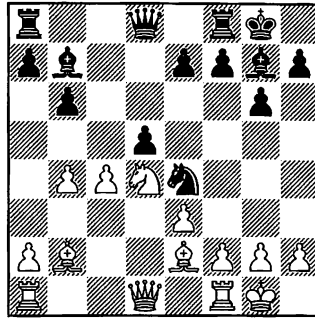
- 1) How can White add more emphasis to the plan f2-f4?  
(solution ⇒ p. 233)
- 2) What is the simplest way for Black to get rid of all possible dangers?  
(⇒ p. 233)



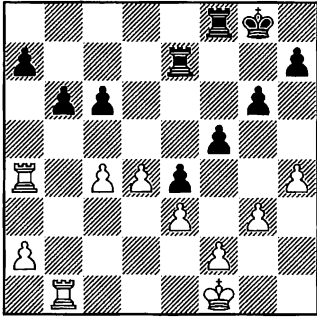
- 3) How does White set the points for victory?  
(⇒ p. 233)
- 4) How does White fight for the initiative here?  
(⇒ p. 233)



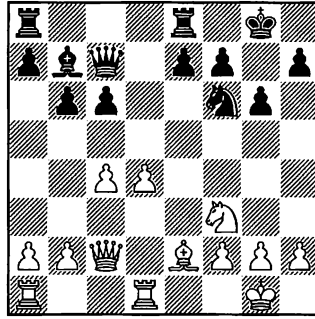
5) How does Black deal with the pawns on the queenside?  
(⇒ p. 234)



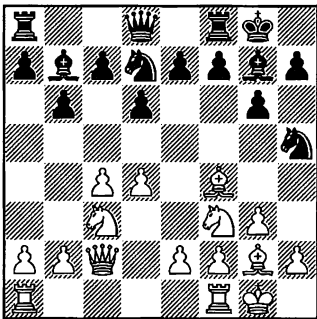
6) What can White manage in this position which is heading towards symmetry?  
(⇒ p. 234)



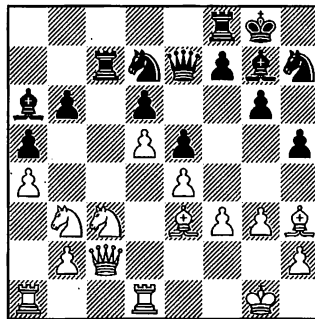
7) Here too we are looking for a plan to breathe some life into this draw-ish looking position.  
(⇒ p. 235)



8) Should White play a routine move here, or is there something more pressing to take care of?  
(⇒ p. 235)

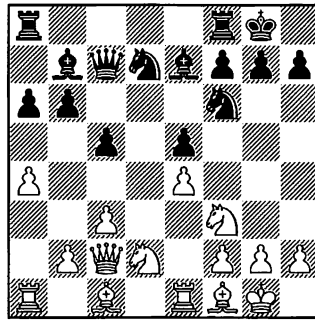
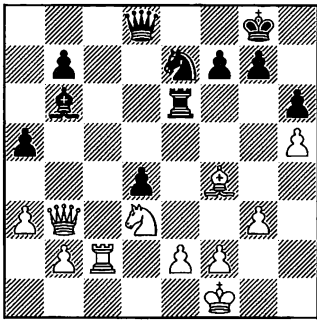


9) What is White's best reaction to the threat to his bishop?  
(⇒ p. 235)



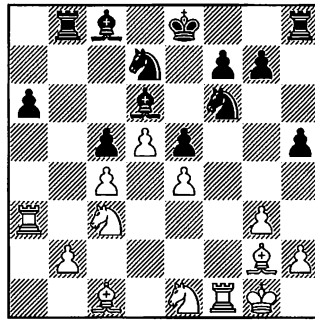
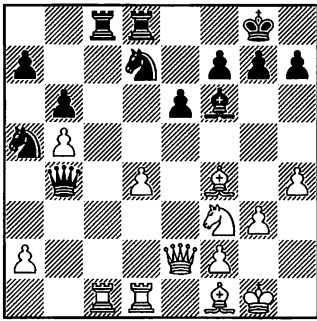
10) How does White make progress here?  
(⇒ p. 235)





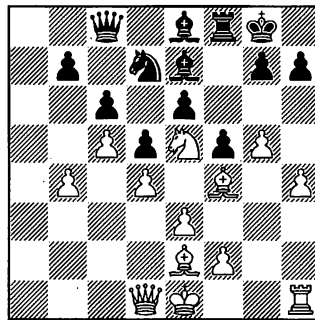
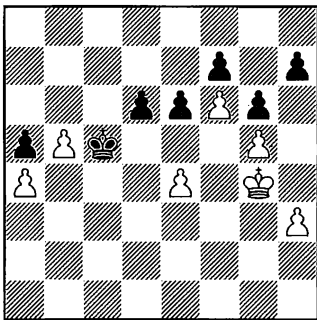
17) White certainly has a more pleasant position, but can he find a convincing plan? (⇒ p. 238)

18) How does Black deploy his forces more effectively? (⇒ p. 238)



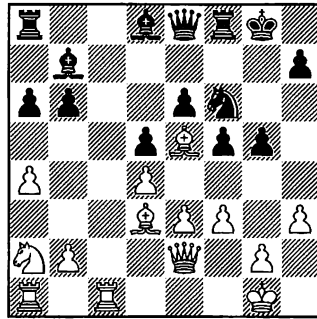
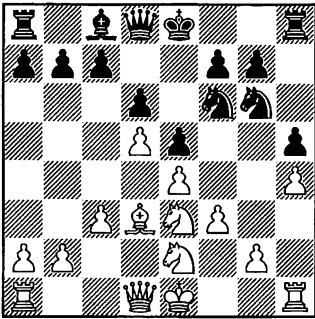
19) Can you see a promising continuation for White? (⇒ p. 239)

20) What is the most accurate way for White to continue? (⇒ p. 239)



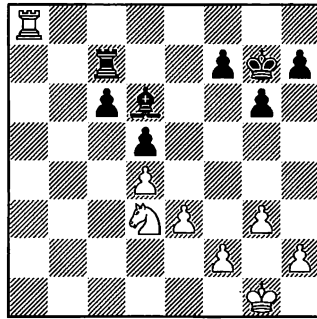
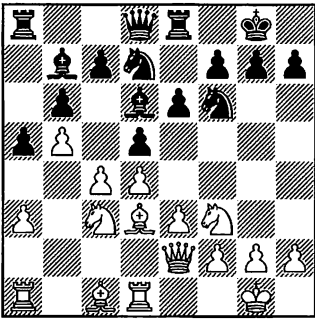
21) White has a protected passed pawn – but how can it ever move forward? (⇒ p. 239)

22) How does White keep his opponent under maximum pressure? (⇒ p. 239)



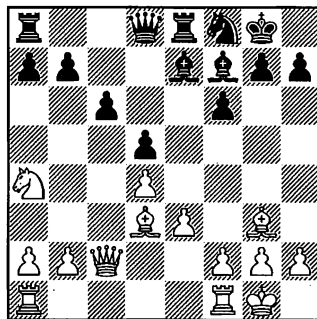
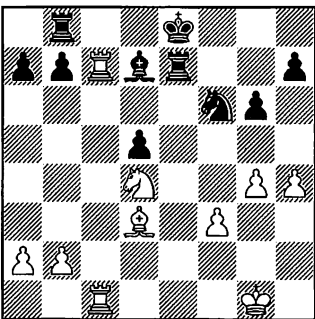
23) Find a good square to which to deploy for the black queen!  
(⇒ p. 239)

24) Here it will take an artistic manoeuvre.  
(⇒ p. 240)



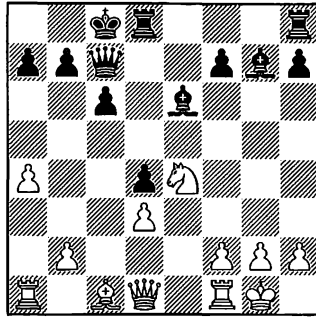
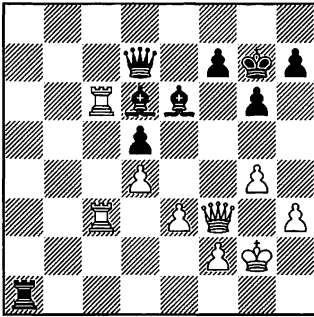
25) This one is intended for recreation or refreshing your memory.  
(⇒ p. 240)

26) An (easy?) exercise for defensive artists!?  
(⇒ p. 240)



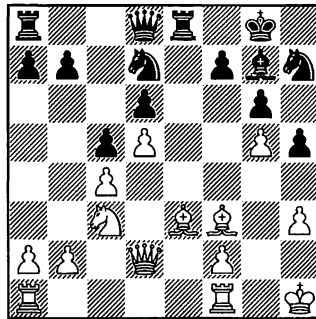
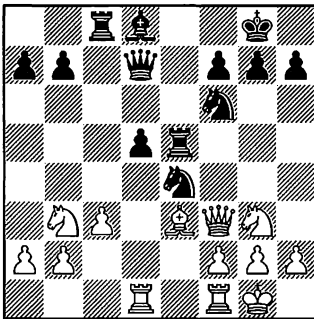
27) After 27.g5 ♘h5 Black could be satisfied. Is there anything better?  
(⇒ p. 241)

28) How can White get some impetus into his play?  
(⇒ p. 241)



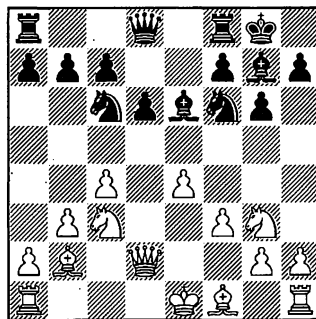
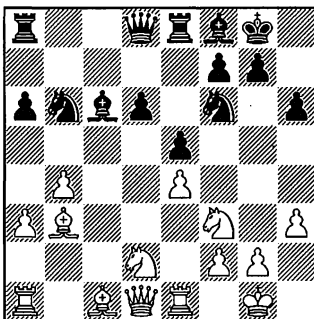
29) How does Black cash in on his piece superiority (two bishops against a rook)? (⇒ p. 241)

30) Black would like to get his forces to their best positions for an attack. How? (⇒ p. 242)



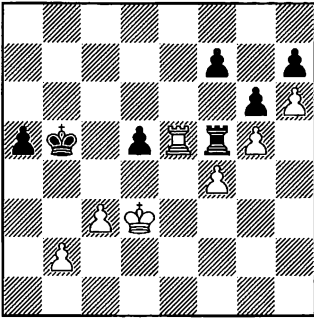
31) What could Black throw into the scales to counter-balance the possible weakness of d5? (⇒ p. 242)

32) 17...♘e5?! 18.♙e2; but what other moves can you suggest? (⇒ p. 242)

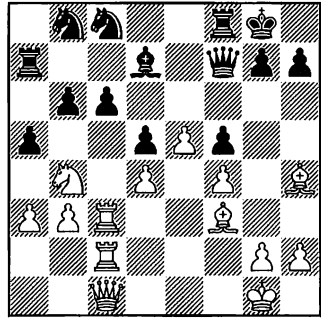


33) How does Black reach a comfortable position? (⇒ p. 243)

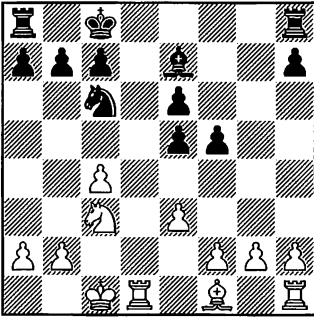
34) How does Black breathe some counterplay into his cramped looking position? (⇒ p. 243)



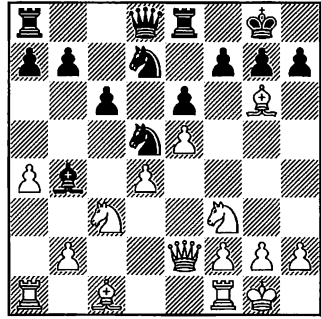
35) Are there drawing chances with capturing on f4 or on e5? Some calculation is called for here. (⇒ p. 243)



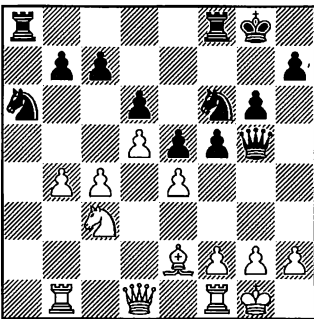
36) Time to let fly or time to manoeuvre? (⇒ p. 244)



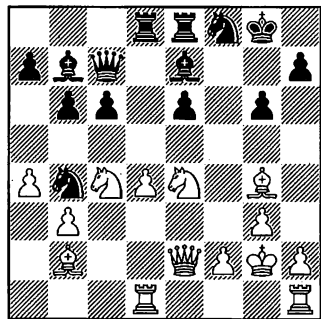
37) Here too, as well as the correct idea a sense of timing is required. (⇒ p. 244)



38) 13. ♞xg6 has just been played. What now? (⇒ p. 244)



39) What should White try in this position? (⇒ p. 245)



40) Where is the best place for White to attack? (⇒ p. 245)

# Solutions to the exercises

1) *Technique No. 32*, the rook lift. Here you should bear in mind particularly Example 32.3:

**21.♖a2!**

The bishop is best placed on c1 and the rook is now ready for action on e2; if required also on f2 or g2.

The immediate 21.f4 exf4 22.♙xf4 ♘d6 23.♙xd6 ♜xd6 24.♚e4 ♜c7 would be weaker.

**21...♖ab8**

21...a4!? 22.b4 b5 (Panno).

**22.f4 exf4 23.♙xf4 ♘d6 24.♙xd6 ♜xd6 25.♚e4 ♜c7 26.♖ae2!**

White has the initiative, Panno-Cifuentes, Argentina 1984.

2) *Technique No. 28*, evacuating the king.

White is planning to bring his rooks – and perhaps also his queen – on to the h-file and to transfer the knight to f5.

It is not clear how real the white attack would be after that; in any case the subsequent king march clears away all the dangers:

**28...♙g8! 29.♙g2 ♙f7! 30.♖h1 ♙e7! 31.♖h5 ♙d8! 32.♖dh1 ♙c8**

Now the king is in safety, far from the opposing major pieces.

**33.♚d1 ♖cf7 34.♚e3 ♖g6 35.♚f5 ♙c7=**

Gufeld-Taimanov, Moscow (USSR Ch) 1969.

Uneventful manoeuvres continued till a draw was agreed on move 105(!).

3) *Technique No. 7*, paralysing rooks:  
**46.♚e3!**

After this the ♖e4 is trapped in the middle of the board. White plans to bring the ♖b3 to the kingside and to use his two rooks to force Black to exchange the other rook, after which Black's forces will be insufficient for well-organised resistance – of course he will not be able to count on the ♖e4. With this in view, the further course of the game is easy to understand:

**46...♙c7 47.♙e2 ♖g5 48.♙d2 ♖g7 49.♖b1 ♚f8 50.♖f1 ♚h7 51.♙d3 ♚g5 52.♖h6 ♙c6 53.♖ff6 ♙d7 54.♖hg6 ♖xg6 55.♖xg6 ♚f3 56. ♖f6 ♚g5 57.♖f8 ♙c6 58.♙e2 ♚h3**

The attempt at counterplay with 58...b5 is parried by 59.♖c8+ ♙b7 60.♖g8 ♚h3 61.axb5 a4 62.♖h8 ♚g5 63.♖h5 a3 64.♖h1+- (Ubilava).

**59.♖c8+ ♙d7 60.♖h8 ♚g5 61.♖h5 ♚f7 62.♖h7 ♙e8 63.♙d3 ♚g5**

This loses the ♖b6, but in any case the position could not be saved, e.g. 63...♚d8 64.♖c7 ♚f7 65.c4!+-, 63...♙e7 64.c4+- or 63...♙f8 64.♖h5 (preventing ...♚g5) 64...♙g7 65.c4 ♙g6 66.♖h1+-.

**64.♖b7 ♚f3 65.♖xb6 ♚e1+ 66.♙d2 ♚f3+ 67.♙e2 ♚g1+ 68.♙d3 1-0**

Gaprindashvili-Ioseliani, Tbilisi (8th match game) 1980.

4) *Technique No. 31*, placing rooks.

The whole back rank is free and both rooks should apparently head somewhere 'towards the middle', but the most effective plan is to squeeze them both in on the left flank:

**21.♖hb1!**

Now both rooks are ideally placed for a plan involving a2-a4.

**21...♖ab8**

21...f6 22.exf6 gxf6 23.a4±.  
**22.♙c5! ♜hc8 23.♙d6 ♜b7 24.**  
**a4! ♞d8 25.axb5 axb5 26.♞d2**  
**f6 27.d4± ♞f7 28.♙b4 fxe5**  
**29.fxe5 ♞h6 30.♖a5 ♞f5 31.♞d3**  
**g6 32.♙c5 ♜cb8 33.♖a6 ♜c8**  
**34.♞e4 ♜cc7 35.♞f4**

△♙g5-f6.

**35...h6 36.♞e4 g5**

36...♜c8 37.c4 b4 38.♜b3 g5, and  
 39.♞d3! protects the △c4, after which  
 the △b4 is doomed.

**37.♜ba1 ♜c8**

Next came an elegant, but in principle  
 uncomplicated sacrifice:

**38.♜xe6! ♜xc5**

Or 38...♞xe6 39.♖a6+ ♞d7 40.♞xf5  
 with a clearly winning position, since  
 Black cannot employ his rooks actively.

**39.♞xf5 ♜xc3 40.♜xh6,**

and White won in a few moves, Spassky-  
 Ljubojevic, Montreal 1979.

5) *Technique No. 5*, a temporary pawn  
 sacrifice:

**15...b4!**

This temporary sacrifice is considerably  
 stronger than 15...♞xc6 16.♞f1 (or  
 16.♞h4) with approximate equality.

Should White now go in for 16.cxb4,  
 then Black immediately recovers the  
 pawn after 16...♞xc6 and then ...♞xb4  
 and obtains a dangerous initiative thanks  
 to his clearly more active pieces. So  
 White plays a different move:

**16.c4 ♞xc6 17.b3 ♞b7 18.♞f1**  
**♞c5**

Pietzsch-Spassky, Varna (Olympiad) 1962.  
 It is easy to spot that the insertion of the  
 moves ...b5-b4 and c3-c4 favoured  
 Black. Now the ♙c2 is clearly a bad  
 bishop, while the ♞c5 enjoys a won-

derful position (the opposing b-pawn  
 can no longer drive it away).

We already saw how this game con-  
 tinued in ⇒ *Example 39.6*.

6) *Technique No. 3*, the barrier f3/e4:  
**13.f3! ♞d6 14.cxd5 ♙xd5 15.e4!**  
**♙b7**

Here this bishop will be restricted by the  
 f3- and e4-pawns.

Was there anything better? Let's check:

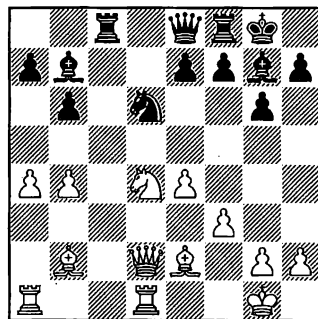
a) **15...♙c4?!** was not particularly ad-  
 visable on account of 16.♞c6 ♙xe2 17.  
 ♞xe2 ♞d7 18.b5±.

b) *Hiarcs9* favours **15...♞c4** 16.♙xc4  
 ♙xc4 17.♞c6 ♞c7! (17...♞d6 18.♞xd6  
 exd6 19.♙xg7 ♞xg7 20.♜fd1+–  
 Smyslov) 18.♙xg7 ♜fc8! (18...♙xf1  
 19.♙xf8 ♜xf8 20.♞a4 with an initiative  
 for White), but even then White's chances,  
 for example after 19.♙b2 ♞xc6 20.♜f2  
 and then ♜d2 or ♜c2, would be prefer-  
 able thanks to his better bishop.

**16.♞d2 ♜c8 17.♜fd1 ♞e8**

17...♞c4 18.♙xc4 ♜xc4 19.♞f5 ♞xd2  
 20.♞xe7+ ♞h8 21.♙xg7+ ♞xg7  
 22.♜xd2 ♜xb4 23.♜c1 (Smyslov) with  
 an advantage for White.

**18.a4**



Smyslov-F.Olafsson, Reykjavik 1974. In  
 view of the passive position of the ♙b7  
 White is slightly better.

7) *Technique No. 15*, file opening by the rook pawn. Strangely, here the struggle is marked by ‘only’ the threat of a5xb6 – the move is never played:

**27.♖a6! ♜c8 28.a4!**

White is threatening by 29.a5 to force his opponent into ...b6xa5, after which the a-file would be opened and the a7- and c6-pawns weak.

**28...♞b7 29.a5! ♜cb8**

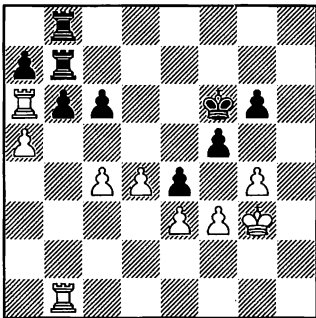
Black managed to get by without the unfavourable exchange on a5, but his rooks are now passive and immobile. According to the ‘principle of the two weaknesses’ White must now attack on the other side of the board.

**30.♔g2! ♔f8 31.h5!**

The second rook pawn then takes care of the file opening!

**31...♔g7 32.hxg6 hxg6 33.g4!  
♔f7 34.♔g3 ♔f6 35.f3!**

After the natural 35.c5? Black obtains counterplay with 35...♞h8! 36.cxb6 ♞bh7!.



**35...exf3 36.gxf5 ♔xf5**

Or 36...gxf5 37.♔xf3 ♔e7 38.♔f4+–.

**37.♔xf3 ♔g5 38.♞g1+ ♔h6 39.  
♔e2 ♜c7 40.♞b1 ♜cb7 41.♔d3  
♔g7 42.e4+– b5 43.cxb5 ♞xb5  
44.♞xa7+ ♔h6 45.♞xb5 cxb5  
46.a6 g5 47.♞b7 ♞a8 48.a7 ♔h5  
49.e5 g4 50.e6 ♔g6 51.e7 1-0**

Larsen-Boutteville, Lugano (Olympiad) 1968.

8) *Technique No. 5*, restricting the bishop.

The prevention of ...c6-c5 is urgently required. Giving up the d5-square is of secondary importance compared to that, as was already demonstrated in Example 5.8:

**15.c5! ♖d7 16.♙c4 e5 17.♖g5  
♞e7 18.♞e1 bxc5 19.dxc5 ♞f8  
20.♞ad1 ♔g7**

20...♖xc5? 21.♙xf7+ +–.

**21.b4±**

Razuvaev-Gen.Timoschenko, Polanica Zdroj 1979. Compare the difference in efficacy of the two bishops!

9) *Technique No. 36*, the pendulum manoeuvre:

The bishop must move away, however it provokes in ...h7-h6 a slight weakness:

**10.♙g5! h6**

Otherwise the ♙g5 would be very active.

**11.♙e3 e6?! 12.♞d2**

The h-pawn is now causing worries, e.g. 12...♔h7 13.g4 (13.♖g5+!? hxg5 14.♙xb7 ♞b8 15.♙f3±) 13...♖hf6 14.g5±. In the game Black decided on

**12...g5,**

which however represented a further weakening of the kingside. Things continued

**13.h4!,**

after which White got a strong attack and quickly won the game, Alekhine-Ibanez, Buenos Aires 1926. We already saw the rest of the game in Example 30.1 on the attack down the h-file.

10) *Technique No. 23*, exchanging bishops in order to weaken a complex of squares:

The black queenside pawns are unable to control the light squares, so this task falls

to the ♔a6. That makes everything clear, doesn't it?

**21. ♔f1! ♔xf1**

21... ♔b7 (or 21... ♔c8) 22. ♖f2±.  
**22. ♗xf1 f5 23. ♗e2 f4 24. ♘b5**  
**♗cc8 25. gxf4 exf4 26. ♔d4 ♘hf6**  
**27. ♘a7 ♗ce8 28. ♗g2 ♘h7 29.**  
**♗ac1 ♘c5 30. ♘c6 ♗d7 31. ♘xc5**  
**bxc5 32. ♔c3±**

Botvinnik-Bronstein, Moscow (USSR Ch) 1945. White has frustrated all attempts at counterplay, what remains is, e.g., the weakness of the ♖a5.

11) *Technique No. 10*, creating an impregnable outpost for a piece.

**9... ♘e5!? 10. ♗e2 g5!**

This prevents f2-f4 and thus secures the position of the ♘e5. But not the other way round – 9...g5?! 10. ♔g3 ♘e5? 11. ♔xe5 with a catastrophe on the d-file.

**11. ♔g3 ♔d7 12. h4 ♗g8 13. hxg5**  
**hxg5 14. ♘f3 ♗c7**

The ♘e5 cannot be driven off. If White exchanges it, the second player achieves control over the important d4-square after ...d6xe5, and moreover his king's bishop would then become very active.

**15. ♗e3 ♔e7 16. ♔e2**

16. ♘xg5 ♘fg4 17. ♗d2 ♔xg5 18. f4 ♔e7 (18... ♔h6 19. ♗xh6 ♘xh6 20. fxe5) 19. fxe5 dxe5 20. ♘b1 0-0-0.

**16...b5 17.a3 ♗b8**

With chances for both sides (18. ♘xg5? ♘fg4), Spassky-Petrosian, Moscow (USSR Ch) 1955.

12) *Technique No. 33*, transferring the knight to the centre.

Some of the black pieces are rather passive, and for the moment the only clear prospect is that open to the knight: the central outpost d4! So:

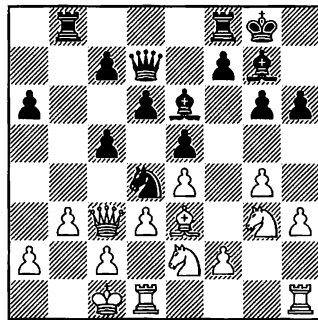
**12... ♘g8!**

Fortunately the position is closed and unlikely to be opened very quickly. Thus Black can spend a lot of time on his knight and on its long journey via g8-e7-c6-d4, without having to worry too much about his king which has been left in the middle.

**13. 0-0-0 ♘e7 14. ♘e2 ♘c6 15. ♗c3**

After this h6 is no longer under threat and Black can castle without challenge. But it is difficult to say what White could undertake here. 15.c3, to take control of the d4-square, would of course be possible, but it would weaken the position of his own king, which Black could immediately exploit by 15...a5!?

**15... ♘d4 16. ♘fg1 0-0 17. ♘g3**  
**♔e6 18. ♘1e2 ♗d7**



Black has in mind a plan with ...a6-a5-a4 (*Technique No. 15!*).

**19. ♔xd4**

The knight was really too strong, but this exchange enables Black to make aggressive use of his central pawns: ...d6-d5 and then ...c7-c5-c4.

**19...cxd4 20. ♗b2 a5 21. ♔d2 d5**  
**22. f3 ♗e7 23. ♗df1 ♗b4+ 24.**  
**♔d1 a4 25. ♗h2 c5 26. ♘c1 c4,**

and Black won, Anderssen-Steinitz, Vienna 1873.

13) *Technique No. 45*, principle of the two weaknesses, at the same time the ‘wave-breaker’ (⇒ *Technique No. 16*) is avoided.

Black has a sound extra pawn, but it is anything but simple to convert it. If it were White’s move, he could set up a wave-breaker by means of h2-h4. After that the white king goes to f1, so as to take part in the struggle against the passed d-pawn.

**52...g5!**

Black prevents h2-h4 and in doing so marks out the h2 as a second weakness (the first white weakness is of course the opposing passed pawn). If the white king now approaches the opposing d-pawn, his h-pawn would remain undefended.

**53.h3**

Dvoretzky criticises this move because it weakens the white pawn structure. But on the other hand, Black would otherwise gain more space on the kingside with ...g5-g4, after which the idea of ...h7-h5-h4-h3 with the creation of the ‘potential passed pawn’ (⇒ *Technique No. 14*) would also enter the realms of the possible.

**53...h5 54.♖f3 ♘h6 55.♗a8 ♖f6  
56.♖f8+ ♘h7 57.♗a8 ♖f5 58.  
♗a7 d5**

The time has come!

**59.♚h2**

Of course the king would like to go via f1 to e2, but it cannot leave its h-pawn in the lurch!

**59...♚g6 60.♗d4?**

This unsuccessful blockading move allows Black to decide the game quickly with a little trick. But in the long run the white position could hardly be saved anyway, because the passed d-pawn can

probably not be stopped without the cooperation of the king.

**60...h4!**

Now **61.gxh4** is followed by the riposte (which was probably overlooked by White) **61...♗f4+ 62.♗xf4 gxf4 63.♚g2 d4** winning, e.g. **64.♚f3 d3!**

**61.♗b6+ ♗f6 62.♗e3 hxg3+  
63.fxg3 ♗b2+ 64.♚g1 ♗b1+ 65.  
♚f2 ♗f5+ 66.♚g1 ♗xh3 0-1**

This would prove that the ♠h3 was actually weak! Iljinski-Dvoretzky, Alma-Ata 1976.

14) *Technique No. 11*, blasting open outposts. Black puts a different complexion on his game by forcing the ♠d4 to advance and thus seizing the ‘permanent’ c5-square for his knight:

**13...e5! 14.d5 ♘a5 15.♞c1 ♘d7  
16.♙d2?**

Why does White allow the exchange of his good bishop?

**16...♞b3 17.♞c3 ♘xd2 18.♗xd2  
g6 19.0-0 ♘c5,**

and Black’s chances are obviously preferable, Averbakh-Matanovic, Rijeka (Yugoslavia-USSR) 1963.

15) *Technique No.9*, the ‘simulated’ exchange makes the task easier:

**43.f5! gxf5 44.g5!**

But not **44.gxf5?** ♘e7 45.♘xe7 ♚xe7, and Black saves the draw on account of bishops of opposite colours.

**44...♙c6**

44...♘e7 is now followed by **45.♘xb6+-**.

**45.g6+ ♚e8**

45...♚g8 46.♘f6+ +-.

**46.♘f6+ ♚d8 47.♙g5! ♚c7  
48.g7 ♘e7 49.♙f4+! +-**

There is nothing to be done against **50.♙d6**, Shevchek-Henter, USSR 1984.

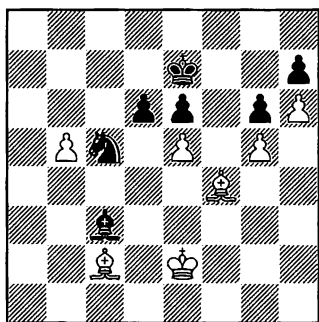
16) *Technique No. 14*, the potential passed pawn. Here it does not have to be first created, but it is about making its strength count with tactical points (41.e5!, 43.♙f4!, 45.♙xg6!, 47.♙b4!):

**41.e5! ♙xb5+?**

This loses quickly. 41...dxe5? 42.♙xg6! ♞xa4 43.♞a7+- was just as bad.

The only possibility of putting up any resistance consisted of 41...♞e4! 42. exd6+ (42.♞xd6!?), and now not 42...♞xd6? (in the event of 42...♙xd6?! 43.♞xd6 ♙xd6 44.a5 too, Black's situation is difficult) 43.♞xd6 ♙xd6 44.♙xg6 hxg6 45.♙d4! e5 46.h7+-, but 42... ♞d7!, although in the long run Black's chances of survival would tend to be slim.

**42.axb5 ♙c3 43.♙f4!**



Almost like a study. It is made as hard as possible for the black bishop to exert any control over the a1-h8 diagonal and in some lines the passed pawn on b5, which seems under control for now, becomes a powerful force too. This is also because the ♞c5 becomes a tactical liability.

**43...dxe5 44.♙d2 ♙d4**

44...♙xd2 45.♙xd2 e4 46.♙e3 ♙d6 47. ♙xe4 winning, 44...♙b2 45.♙b4 ♙d6 46.♙xg6! hxg6 47.h7 e4 48.b6+-.

**45.♙xg6! hxg6 46.h7 e4 47.♙b4!**

The final point, based on the motif we have just seen, the overloading of the black

king after 47...♙d6 48.b6!. 47.♙e3 also won. After 47.♙b4 Black resigned, Matulovic-Vilela, Sombor 1978.

17) *Technique No. 28*, the evacuation of the king. White has an advantage in space on the kingside – the idea now comes to start an attack there with g3-g4, f2-f4. But, before doing so, Petrosian transfers his king to the other half of the board.

**34.♙e1!? ♞d5 35.♙b5 ♞f6 36.**

**♙d1 ♞d5 37.♙e5 ♞e7 38.g4 ♞c6**

38...♞c6!?

**39.♙g3 ♞a7 40.♙b3 ♞c6**

40...♙e8!?

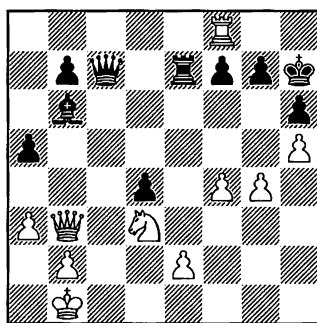
**41.♙c1 ♞e4 42.f3 ♞e3 43.♙b1**

**♞e7?! 44.♙h4! ♙d6 45.♙xe7!**

**♞xe7 46.♞c8+ ♙h7 47.♞f8 ♙c7**

Or 47...♙f6 48.f4 with an attack.

**48.f4!**



Without making any obvious errors, Black has got into a difficult situation. Now he does in fact commit an error.

**48...♙c5?**

48...g6 49.hxg6+ ♙xg6 50.♞e5+ ♙g7 51.♞a8±.

**49.♙d5 ♞e5!? 50.♞xf7! 1-0**

Petrosian-Peters, Lone Pine 1976.

18) *Technique No. 39*, Smyslov's battery:

**13...♙c6!**

Intending ...♙b7 and/or ...b6-b5.

14.♠d3 b5 15.axb5 axb5 16.  
♖xa8 ♖xa8

This threatens 17...c4 and then ...♗c5,  
...♖b7.

17.c4 b4 18.♗f1 ♖b7 19.♠g5  
♠d6 20.♠h4 ♠c7 21.♗e3 b3  
22.♖d1 ♖a2

Black has the initiative, Wahls-Renet,  
Dortmund 1989.

19) *Technique No. 19*, Karpov's file  
blocking helps with progress here:

23.♠c7!

The bishop screens the file and enables  
the doubling of the rooks in its shadow.

23...♖e8 24.♖c2 ♗f8 25.h5 ♖a4  
26.♖dc1 ♠xd4?

26...♗d7 27.♠f4 ♖xc2 28.♖xc2 ♖xc2  
29.♖xc2 with a clear advantage – espe-  
cially thanks to the mastery of the c-file.

27.♗xd4 ♖xd4 28.♠xb6! axb6  
29.♖xc8+–

Ilic-Ciric, Bern 1990.

20) Black is hoping to obtain counterplay  
on the kingside by ...h5-h4. Somewhat  
surprisingly we have here *Technique*  
*No. 21*, the padlock:

20.h3!

So as to reply to ...h5-h4 with g3-g4.  
Black now has no prospects of any  
counterplay, and White has peace to  
devote himself to the development of his  
initiative on the queenside.

20...0-0 21.♗d3 ♗b6 22.b3 ♠b7 23.  
♠e3 ♖fc8 24.♖a5 ♗bd7 25.♖fa1±

Smyslov-Matanovic, Biel (Interzonal  
tournament) 1976.

21) Here *Technique No. 14* helps, the  
creation of a potential passed pawn!  
Thanks to its power White can even at  
the end allow the black d-pawn to run on:

51.h4! ♗b6

51...d5 52.exd5 ♗xd5 (52...exd5 53.♗f3  
♗d6 54.♗e3 ♗e5 55.♗d3 ♗e6 56.♗d4  
♗d6 57.b6 ♗c6 58.♗e5+–) 53.h5 ♗e5  
54.h6 ♗d5 55.♗f4 ♗d6 56.♗e4 ♗d7  
57.♗d3 ♗c7 58.♗c4 ♗b6 59.♗d4 ♗c7  
60.♗c5 ♗b7 61.♗d6 ♗b6 62.♗e7+–.

52.h5! ♗c5

52...gxh5+ 53.♗xh5 ♗c7 54.♗h6 d5  
55.♗xh7+–.

53.h6! ♗b6 54.♗f4 ♗c5 55.♗e3  
♗b6 56.♗d4 ♗b7

It is not yet clear how White is to break  
through. First he grants his opponent a  
protected passed pawn too –

57.e5! d5 58.♗c5 ♗c7! 59.b6+  
♗b7 60.♗d6!,

and even allows it to march through to  
queen. Black promotes two moves ear-  
lier – but that is of absolutely no use to  
him, since the white king finds shelter  
in front of its advanced pawn and finally  
the 'potential passed pawn' becomes a  
decisive trump card in the queen ending:

60...d4 61.♗e7 d3 62.♗xf7 d2  
63.♗g8 d1 ♖ 64.f7 ♖xa4 65.f8 ♖  
♖b3 66.♗xh7 1-0

Nedeljkovic-Volpert, Belgrade (Yugosla-  
via-USSR) 1961.

22) *Technique No. 26*, White leaves his  
opponent with superfluous pieces:

20.♗d3!±

Maroczy-Süchting, Barmen 1905.

Black has a very cramped position – his  
pieces have hardly any breathing space.  
For that reason White avoids unneces-  
sary piece exchanges.

23) A pretty example of *Technique No. 41*,  
the manoeuvre ...♖b8-a7!

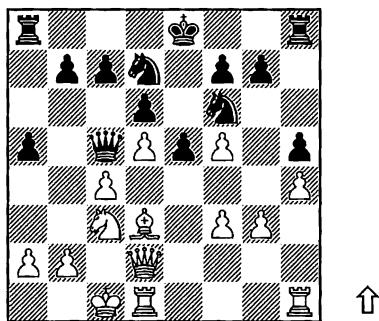
Here many players would sooner or later  
put the queen on e7, but that would leave

Black in a passive situation. In order to spot the attractive alternative, you require a good measure of positional vision:

**12...a5! 13.g3 ♕d7 14.♖d2 ♗b8! 15.c4 ♗a7!**

From here the queen controls the a7-g1 diagonal and can after this be brought to the even more active post c5.

**16.♗f5 ♕xf5 17.exf5 ♗f8 18.♗c3 ♗d8d7 19.0-0-0 ♖c5**



Now White has to reckon with ...♗d7-b6.

**20.♗a4 ♗b4! 21.♗xb4 axb4**

After this exchange of queens the ♖a2 is weak.

**22.b3 ♖a5 23.♗b2 ♖e7 24.♖he1 ♖ha8 25.♖a1 ♗f8 26.♕e4 ♖e7 27.♖ed1 ♗xe4 28.fxe4 ♗f6**

Black determines the course of the game, Camara-Rossetto, Mar del Plata 1961.

**24) Technique No. 33**, transferring the knight to the centre.

In *Example 17.3* we somewhat skimmed over this phase of the game with the subtle changing of positions of ♕/♗. The problem piece is obviously the one on a2:

**19.♗b4! a5 20.♕b5! ♗d7 21.♗d3! ♗e7 22.♕h2! ♖c8 23.♖xc8 ♕xc8 24.♖c1 ♕b7 25.♗e5**

The knight has reached its dream central square – even if this only means that it finishes with the bishop occupying it:

**25...♗xe5 26.♕xe5±**

Taimanov-Terpugov, Moscow (USSR Ch) 1951. The rest – as well as the prehistory of the position – was seen as we mentioned as *Example 17.3*.

**25) Technique No. 40**, Lasker's formation:

**12...♗e7!**

Aiming at the ♖a3 and preparing ...e6-e5.

**13.cxd5?!**

**13.a4 e5! 14.dxe5 ♗xe5 15.♗xe5 ♕xe5** with good play for Black.

**13...exd5**

With the exchange on d5 White has prevented the said advance ...e6-e5, but in return the ♗e7 and the ♖e8 have become active on the semi-open e-file and the e4-square becomes a lovely outpost square for the ♗f6.

**14.♕b2 ♖ad8**

14...♗e4!?

**15.♗c2**

15.♗h4!?

**15...♗e4 16.♗b3**

16.a4 f5!?

**16...♗df6**

Black is already threatening ...♗g4 and has a strong initiative; Gofshtein-S.Salov, Beltsy 1979.

**26) Technique No. 16** was required here – Black had to play **42...h5!** immediately to set up a wave-breaker on the kingside. Then he would be left with just the one weakness on c6 and should be able to hold the position without too many problems. Instead, he makes a natural but superficial move.

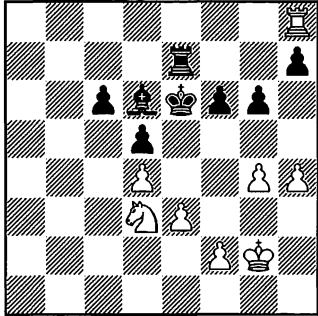
**42...♗f6?**

42...c5? 43.dxc5 ♕xc5 44.♖a5 would give White good winning chances with 4:3 pawns on the kingside and a bishop against a knight.

**43.g4!!**

This prevents the setting up of the formation f7-g6-h5, and the black h-pawn now becomes the second weakness.

**43...♙e6 44.♖g2 ♖b7 45.♞e8+ ♞e7 46.♞h8 f6 47.h4±**



Kotov-Pachman, Venice 1950.

Black now has to take care of both his weaknesses on c6 and h7 – a difficult task which in the long run Pachman was not up to. Kotov won after 69 moves.

27) Yes! – thanks to *Technique No. 9*, the simulated pawn exchange:

**27.h5! gxh5 28.g5 ♘g8**

28...♞g7 29.♞e1+ ♔f8 (29...♔d8? 30.♘e6+ +-) 30.♞xd7 ♞xd7 (30...♘xd7? 31.♘e6+ ♔f7 32.♘xg7 ♘c5 33.♙f5 ♔xg7 34.♞e7+ +-) 31.gxf6 ♔f7 32.♞e6±.

**29.♞7c5 h6 30.gxh6 ♘xh6 31.♞xd5± ♞e3 32.♙g6+ ♔d8 33.♞xh5 ♘g8 34.♞h8 ♔e7 35.♞h7+ ♔d6 36.♞d1 1-0**

Ivanchuk-Ruzele, Kramatorsk 1989.

28) *Technique No. 8* helps, especially remembering *Example 8.5*.

White's plan consists of b2-b4 and then b4-b5 or ♘a4-c5 with an initiative on the queenside. However, the natural 16. ♞ab1 is followed by 16...a5 and White

would have to play a2-a3 in order to get in b2-b4. But the consequence of this would be the exchange of the a-pawn, which, as has been recognised for a long time, considerably lessens White's chances of success in this pawn structure – for example, in the event of b2-b4, ...a5xb4, a3xb4 and then b4-b5, b5xc6, ...b7xc6 Black would only have one single weakness on c6 to defend (no second weakness on a7!), and moreover after the exchange of pawns the black rook could become very active on the a-file. But Tal chooses a better move:

**16.b4!**

The immediate advance is also possible! It is not a good idea for Black to take this pawn, e.g. 16...♙xb4 17.♞fb1 (17.♞ab1 is weaker: 17...♞e7 18.♞b3 a5) 17...♞e7 18.♞b3 a5 19.a3 ♙d6 20.♞xb7 ♙xa3 21.♞xc6, and a serious weakness has arisen on d5.

Next came

**16...♙d6 17.♞ab1**

(there is nothing against this move now)

**17...♙xg3 18.hxg3 a6 19.♘c5 ♞e7 20.a4**

with a strong initiative, which Tal transformed into the full point; Tal-Savon, Baku (USSR Ch) 1972.

29) Once more Black's powerful pieces are aiming into thin air, but *Technique No. 30* – the attack down the h-file – changes this:

**38...h5! 39.♞c1**

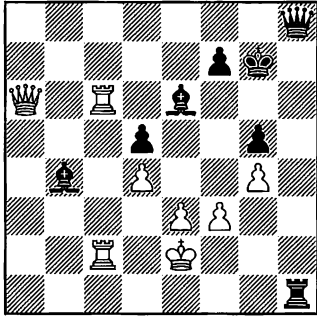
After 39.gxh5 then 39...♙xh3+ 40.♞xh3 ♞g1+ 41.♔xg1 ♞xh3 42.♞xd6= might achieve nothing, but 39...♙f5! is decisive.

**39...hxg4 40.hxg4 ♞a5**

Or immediately 40...♞a8 ♘...♞h8-h4.

**41.♔g1 ♞a8! 42.♞g2 g5 43.f3 ♞h8 44.♞1c2 ♞h4 45.♞f1 ♔d8**

46. ♖a6 ♗h8 47. ♘f1 ♜h1+ 48.  
♙e2 ♚b4 0-1



Lautier-Schüssler, Haifa 1989 (European Team Ch). The closing position clearly illustrates the effect of ...h7-h5.

**30) Technique No. 31**, placing rooks.

In the game Kopylov-Tolush, Leningrad 1950, Black decided on 14... ♜hg8.

But far more threatening for White was

**14... ♜dg8!**

after which Black also has available a plan with ...h7-h5-h4.

The perfect counterpart to *practical exercise 4* with 21. ♜hb1!; here the rooks are squeezed into the top right hand corner of the board so as to support the advance of the rook pawn.

**31) Technique No. 35**, a good square for the queen: a4! Very much like in *Examples 35.4* and *35.5* the pressure against a2 neutralises the potential weakness of the IQP on d5:

**17... ♗a4!**

The attack on a2 forces White to post either the ♘b3 or the ♜d1 passively, whereas the black queen feels much more at home on a4 as previously on d7.

18. ♘c1 ♘xg3 19. ♗xg3 ♜e6  
20. ♙d4 ♙c7 21. ♗g5 h6 22. ♗f5  
♜ce8 23.g3

After 23. ♙xf6?? (or even 23.a3??) the black queen could immediately demonstrate the advantages of its position: 23... ♗xd1! 24. ♜xd1 ♜e1+ followed by mate.

**23.b3**, so as to drive away the black lady from a4, would weaken the ♘c3, which, for example, in the variation 23... ♗c6 24. ♙xf6?! ♜xf6 25. ♗xd5 ♗xc3 26. ♗xb7 ♙b6! with a strong initiative, would make itself felt.

But there was the very interesting 23. ♘d3!? ♗xa2 24. ♙xf6 gxf6 (24... ♜xf6? 25. ♗d7+-) 25. ♜a1 ♗c4 26. ♜xa7, and in this position, which is so hard to evaluate, Black's activity does not perhaps fully compensate for the pawn weaknesses.

**23... ♙e5 24. ♙xe5 ♜xe5 25. ♗f3  
♜e4 26.a3**

White finally frees his knight from the task of defending the a-pawn, but weakens the b3-square.

**26... b6 27. ♘d3 ♗b3 28. ♜d2 d4!  
29. ♘c1 ♗c4 30. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 31.  
cxd4 ♗xd4 32. b4 ♜c8**

Sherzer-Dizdar, Saint John 1988.

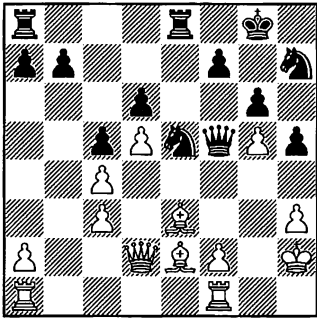
Black has resolved his pawn weakness, but confirmed his more active position.

**32) An unobtrusive variation of Technique No. 4** with the bishop cage!

**17... ♙xc3! 18.bxc3**

After 18. ♗xc3 ♘xg5 19. ♙g2 ♘e4 White does not have enough compensation for the missing pawn. But now the ♙e3 is in the cage made by its own pawns on c3 and g5. All that it is to hope for is that later it could become useful on f4, but Black does not give it that opportunity.

**18... ♙e5 19. ♙e2 ♗d7 20. ♘h2  
♗f5!**



**21.f4**

As 21.♙f4 would run into 21...♜xc4! 22.♙xc4 ♜e4 23.♙xd6 ♜xc4 24.f4 ♜d8–+. 21.f3!? (otherwise ...♜f3+ is unpleasant) 21...♞e7 ♠...♞ae8.

**21...♞e4! 22.♞ae1 ♜xc4 23.♙xc4 ♞xc4 24.♙f2**

24.f5 ♞e5–+.

**24...♜f8±**

Lputian-Gufeld, Moscow 1983.

**33) Technique No. 39, Smyslov's battery:**

**19...♞d7 20.♙b2 ♜a4**

Mainly the move ...♞d7-b7 is about putting pressure on e4, but this little side effect (the a4-square!) is not to be despised either.

**21.♞c1 ♜xb2 22.♞c2 ♞ec8 23.♞xb2 ♞b7 24.♙c2 ♜d7 25.♙b3 ♜f6 26.♙c2 a5,**

and Black got the initiative, Zapata-Granda Zuniga, New York 1988.

**34) Technique No. 1, the rook pawn restricts the knight:**

**11...h5!?**

Unsettles the ♜g3 and gains space on the kingside.

**12.♙e2 h4 13.♜f1 ♜d7**

With ideas like ...♜c5, ...♜d4 or ...f7-f5. Another good move was 13...a5 14.♜e3 (14.0-0-0 a4 15.♜xa4 ♞xa4!?) 14...♙h6, Azmaiparashvili-Vasiukov, Volgodonsk

1981. The idea of pinning the ♜f1-e3 by ...♙h6 underlines the fact that the king's knight has only bad squares to go to.

**14.♜d5 ♙xb2 15.♞xb2 a5 16.♜fe3 ♜b4**

White has an advantage in space and is controlling the long diagonal, but now his main handicap is the bad bishop.

**17.♞d1 ♙xd5 18.♜xd5 ♜xd5 19.♞xd5**

After this the game peters out. After 19. cxd5 ♞g5 Black would be pretty active.

**19...♜f6 20.♞d1 ♜h5 21.♞d2 ♞f6 22.0-0 ♜f4**

Now it is White who has to strive for equality:

**23.g3 hxg3 24.hxg3 ♜xe2+**

24...♜e6?! 25.♜g2 would just help White.

**25.♞xe2 ♞fe8 26.♜g2 ♜g7 1/2-1/2**

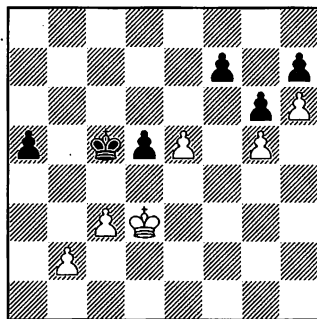
Kouatly-Fedorowicz, Brussels 1987.

**35) Following Exercise No. 21, further proof of the strength of the potential passed pawn in a pawn ending! – Technique No. 14.**

The position derives from *Example 14.16*, where to be honest we simply skimmed over this position in silence.

There, in the game Noradounghian-A.Nielsen, 39...♞xf4 led to a slow decline. Let us check whether the pawn ending offered chances of saving the game:

**39...♞xe5 40.fxe5 ♜c5**



The tempting **41.b4?** does force the breakthrough as far as the barrier on h7, but at the same time shows one disadvantage of the potential passed pawn: **41...axb4 42.cxb4+ ♖xb4 43.♔d4 ♖b3!! 44.♔xd5 ♖c3 45.e6 (45.♔d6 ♔d4 46.♖e7 ♖xe5 47.♔xf7 ♖f5 48.♔g7 ♖e6! ends up the same way) 45...fxe6+ 46.♖xe6 ♔d4 47.♖f6 ♔d5 48.♔g7 ♖e6 49.♔xh7 ♖f7** and a draw on account of the boxing in of the king. So:

**41.b3! ♖b6 42.♔d4 ♖c6 43.c4 dxc4 44.♔xc4 ♖b6 45.♔d5 ♖b5 46.♔d6 ♖b4 47.♖e7 ♖xb3 48.♔xf7 a4 49.e6 a3 50.e7 a2 51.e8♖ a1♖ 52.♔g8+–**

In the queen ending the strength of the potential passed pawn comes to the fore – it offers shelter from checks and allows the risk-free winning of the pawns on h7 and g6.

So in the initial position, Black had no satisfactory continuation anyway.

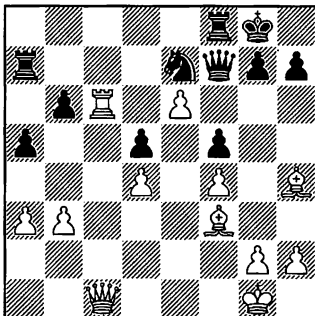
**36) Technique No. 20**, the Blackburne battering ram, stands for brute force:

**33.♔xc6!+–**

**33.♔d3±.**

**33...♔xc6 34.♖xc6 ♔xc6 35.♖xc6 ♔e7 36.e6**

Or even **36.♖xe7 ♖xe7 37.♖xd5+ ♖h8 38.♖e6** and then d4-d5.



**36...♖g6 37.♖c7 ♖xc7 38.♖xc7 ♖e8 39.♖xb6**

with a clearly winning position.

This exercise also clears up what would have happened if in *Example 20.1*, Blackburne-Rosenthal, Black had played ...a6-a5 on move 32. We had already explained there the consequences of **31...a5 (32.♔xd5!)** and **33...a5 (34.e6!)**.

**37) Technique No. 11**, blasting open outposts:

**13.g4! fxg4**

Otherwise **g4xf5** is played and then **♖f1-h3** and **♖h1-g1**, e.g. **13...b6 14.gxf5 exf5 15.♖h3 ♖f8 16.♖hg1** with a strong initiative.

**14.♔e4**

Also **14.h3** came into consideration.

Now the mastery of the e4-square together with the active positioning of White's pieces promise him the better chances despite his being a pawn down, e.g.:

**14...b6**

**14...h5 15.h3 gxh3 16.♖xh3 ♖h6 17.♖hg1 b6 18.♖g7±.**

**15.h3 gxh3 16.♖xh3 ♖b7 17.♖xe6**

White has recovered his pawn and claimed the initiative. The threat of **♖d5** is very unpleasant.

In the game Gheorghiu-Titov, Moscow 1989, however, White missed the moment and after **13.♖e2?! b6 14.g4** (bad timing) **14...♖b7 15.h4 h6 16.gxf5 exf5 17.♖h5 ♖af8 ½-½** Black had consolidated.

**38) Obviously Technique No. 29.**

**13...fxg6!**

The correct decision!

Unlike some of the examples in *Technique No. 29* Black may not obtain play on the f-file, but he avoids the attacking set-up ♖f3-g5, ♜e2-g4-h4 after 13... hxg6?! and can later make use of the hiding place for the king on h7.

**14.♖d2 ♖e7 15.♜e4 ♘f8 16.a5 ♜c8 17.♜fc1 a6 18.♜g4 h6 19. ♘e4 ♜d7! 20.h4 ♜ed8**

The black king feels very safe behind the wall of g7, g6, h6, and the e6- and g6-pawns are safely protected by the ♘f8. Despite his more active position Spassky was unable to achieve anything here.

**21.♜c4 ♜e8 22.♜ac1 ♜c7 23. ♘g3 ♜f7 24.♘e1 ♜cd7 25.♘f3 ♜c7 26.♜e4 ♜cd7 27.♜g4 ½-½**

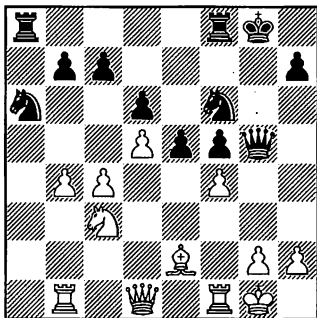
Spassky-Petrosian, Moscow (7th WCh game) 1969.

**39) Technique No. 13,** Prophylaxis against the King's Indian pawn attack, Botvinnik's first method: exf5 gxf5 f4! – here even as a (harmless) pawn sacrifice:

**18.exf5 gxf5**

After 18...♜xf5± Black would be giving up all hopes of attacking on the king-side; nevertheless it was the lesser evil.

**19.f4!**



**19...exf4**

With this move Black surrenders control of the d4-square, in addition his pawn structure is now hardly a sight for sore eyes – the ♘f4 is not destined to survive for long and after it falls White will turn his attention to the ♘f5.

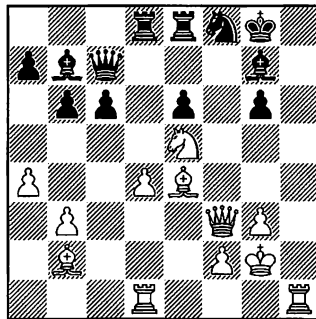
19...♜g6 would in any case be no better either on account of 20.fxe5 dxe5 21.d6±.

**20.♘b5! ♘g4 21.♜d2 ♘e3 22. ♜f2 ♜f6 23.♘d4 ♜e8 24.♘e6±**

Gavrikov-Kuksov, USSR 1977.

**40) Technique No. 30,** White attacks down the h-file:

**23.h4! ♘d5 24.h5! ♘f6 25.hxg6 hxg6 26.♖f3 ♘xe4 27.♖xe4 ♖f6 28.♜f3 ♖g7 29.♘e5,**



and on account of his compromised king position Black is in great difficulties, Dautov-Lautier, Moscow 1989.

Dear readers, in this book you have been fed a whole heap of strategic knowledge. It would give me great pleasure if after the study of this book your future games gained in depth and farsightedness!

# Index of players

Numbers refer to pages.

**Bold** = White, normal = Black, *italic* = study composer.

<b>A</b>		Blumenfeld	<b>25</b>	Ciric	239
Abramov	178	Bobotsov	<b>136</b>	Cohn	<b>146</b>
Adams	19	Bogdanovic	168	Cooke	93
Ahues	<b>161</b>	Bogoljubow	33 83 106 160	Csom	54
Akopian	<b>200</b>	Boleslavsky	9 62 72 83	Cvetkovic	<b>79</b>
Alburt	46		<b>163 165</b>	Czebe	<b>74</b>
Alekhine	25 <b>50</b> 71 96	Bondarevsky	<b>62 190</b> 218	<b>D</b>	
	97 <b>103 119</b> 127 129	Bönsch	<b>189</b>	Dautov	<b>245</b>
	132 <b>138 155</b> 156	Borodin	46	David, A.	<b>75</b>
	161 <b>165 171</b> 193	Botvinnik	9 10 10 26	Dawson, T.	21
	194 <b>221 223 235</b>		36 <b>56 60</b> 61 <b>64</b>	Diez del Corral	<b>147</b>
Alexandrov	222		<b>68 72</b> 80 <b>86 89</b>	Dizdar	242
Anderssen	<b>236</b>		104 <b>111 125</b> 131	Djurasevic	205
Andersson	38 115 <b>120 131</b>		<b>134 149</b> 180 <b>183</b>	Dlugy	207
Angantytsson	<b>51</b>		206 207 220 <b>236</b>	Dolmatov	92 123 140
Antoshin	<b>113</b>	Boutteville	235	Dreev	143 143
Arduman	<b>178</b>	Brinckmann	103	Drumev	<b>179</b>
Arnlinde	172	Broman	<b>71</b>	Duras	58
Aronian	<b>183</b>	Bronstein	<b>28</b> 84 190 236	Dvoretsky	139 139 224 237
Aronin	173	Buerger	144	<b>E</b>	
Aronson	<b>48</b>	Byrne, R.	<b>145 173</b>	Ehlvest	11
Atkins	<b>13</b>	<b>C</b>		Ehrlacher	<b>196</b>
Averbakh	<b>68 95</b> 113	Cabrilo	<b>58</b>	Eingorn	<b>14 210</b>
	199 <b>206 237</b>	Cala	88	Eliskases	<b>95</b>
<b>B</b>		Camara	<b>240</b>	Epishin	<b>143</b>
Balashov	<b>34 131</b> 158 220	Capablanca	13 <b>22 31</b>	<b>F</b>	
Bareev	<b>51</b>		31 <b>33 35 36</b> 40	Farago	58
Barua	216		50 <b>96 104 127</b>	Fedorowicz	243
Batuev	165		<b>132</b> 135 171 221	Fischer	141 172 173
Becker	<b>144</b>	Carlsen	21		<b>182</b> 184 201
Beliavsky	<b>92 188</b>	Chandler	<b>19</b>	Flohr	<b>23</b> 134
Bertok	113	Chekhover	60 <i>124</i>	Forintos	<b>30</b>
Bilek	<b>114</b>	Chigorin	61	Formanek	<b>169</b>
Bisguier	198	Chistiakov	56	Franzoni	192
Black	31	Christiansen	86		
Blackburne	<b>118 244</b>	Cifuentes	233		

<b>G</b>		<b>J</b>		<b>L</b>	
Gaprindashvili	<b>233</b>	Janowski	<b>212</b>	Langeweg	75
Gavrikov	<b>41 245</b>	Johannessen, S.	<b>99</b>	Larsen 81 142	<b>176 235</b>
Gelfand	181	Johansson, M.	99	Lasker, Ed.	13
Geller	<b>18 75 76</b>	Jussupow	<b>57 69 194 220</b>	Lasker, Em.	<b>36 40 185 209</b>
	98 <b>109</b> 114			Lautier	<b>242 245</b>
	<b>173 194</b> 215	<b>K</b>		Lein	<b>224</b>
Gershon	87	Kaev	<b>56</b>	Lematschko	<b>212</b>
Gheorghiu	<b>73 244</b>	Kaidanov	219	Levenfish	<b>83 173</b>
Giplis	202	Kan	<b>51 221 225</b>	Ligterink	59
Glek	140	Karaklajic	94	Lilienthal	<b>180</b>
Gligoric	<b>23 30 53 113</b>	Karlsson	91 <b>110</b>	Lipnitsky	179
	121 149 <b>168</b>	Karpov	<b>39 65 100 114 116</b>	Lisitsin	<b>26 197 221</b>
Glyanets	<b>113</b>	<b>120 133 140</b>	182 <b>185 203</b>	Liuboshits	<b>83</b>
Gofshtein	<b>240</b>	Kasparov	<b>14 27 43 100</b>	Ljubojevic	<b>86 148 210 234</b>
Gokhale	<b>216</b>		<b>100 116 123 133</b>	Loginov	12 104
Granda Zuniga	243		137 <b>190 203</b>	Lputian	51 <b>243</b>
Groszpeter	<b>181</b>	Katalymov	<b>56</b>	<b>M</b>	
Grünfeld	88	Keres	<b>16 56 67 167 180</b>	Makarichev	169
Gufeld	<b>233 243</b>		<b>181 182 217 224 225</b>	Makogonov	23 <b>131</b>
Gulko	<b>71 115</b>	Ketslakh	85	Maliutin	<b>207</b>
Gurgenidze	167	Khachian	200	Margulis, I.	<b>85</b>
Gurieli	212	Khalifman	44	Marini	186
Guseinov	<b>208</b>	Kholmov	<b>129</b>	Maroczy	<b>165 239</b>
Gutman	<b>204</b>	Khramov	<b>124</b>	Marshall	177
		Kieninger	<b>94</b>	Mastichiadis	<b>198</b>
<b>H</b>		Kiik	<b>219</b>	Matanovic	95 237 239
Haakanson	<b>171</b>	Kindermann	<b>191</b>	Matsukevich	<b>46</b>
Harikrishna	<b>21</b>	Knezevic	175	Matulovic	179 <b>238</b>
Hebert	110	Komliakov	117	Mecking	42
Hecht	<b>69</b>	Konstantinopolsky	51 64	Medina Garcia	<b>36</b>
Henter	237		<b>178 179</b>	Meshkov	41
Hickl	14	Kopylov	<b>242</b>	Metzger	196
Hort	77 <b>201</b>	Kortchnoi	27 <b>65 80</b>	Mieses	<b>96 129</b>
Horwitz, B.	49	Kotov	<b>20 41 53 104 128</b>	Mikhalevski, A.	159
Hübner	69 <b>100</b>		145 <b>145 146 241</b>	Miles	<b>59 163</b>
		Kouatly	<b>243</b>	Milner-Barry	<b>162</b>
<b>I</b>		Kramnik	<b>101</b>	Milos	<b>63</b>
Ibanez	165 235	Krasenkow	188	Minasian	75 <b>181</b>
Ilic	<b>239</b>	Kubbel	49	Morrison	138
Iljinsky	<b>237</b>	Kuksov	245	Müller/Lamprecht	45
Ioseliani	233	Kupreichik	181		
Ivanchuk	<b>241</b>	Kuzmin, G.	<b>78</b>		

*Techniques of Positional Play*

<b>N</b>		Plachetka	189	Schüssler	242
Najdorf	<b>98</b>	Plater	145	Seel	183
Naranja	<b>172</b>	Podgorny	136	Seirawan	<b>38 163</b>
Nataf	75	Polgar, J.	63 213	Shamis	<b>29</b>
Navarro	<b>192</b>	Polovodin	208	Shein	117
Nedeljkovic	90 <b>239</b>	Polugaevsky	<b>42 53</b>	Sherbakov, R.	207
Nei	<b>139</b>	Porat	<b>88</b>	Sherbakov, V.	68
Nielsen, A.	93 243	Portisch	27 <b>38 81 137</b>	Shereshevsky	<b>104</b>
Nikolic, P.	101		151 <b>164 184 192 210</b>	Sherzer	<b>242</b>
Nimzowitsch	<b>50 58 59</b>	<b>Q</b>		Shevchek	<b>237</b>
	70 119 144 <b>144</b>	Quinn	178	Shirov	<b>213</b>
	146 171 <b>177</b>	<b>R</b>		Shubarev	<b>222</b>
N.N.	186	Rabar	189	Simagin	<b>128</b>
Noradounghian	<b>93 243</b>	Radulov	38 <b>47</b>	Smagin	204
Norwood	54	Ragozin	<b>172 218</b>	Smejkal	<b>105</b>
<b>O</b>		Rashkovsky	<b>26</b>	Smyslov	23 <b>61 62 67 86</b>
Okhotnik	<b>93</b>	Ravinsky	<b>146</b>		91 111 158 163 180
Olafsson, F.	<b>149</b> 234	Razuvaev	56 <b>235</b>		181 <b>189 198 202</b>
O'Riordan	198	Ree	73		<b>205 224 234 239</b>
Ostojic	149	Renet	239	Sokolov, An.	<b>27</b> 204
<b>P</b>		Reshevsky	51	Sokolsky	166
Pachman	<b>136</b> 241	Réti	<b>13 135 161</b>	Sorokin	125
Padevsky	174		<b>194 202 209</b>	Sosonko	79
Panno	<b>114 233</b>	Rodriguez, Am.	<b>163</b>	Spassky	14 24 60 120 <b>122</b>
Panov	<b>55</b> 183	Romanishin	34 <b>53 123 175</b>		185 208 214 <b>214</b>
Partos	53	Romanovsky	<b>88 145</b>	Spielmann	<b>156</b>
Pelts	29	Rosenthal	118 244	Spraggett	<b>11</b>
Penrose	131	Roshal	124	Stahlberg	<b>158</b>
Peresipkin	<b>169</b>	Rossetto	<b>186 240</b>	Steinitz	236
Pergericht	<b>117</b>	Rubĭnetti	<b>53 60</b>	Strikovic	79
Peters	238	Rubinstein	<b>15 58 71 106</b>	Suba	<b>54</b>
Petrosian	<b>10 24 28 60 77</b>		155 156 <b>160 212</b>	Süchting	239
	<b>121 122 123 136 141</b>	Ruzele	241	Sutovsky	74 <b>87 102</b>
	147 <b>148 148 166 167</b>	<b>S</b>		Sveshnikov	<b>43 69 158 210</b>
	169 190 <b>207 214</b>	Salov, S.	240	<b>T</b>	
	214 236 <b>238 245</b>	Sämisch	<b>97 223</b>	Taimanov	20 <b>41 76 104</b>
Pfeiffer	109	Savon	<b>46 241</b>		<b>108 199 220 233 240</b>
Pietzsch	<b>208 234</b>	Schinis	117	Tal	<b>21 29 48 78 163 167</b>
Pillsbury	<b>61 185 186</b>	Schmidt, Wl.	18		<b>169 174 176 215 241</b>
Pilnik	95	Shulanov	108	Tamburini	<b>10</b>
Pirc	<b>90 135 217</b>			Tarnowski	<b>62</b>

Tarrasch	15 59 187	<b>193</b>	<b>U</b>		<b>W</b>	
Tartakower	50 96		Ubilava	<b>139</b>	Wach	<b>140</b>
Tatai	169		Uhlmann	<b>18 39 142 164 191</b>	Wahls	<b>239</b>
Temirbaev	120		Ulfarsson	197	Westerinen	47
Tempone	131		Ulibin	100	Winter	<b>31</b>
Terekhin, A.	<b>108 117</b>		Unzicker	16 100 116 148	Wojtkiewicz	<b>44</b>
Terekhin, S.	150		Utemov	<b>143</b>	Wolf	<b>156</b>
Terpugov	108 240					
Thorhallsson	<b>197</b>	<b>V</b>			<b>Y</b>	
Timman	<b>29 45 104</b>	Vaganian	<b>86</b>	Yanofsky	<b>151</b>	
	105 <b>182 211</b>	Van den Doel	<b>79</b>	Yates	<b>35 104</b>	
Timoschenko, Gen.	235	Van der Wiel	192 <b>211</b>		<b>161 165 202</b>	
Titov	244	Van Vliet	<b>58</b>	Yevseev	<b>12</b>	
Tobyas	113	Vasiukov	47	Yudasin	159	
Tolush	<b>68 84 242</b>	Vidmar	22 89	Yudovich	55	
Tozer	<b>204</b>	Vilela	238			
Trifunovic	<b>135</b>	Vilner	145	<b>Z</b>		
Tringov	86	Vogt	21	Zaichik	<b>47</b>	
Tseitlin, M.D.	<b>102</b>	Volkov	<b>75</b>	Zaitsev, I.	71	
Tseitlin, M.S.	129	Volpert	239	Zamikhovsky	197	
Tu Hoang Thong	<b>117</b>	Von Scheve	<b>187</b>	Zapata	<b>207 243</b>	
Tukmakov	<b>54 57 71</b>	Vshivkov	<b>150</b>	Znosko Borovsky	162	

# Index of Techniques

<b>Chapter I</b>	<b>Restricting the enemy pieces</b> .....	9
<i>Technique No. 1</i>	Putting the knight in chains	
	I. Paralysing the knight with the duo of wing pawns .....	9
<i>Technique No. 2</i>	II. Other ways of dominating the knight .....	16
<i>Technique No. 3</i>	Restricting the bishop	
	I. The pawn barrier $\Delta f3/e4$ or $\Delta f6/e5$ .....	22
<i>Technique No. 4</i>	II. The 'bishop cage' after ... $\text{xc3}$ ! $b2xc3$ .....	28
<i>Technique No. 5</i>	III. Capablanca's motif: immobilising the bishop .....	31
<i>Technique No. 6</i>	IV. Which colour of squares for the pawns?	
	For & against Capablanca's rules .....	40
<i>Technique No. 7</i>	Paralysing opposing rooks .....	46
<b>Chapter II</b>	<b>Create breathing space for your pieces!</b> .....	50
<i>Technique No. 8</i>	The temporary pawn sacrifice .....	50
<i>Technique No. 9</i>	The 'simulated' pawn exchange .....	52
<i>Technique No. 10</i>	Creating an impregnable outpost for a piece .....	58
<i>Technique No. 11</i>	Blasting open outposts .....	61
<b>Chapter III</b>	<b>The clash between pawn formations</b> .....	66
<i>Technique No. 12</i>	Attacking the pawn triangle .....	66
<i>Technique No. 13</i>	Prophylaxis against menaging pawn formations .....	70
	1) Hitting the junction .....	71
	2) Botvinnik's first method: $e4xf5$ $g6xf5$ $f2-f4!$ .....	71
	3) Taimanov's prophylaxis .....	76
	4) Botvinnik's second method: undermining the strength of ... $f5$ with $h2-h4-h5!$ .....	78
<b>Chapter IV</b>	<b>The rook pawn – an underrated fighter</b> .....	82
<i>Technique No. 14</i>	The potential passed pawn is created! .....	82
<i>Technique No. 15</i>	File opening by the rook pawn .....	95
<i>Technique No. 16</i>	The wave-breaker is set up .....	103
<b>Chapter V</b>	<b>Techniques in the fight for an open file</b> .....	106
<i>Technique No. 17</i>	Rubinstein's Exchange: $\text{bd7}$ – the sign for $cxd5$ .....	106
<i>Technique No. 18</i>	Queen behind the rooks – Smyslov's formation .....	111
<i>Technique No. 19</i>	Karpov's file-blocking .....	115
<i>Technique No. 20</i>	Brute force: Blackburne's battering ram .....	118
<i>Technique No. 21</i>	Avoiding the opening of a file – the 'padlock' .....	121

<b>Chapter VI</b>	<b>Some aspects of piece exchanges</b> .....	125
<i>Technique No. 22</i>	Botvinnik's prescription: exchange those pieces which are protecting entry squares!.....	125
<i>Technique No. 23</i>	Exchanging bishops in order to weaken a complex of squares...	129
<i>Technique No. 24</i>	The bishop zigzag: neutralising the good bishop .....	132
<i>Technique No. 25</i>	Capablanca's set-up in the Karlsbad structure .....	134
<i>Technique No. 26</i>	Leave the opponent with his superfluous pieces .....	138
 <b>Chapter VII</b>	 <b>Working with the king</b> .....	 142
<i>Technique No. 27</i>	Artificial castling.....	142
<i>Technique No. 28</i>	The precautionary evacuation of the king .....	144
<i>Technique No. 29</i>	h2xg3 (...h7xg6) or f2xg3 (...f7xg6)? .....	153
	1) fxg3/...fxg6 for an initiative on the f-file .....	155
	2) Attacking ♖g6/g7/f7 .....	160
	3) A hiding-place for the king on h2/h7 .....	163
	4) h2xg3 – despite everything, the boring normal case .....	164
<i>Technique No. 30</i>	The attack down the h-file.....	164
 <b>Chapter VIII</b>	 <b>Developing and activating pieces</b> .....	 170
<i>Technique No. 31</i>	Which rook belongs on the c-, d- or e-file? .....	170
<i>Technique No. 32</i>	The alternative for the rook: the rook lift .....	177
<i>Technique No. 33</i>	Transferring the knight to the centre .....	183
<i>Technique No. 34</i>	The cloistered bishop.....	187
<i>Technique No. 35</i>	A good square for the queen on the edge .....	189
<i>Technique No. 36</i>	Hindering the opponent's development: the pendulum manoeuvre..	193
 <b>Chapter IX</b>	 <b>Along the diagonals</b> .....	 196
<i>Technique No. 37</i>	Attacking on the long diagonal Bishops of opposite colours – yes, please! .....	 196
<i>Technique No. 38</i>	The Réti battery ♖a1/♙b2 (♗a8/♙b7).....	201
<i>Technique No. 39</i>	The Smyslov battery ♗b2/♙c3 (♗b7/♙c6) .....	205
<i>Technique No. 40</i>	The Lasker formation ♗e7/♙d6 .....	209
<i>Technique No. 41</i>	The Rubinstein manoeuvre: ...♗d8-b8-a7! .....	212
<i>Technique No. 42</i>	Boleslavsky's regrouping: eyeing h2!.....	214
<i>Technique No. 43</i>	Bishops of opposite colours: attacking f7 even in the endgame!..	216
 <b>Chapter X</b>	 <b>Other methods</b> .....	 220
<i>Technique No. 44</i>	Letting the opposing plan come to nothing .....	220
<i>Technique No. 45</i>	The principle of the two weaknesses .....	222
 <b>Chapter XI</b>	 <b>Practical exercises</b> .....	 226
	Solutions to the exercise .....	233

# Openings and types of positions

The games are listed here insofar as the starting position still allows a possible identification with the actual opening.

In brackets the page number, Ex. = practical exercise in Chapter XI.

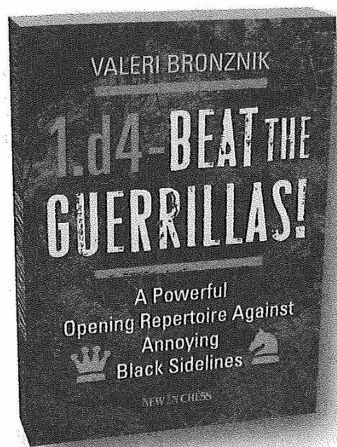
<b>Benoni Defence (Schmid-Benoni, Old Benoni etc.)</b>	1.9 (p. 14)	8.1 (50)	13.7 (75)
<b>Bogo-Indian Defence</b>	35.3 (190)		
<b>Caro-Kann Defence</b>	1.6 (13)	11.6 (64)	29.9 (161) 29.11 (162)
	30.3 (165) 30.6 (169) 32.12 (182) 39.5 (207)		
<b>Catalan Opening</b>	3.2 (23)	5.8 (38)	21.6 (123) 22.3 (128) 34.2 (188) Ex. 19 (229)
<b>Dutch Defence</b>	19.4 (117) 33.3 (185) Ex. 22 (229)		
<b>English Opening</b>	3.7 (26) 15.7 (100) 15.9 (101) 23.3 (131)		
<b>1...e5</b>	10.1 (58)	12.2 (68)	12.5 (69) 13.3 (71) 18.7 (115) 20.4 (120) 26.2 (139)
<b>Symmetrical Variation 1...c5</b>	1.10 (15) 3.9 (27) 8.4 (51) 10.3 (59)		
	30.10 (169) 31.4 (172) 31.10 (176) 32.6 (180) 33.7 (187) 38.3 (203)		
<b>French Defence</b>	9.8 (56)		
<b>Tarrasch Variation 3.♟d2 c5</b>	5.10 (39) 24.3 (133) 29.2 (156)		
	35.2 (190) 35.4 (191) 35.5 (192) Ex. 31 (231)		
<b>Advance Variation 3.e5</b>	18.3 (113) 29.5 (158) 36.4 (194)		
<b>Winawer Variation 3.♟c3 ♜b4</b>	20.2 (119) 28.1 (144) 28.8 (147) 31.8 (174)		
<b>Grünfeld Defence</b>	11.2 (61) 18.2 (113) 31.6 (173) 37.7 (200)		
<b>Italian Opening</b>	29.4 (157)		
<b>King's Indian Attack</b>	13.14 (79) 14.3 (84) 14.8 (87)		
	15.10 (102) 30.4 (166) 32.5 (179)		
<b>King's Indian Defence</b>	1.2 (10) 4.3 (29) 4.4 (30) 15.5 (99) Ex. 32 (231)		
<b>Classical ♟f3/♜e2</b>	4.1 (28) 4.2 (29) 13.5 (73) 13.6 (74)		
	13.8 (75) 13.10 (76) 13.12 (78) 21.1 (121) 21.3 (122)		
	23.4 (131) 30.7 (168) 41.3 (213) Ex. 2 (226) Ex. 39 (232)		
<b>with g3</b>	12.3 (68) 13.4 (72) 13.9 (75) 13.11 (77) 15.4 (98)		
	18.4 (113) 26.1 (138) 33.2 (184) 41.2 (212) Ex. 10 (227)		
<b>Sämisch System</b>	9.1 (53) 9.3 (53)		
<b>Modern Benoni Defence</b>	1.5 (12) 9.5 (54) 29.7 (159) 32.1 (177) 32.2 (178)		
<b>Nimzo-Indian Defence</b>	5.4 (34) 31.1 (171)		
<b>Capablanca System 4.♞c2</b>	1.3 (10) 38.4 (204)		
<b>Rubinstein System 4.e3</b>	3.3 (23) 3.4 (24)		
	26.6 (141) 37.6 (199) 40.4 (211) Ex. 25 (230)		
<b>Sämisch System 4.a3</b>	9.9 (56) 28.4 (145) 28.5 (145) 37.5 (198) Ex. 14 (228)		
<b>Nimzo-Larsen Opening 1./2.b3</b>	3.6 (26) 28.2 (144) 28.3 (145) 34.3 (189)		
<b>Nimzowitsch Defence 1.e4 ♟c6</b>	29.14 (163) Ex. 23 (230)		
<b>Old Indian Defence</b>	Ex. 34 (231) Ex. 37 (232)		

<b>Philidor Defence</b> .....	3.5 (25)
<b>Pirc/Modern Defence</b> .....	5.6 (36) 13.13 (79) 28.12 (149)
<b>Queen's Gambit</b>	
<b>Chigorin Defence</b> .....	11.1 (61)
<b>Queen's Gambit Accepted</b> .....	8.6 (52) 29.10 (161)
<b>Orthodox</b> .....	1.8 (14) 6.3 (41) 8.2 (50) 8.3 (51) 8.5 (51) 10.6 (60) 12.1 (67)
14.10 (88) 19.2 (116) 20.3 (120) 22.1 (125) 22.2 (127) 24.1 (132) 24.2 (133)	
25.2 (135) 25.3 (136) 25.4 (136) 25.5 (137) 31.2 (171) 32.7 (180) 35.1 (189)	
42.1 (214) 42.3 (215) 42.4 (216) 44.2 (220) 44.3 (221) Ex. 28 (230)	
<b>Semi-Tarrasch Defence</b> .....	Ex. 17 (229)
<b>Slav</b> .....	17.3 (108) 17.4 (109) 18.1 (111) 19.3 (117) 29.15 (164) 35.6 (192) 40.2 (210)
<b>Open 4...dxc4</b> .....	29.6 (158) 29.13 (163) 32.10 (181) Ex. 38 (232)
<b>Meran/Antimeran</b> ...	27.1 (142) 27.2 (143) 27.3 (143) 40.3 (210) 44.1 (220)
<b>Schlechter System</b> .....	17.1 (106) 17.2 (108) Ex. 8 (227)
<b>Queen's Indian Defence</b> .....	5.4 (34) 10.4 (59) 13.2 (71) 15.3 (97)
15.6 (100) 16.2 (104) 31.1 (171) 36.5 (195) 39.4 (207) 42.2 (214)	
<b>Queen's Pawn Game</b> .....	34.1 (187)
<b>Colle-Zukertort System</b> .....	10.2 (58) 29.8 (160)
<b>Trompowsky Attack</b> .....	32.13 (182)
<b>Réti-System</b> .....	1.7 (13) 9.11 (58) 10.5 (60) 14.1 (83) 15.8 (100)
16.3 (104) 17.5 (110) 18.5 (114) 18.6 (114) 24.4 (134) 25.1 (135)	
38.1 (202) 38.2 (202) 38.5 (204) 39.1 (205) 40.1 (209) Ex. 1 (226)	
<b>Benoni with reversed colours</b> .....	2.5 (20) 9.2 (53) 32.3 (178) 32.4 (179)
<b>Ruy Lopez</b> .....	2.1 (16) 6.1 (40) 16.1 (103) 29.1 (155) 31.9 (175) Ex. 12 (228)
<b>Exchange Variation</b> .....	5.7 (36) 14.9 (88)
<b>Closed main line (5...♙e7 etc.)</b> .....	5.1 (31) 19.1 (116) 30.2 (165) 30.9 (169)
32.8 (181) 32.11 (182) 39.6 (208) 39.7 (208) Ex. 5 (227) Ex. 33 (231)	
<b>Ruy Lopez Four Knights</b> .....	5.2 (31) 29.3 (156) 33.1 (183) 41.1 (212)
<b>Scandinavian Defence</b> .....	32.14 (183)
<b>Sicilian Defence</b> .....	13.1 (71) 26.5 (140) 37.8 (201) 39.3 (207) 44.4 (221)
<b>2.c3</b> .....	6.5 (43) 14.4 (85) 37.3 (197)
<b>Dragon Variation</b> .....	21.4 (123) 31.3 (172)
<b>Classical/Richter-Rauser</b> .....	36.6 (195) 39.2 (206)
<b>Najdorf Variation</b> .....	3.8 (27) 11.5 (63) 31.5 (173) 31.7 (173) 33.6 (186) Ex. 11 (228)
<b>Scheveningen System</b> .....	2.2 (18) 11.4 (62) 12.4 (69) 14.2 (83) 33.4 (185)
<b>Sveshnikov Variation</b> .....	26.4 (140)
<b>Volga-Benkő Gambit</b> .....	6.2 (41) 7.4 (47) 27.4 (143)
<b>Hedgehog Structure</b> .....	9.4 (54) 38.3 (203) 38.4 (204)
<b>Isolated Queen Pawn</b> .....	5.10 (39) 6.4 (42) 6.6 (44) 14.18 (95) 20.3 (120) 24.3 (133)
29.2 (156) 31.2 (171) 31.6 (173) 35.4 (191) 35.5 (192) Ex. 17 (229) Ex. 31 (231)	
<b>Karlsbad Structure</b> .....	1.3 (10) 6.3 (41) 8.5 (51) 12.1 (67) 24.1 (132) 25.2 (135)
25.3 (136) 25.4 (136) 25.5 (137) 42.3 (215) 42.4 (216) Ex. 26 (230) Ex. 28 (230)	

## Bibliography

In many cases the authors worked with originals in German or Russian instead of the English editions cited here; we beg for forgiveness for any slight inaccuracies (e.g. in quotes) which may have been the result of this.

- A. Alekhine, My best games of chess 1908-1923, Cadogan, London 1983  
A. Alekhine, On the road to the World Championship 1923-1927, Cadogan, London 1984  
A. Baburin, Winning Pawn Structures, Batsford, London 1998  
M. Botvinnik, Analiticheskie i kriticheskie raboty, Fizkultura i sport, Moscow 1978-87  
D. Bronstein, Zurich International Chess Tournament, Dover, New York 1980  
V. Bronznik, Schach ohne Abseits (CD), ChessBase, Hamburg 1999  
J.R. Capablanca, Chess Fundamentals, Everyman, London 1994  
J.R. Capablanca, Last Chess Lectures, Jenkins 1967  
M. Dvoreckij, Die Endspieluniversität, Chessgate, Nettetal 2002  
M. Dvoretzky/A. Yusupov, Secrets of Chess Training, Edition Olms, Hombrechtikon 2006  
M. Dworetzki, Geheimnisse der Schachstrategie, Edition Olms, Hombrechtikon 1999  
M. Dworetzki/A. Jussupow, Positionelles Schach, Edition Olms, Hombrechtikon 1996  
A. Karpow, Wie ich kämpfe and siege, Schachverlag R. Schmaus, Heidelberg 1978  
G. Kasparov, My Great Predecessors I to V, Everyman, London 2003-2006  
M. Marin, Learn from the Legends, Quality Chess, Gothenburg 2004  
M. Marin, Secrets of Attacking Chess, Gambit, London 2005  
A. Matanovic (Ed.), Chess Informant 1-93, Belgrade 1966-2005  
K. Müller/F. Lamprecht, Fundamental Chess Endings, Gambit, London 2001  
A. Nimzowisch, My System, Quality Chess, Gothenburg 2007  
A. Nimzowitsch, Chess Praxis, Quality Chess, Gothenburg 2007  
Razuvaev/Murachweri, Akiba Rubinstein, Fizkultura i sport, Moscow 1981  
G. Sanakoev, World Champion at the Third Attempt, Gambit, London 1999  
M. Schereschewski, Strategie der Schachendspiele, Sportverlag, Berlin 1985  
B. Slotnik, Typische Stellungen im Mittelspiel, Schachverlag R. Schmaus, Heidelberg 1987  
A. Suetin, Großmeister Boleslavsky, Fizkultura i sport, Moscow 1981  
M. Tal, Life and Games of Mikhail Tal, Everyman, London 1997  
J. Timman, Power Chess with Pieces, New in Chess, Alkmaar 2004  
J. Watson, Guide to the Modern Benoni, Gambit, London 2001  
J. Watson, Secrets of Modern Chess Strategy, Gambit, London 1998  
F. Zeller, Einblicke in die Meisterpraxis, Schachverlag Kania, Schwieberdingen 2004  
F. Zeller, Sicilian im Geiste des Igels, Schachverlag Kania, Schwieberdingen 2000

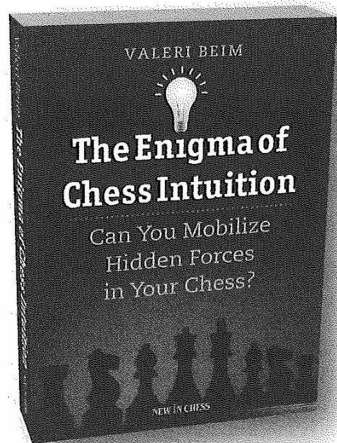


## Don't get ambushed in the opening!

"Although concrete variations are the main thing, Bronznik gives a lot more strategic explanations than Avrukh and Khalifman in their repertoire books."  
– KARL Magazine

"I consider Bronznik's books of exceptional quality."  
– John Watson, *The Week In Chess*

Paperback • 272 pages • € 22.95 • available at your local (chess)bookseller or at [newinchess.com](http://newinchess.com) • a NEW IN CHESS publication



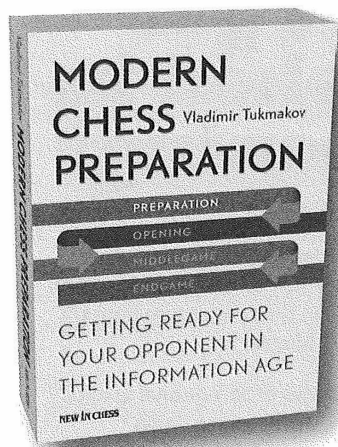
## Nobody doubts that it exists, but how does it work and where does it take us?

"Beim demystifies the matter (..) Using excellently presented games, the intuitive way of playing chess is explained in a refreshingly classical and instructive way." – *Der Standard, Vienna*

"This book strikes me as an unusual thoughtful one (..) Beim has made a great effort to come up with a coherent theory of intuition, and there is plenty to enjoy along the way." – *Luke McShane, New In Chess magazine*

"Very good are the prose and abundant explanations. Here is an experienced grandmaster spilling the beans!" – *Martin Rieger, Europa Rochade*

Paperback • 272 pages • € 24.95 • available at your local (chess)bookseller or at [newinchess.com](http://newinchess.com) • a NEW IN CHESS publication



## Winning starts with planning before the game

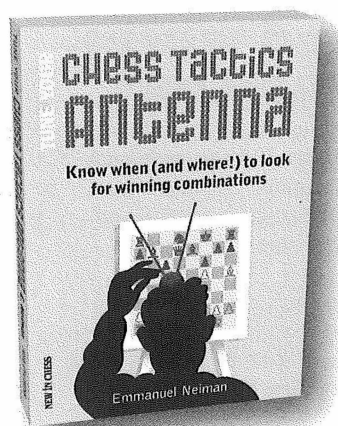
"I really like this book (..) Tukmakov's discussion of the modern game is highly astute."

*GM Luke McShane*

"Qualifications such as 'brilliant' or 'wonderful' are really far too stale for this work (..) This book will most probably become a classic in chess literature."

*Martin Rieger, Rochade Europa*

Paperback • 288 pages • € 23.95 • available at your local (chess)bookseller or at [newinchess.com](http://newinchess.com) • a NEW IN CHESS publication



## Unfortunately, life is not like a book of tactics exercises...

Nobody will tap you on your shoulder when the position you are looking at contains a tactical blow. However, Emmanuel Neiman offers help. He improves your tactics antenna: you will learn to read the 7 main signals that indicate you must start looking for a win.

With lots of examples and exercises.

Paperback • 240 pages • € 24.95 • available at your local (chess)bookseller or at [newinchess.com](http://newinchess.com) • a NEW IN CHESS publication